

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*IN THE NAME OF ALLĀH, THE GRACIOUS, THE MERCIFUL*

**خَيْرُكُمْ مَنْ تَعَلَّمَ الْقُرْآنَ وَ عَلَّمَهُ**

*The best among you is the one who learns the Holy Qur'ān  
and teaches it to others*

*(Bukhārī)*

# TA'LĪMUL QUR'ĀN

*A Self-Study Book*

for

**Learning the Correct Recitation and  
Translation of the Holy Qur'ān**

*Dr. Karimullah Zirvi*

First Edition Published in June 2007

by  
Ahmadiyya Movement in Islam, USA  
15000 Good Hope Road  
Silver Spring, MD 20905

ISBN 1 882494 17 2

Copyright©

Islam International Publications Ltd.

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without prior written permission from the Publisher, except for quotation of brief passages.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

IN THE NAME OF ALLĀH, THE GRACIOUS, THE MERCIFUL

# TA'LĪMUL QUR'ĀN

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword: Da'ūd A. Ḥanīf, Missionary In Charge and Nā'ib Amīr.....	5
Introduction: Karīmullāh Zīrvī .....	7
System of Transliteration .....	11
I. The Holy Qur'ān .....	15
i. Compilation of the Holy Qur'ān .....	15
ii. Chapters (Sūrahs) of the Holy Qur'ān .....	17
iii. Parts (Sipārahs) of the Holy Qur'ān .....	19
iv. Rukū' Sign and Division of a Part of the Holy Qur'ān .....	20
v. Muqatta'āt (Letters of Abbreviation) Mentioned in the Holy Qur'ān .....	22
vi. Etiquettes of Recitation of the Holy Qur'ān .....	24
vii. The Rules of Isti'ādḥah and Bismillāh .....	25
viii. Completing of a Sūrah and Beginning of the Next Sūrah .....	27
ix. Sajdah Tilāwat (Prostration during recitation of the Holy Qur'ān) .....	28
x. Prayers of Sajdah Tilāwat .....	29
xi. What to be Said While Reading and Listening Certain Verses of the Holy Qur'ān .....	31
xii. Prayer to Strengthen Memory to Memorize the Holy Qur'ān .....	40
xiii. Prayer to be Recited on Completing the Recitation of the Entire Holy Qur'ān .....	43
II. The Arabic Alphabet with Pronunciation and Transliteration .....	45
i. Letters Similar in Sound .....	48

ii.	Alphabets: The Written Form .....	49
iii.	Ḥurūf-e-Shamsiyyah (Sun Letters) .....	51
iv.	Ḥurūf-e-Qamriyyah (Moon Letters) .....	52
v.	Hamzatul Qaṭ'ī and Hamzatul Waṣl .....	54
<b>III.</b>	<b>The Art of Tajwīd .....</b>	<b>57</b>
i.	Major Errors Made While Reciting the Holy Qur'ān .....	58
ii.	Minor Errors Made While Reciting the Holy Qur'ān .....	59
<b>IV.</b>	<b>Correct Recitation of the Holy Qur'ān .....</b>	<b>61</b>
i.	The Short Vowels (Ḥarakāt) .....	61
ii.	Letters with Vowel Marks .....	62
iii.	Reading Two or More Letters Together .....	65
iv.	The Long Vowels .....	66
v.	Marks for Long Vowels .....	68
vi.	Super Long Vowels (Maddāt) .....	69
vii.	Madd-e-Aṣlī and Madd-e-Far'ī.....	70
viii.	Madd-e-Muttaṣil and Madd-e-Munfaṣil.....	71
ix.	Ḥurūfullīn (Pliable Letters) .....	73
<b>V.</b>	<b>Ramūz-e-Auqāf (Stop Signs or Pauses) .....</b>	<b>75</b>
i.	Rare Signs .....	88
ii.	Rules of Making a Stop or Pause .....	89
iii.	Practice of the Stop Signs .....	91
<b>VI.</b>	<b>Makhārij .....</b>	<b>92</b>
i.	Makhāriul Ḥurūf .....	95
<b>VII.</b>	<b>Correct Combinations .....</b>	<b>97</b>
i.	Jazm/Sukūn .....	97
ii.	Words Having Two Letters with Sukūn .....	98
iii.	Tanwīn .....	100
iv.	Pronunciation of Quiescent Nūn and Nūn of Nūnation .....	101



VIII.	Superfluous Letters and Phonetic Style of Words .....	105
i.	Mergence of a Letter into the Letter which Follows .....	107
a.	Mergence of Nūn or Nūn of Nūnation with Other Letters .	107
b.	Mergence of Two Identical Letters .....	110
ii.	Blank Letters .....	111
iii.	A Blank Bend .....	112
iv.	Use of Shadda .....	113
a.	More than One Shadda.....	114
b.	Rules for Letters with Sukūn Before Letters with Shadda .....	115
IX.	Recitation of the Holy Qur'ān: Correction of Some Common Mistakes .....	117
X.	Basic Arabic Lessons (Grammar) .....	131
i.	Basic Letters of the Root of a Word .....	132
ii.	Noun (Ism) .....	133
a.	Common Noun (Ism nakirah) .....	134
b.	Proper Noun (Ism ma'rifah) .....	135
c.	Jumlah Ismiyyah .....	136
iii.	Verb (Fi'l) .....	137
a.	Jumlah Fi'liyyah .....	138
b.	Mādī Qarīb (Use of Qad and Laqad)) .....	143
c.	Mādī Ba'id (Use of Kāna) .....	144
d.	Fi'li Nāqış (A defective Verb: "Laisa" ).....	146
e.	Fi'l Muḍāri' .....	147
f.	Fi'l Jaḥad and Fi'l Nahī .....	152
g.	Fi'l Amr Ḥādir .....	154
h.	Fi'l Amr Ghā'ib wa Mutakallam.....	155
XI.	The Prepositions .....	156
i.	Ḥurūful Jarr .....	156

ii.	Hurūfuzzarf (Adverbs) .....	158
iii.	Hurūfunnidā' (Interjections) .....	159
<b>XII.</b>	<b>The Personal Pronouns .....</b>	<b>160</b>
i.	Basic Divisions of the Personal Pronouns .....	160
ii.	The Nominative Personal Pronouns .....	161
iii.	The Genitive Personal Pronouns .....	162
iv.	The Accusative Personal Pronouns .....	163
v.	Interrogative Pronouns .....	164
vi.	The Personal Pronouns and Past Tense for Feminine Gender .....	165
vii.	The Personal Pronouns and Past Tense for Masculine Gender ....	166
Viii.	Demonstrative Pronouns (Asmā'i Ishārah ) .....	167
<b>XIII.</b>	<b>Miscellaneous .....</b>	<b>169</b>
i.	The Cardinal Numbers from One to Hundred .....	169
ii.	The Ordinal Numbers from First to Tenth .....	170
iii.	Imālah .....	170
iv.	Bāb .....	170
<b>XIV.</b>	<b>The Holy Qur'ān: Split-Word Translation of the Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah and the First Five Rukū' of the Sūrah:</b>	
	Al-Baqarah, Āl-e-'Imrān, Al-Nisā' and Al-Mā'idah .....	173
	Al-Fātiḥah .....	173
	Al-Baqarah .....	177
	Āl-e-'Imrān .....	189
	Al-Nisā' .....	205
	Al-Mā'idah .....	218
<b>XV.</b>	<b>Al-Mufradātul Qur'ān (Qur'ānic Vocabulary): Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah and Sūrah Al-Baqarah.....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>XVI.</b>	<b>Qur'ānic Prayers .....</b>	<b>253</b>

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*In the name of Allāh the Gracious, the Merciful*

# TA'LĪMUL QUR'ĀN

## FOREWORD

Allāh, the Omniscient, the All-Knowing, has revealed the Holy Qur'ān to Ḥaḍrat Muḥammad (peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) as the guidance for all mankind for all times. It is a very concise book in the Arabic language. Merely reading the Holy Qur'ān earns one a mighty reward. Our beloved master, the Holy Prophet (peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) has said:

مَنْ قَرَأَ حَرْفًا مِنْ كِتَابِ اللَّهِ فَلَهُ حَسَنَةٌ وَالْحَسَنَةُ بِعَشْرِ أَمْثَالِهَا لَا أَقُولُ الِّمَّ حَرْفٌ  
أَلِفٌ حَرْفٌ وَلَا مٌ حَرْفٌ وَ مِيمٌ حَرْفٌ

*mann qara-a ḥarfān min kitābillāhi falahū ḥasanatun walḥasanatu bi'ashri  
amthālihā fa aqūlu alif lām mīm ḥarfūn alifun ḥarfūn wa lāmūn ḥarfūn wa  
mīmūn ḥarfūn*

"When a person recites one letter from the Book of Allāh, that is one good deed equal to ten good deeds the like of it. I do not say that Alif, Lām, and Mīm is a letter; but Alif is a letter, Lām is a letter, and Mīm is a letter."

*(Tirmadhī)*

He (peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) further exhorts:

اقْرَءُوا الْقُرْآنَ فَإِنَّهُ يَأْتِي يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ شَفِيعًا لِأَصْحَابِهِ

*iqra'ul-qur'āna fa innahū ya'ti yaumal qiyāmati shafi'an li-aṣḥābihī*

"Keep reading the Qur'ān for it will intercede for its readers on the Day of Judgement."

*(Muslim)*

The Promised Messiah (on whom be peace) received a revelation in a vision about the Holy Qur'ān.

He (on whom be peace) states:

"I saw in a vision that *Ḥaẓīratul Quds* (i.e., heaven) is being watered with the water of the Holy Qur'ān and the Holy Qur'ān is a great ocean which is surging with thunder. Whosoever drinks from this water will not only remain himself alive but also will be able to make others alive."

*(Rūḥānī Khazā'in, Vol. 5, pp. 545-546)*

Reading and comprehension of the Holy Qur'ān is incumbent upon all followers as they are to lead their lives in complete conformity with its teachings. So to facilitate this, Dr. Karīmullāh Zirvī has compiled a self-study book entitled, "Ta'limul Qur'ān" for learning the correct recitation and translation of the Holy Qur'ān. It is a step-by-step guide to learn the correct recitation of the Holy Qur'ān. It also comprises a selection from the commentary of Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Bashīruddīn Maḥmūd Aḥmad<sup>ra</sup> to generate interest in the reader and for the appreciation and comprehension of the Holy Book.

We pray that Allāh accepts this effort and that readers benefit from it immensely.

Daud A. Hanif  
Missionary In Charge and  
Nā'ib Amīr Jamā'at, USA

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*In the name of Allāh the Gracious, the Merciful*

# TA'LĪMUL QUR'ĀN

## INTRODUCTION

The teaching and learning of the Holy Qur'ān is a source of great blessing.

God Almighty says in the Holy Qur'ān:

وَرَتِّلِ الْقُرْآنَ تَرْتِيلًا

*wa rattilil Qur'āna tarfila*

And recite the Qur'ān slowly and thoughtfully (73:5)

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said:

خَيْرُكُمْ مَنْ تَعَلَّمَ الْقُرْآنَ وَعَلَّمَهُ

*khairukum man ta'allamal qur'āna wa 'allamahū*

*"The best among you is the one who learns the Holy Qur'ān and teaches it to others"*

Ḥaḍrat Masīh Mau'ūd<sup>as</sup> states about the Holy Qur'ān:

1. Recitation of the Holy Qur'ān melodiously is also a worship.
2. There is a blessing in the Holy Qur'ān that its recitation expands one's mind and removes speech impediments.
3. The real purpose of recitation of the Holy Qur'ān is to learn truth, to gain knowledge and to make a pious change in one's self.
4. I say it repeatedly and loudly that loving and obeying the Holy Qur'ān and the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> can make one capable of showing miracles.

In his book, Kashtī Nūḥ, the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup> has exhorted his community in these words:

"The real and perfect paths of salvation have been opened only by the Holy Qur'ān; all others were only its shadows. Therefore, you should study this Holy Scripture with the utmost attention and deepest thought; and you should love it as you have never loved anything else. For indeed, as God has conveyed to me:

الْخَيْرُ كُلُّهُ فِي الْقُرْآنِ

*al-khairu kulluhū fil-qur'ān*

i.e. All sort of virtues are in the Holy Qur'ān

All kinds of good are to be found in it - and this is truth. Unfortunate, indeed, are the people who give preference to other things over it. The Holy Qur'ān is the fountainhead of your salvation for all betterment and success. There is not even a single spiritual need which has not been met for you in this Holy Book. The supporter or falsifier of your faith on the Day of Judgement would be the Holy Qur'ān, and apart from this book, there is no other under the heavens, which can provide you with direct guidance. It is indeed a great blessing of God upon you that He has bestowed upon you a book like this. ... Realize, therefore, the value of the blessings bestowed upon you. It is a precious blessing and a great treasure."

*(Kashfī Nūḥ, Rūḥānī Khazā'in, Vol. 19, p. 26)*

Ḥadrat Khalifatul Masīh V<sup>aba</sup> in his Friday Sermon of September 24, 2004, stated the following with regards to teaching the recitation and translation of the Holy Qur'ān:

*"Every Aḥmadī should make sure that he himself, and his wife and children recite the Holy Qur'ān regularly. He should also make a full effort to learn the translation of the Holy Qur'ān. In addition, he should read Ḥadrat Masīh Mau'ūd's<sup>as</sup> Commentary of the Holy Qur'ān. They should recite the Holy Qur'ān as if it is not an ordinary book, but rather keeping in mind that it is the Word of God Almighty."*

Ḥadrat Khalifatul Masīh IV<sup>th</sup> in his Friday Sermon of June 19, 1998 stated the following with regards to the teaching of the recitation and translation of the Holy Qur'ān:

*"Just teaching the reading of the Holy Qur'ān is not enough. When you teach the meaning of the Holy Qur'ān, love for the Holy Qur'ān is bound to develop. ... If love of the Holy Qur'ān is established in one's self, all the problems of one's life will be solved. For those who love the Holy Qur'ān, evils disappear and they are given a new life."*

By the Grace of God Almighty, it has become possible for us to hold the Ta‘limul Qur’ān Classes in different regions of the USA during the past several years. The purpose of these classes has been to create awareness about the importance of learning and teaching the Holy Qur’ān with translation. Thus, the objectives of the Ta‘limul Qur’ān Classes were:

1. *Learn to recite the Holy Qur’ān correctly.*
2. *Learn split-word translation of the Holy Qur’ān.*
3. *Follow guidelines for the study of the commentary of the Holy Qur’ān.*
4. *Develop trainers for training others in the family.*
5. *Develop love of the study of the Holy Qur’ān.*

This book, Ta‘limul Qur’ān, has been prepared as a self-study book for learning the correct recitation and translation of the Holy Qur’ān and also for use as teacher's guide in the Ta‘limul Qur’ān Classes. It is a compilation of the material already published in the literature. For more details, the readers are urged to read the following:

- i. The Holy Qur’ān (English Translation): Maulawī Sher ‘Alī<sup>ra</sup>
- ii. The Holy Qur’ān (English Translation and Short Commentary): Edited by Malik Ghulām Farīd<sup>ra</sup>
- iii. The Holy Qur’ān (Urdū Translation): Mīr Muḥammad Ishāq<sup>ra</sup>
- iv. Qā‘idah Yassarnal Qur’ān: Pīr Manzūr Muḥammad<sup>ra</sup>
- v. Tartilul Qur’ān: Abū Lauda‘ Al-Ḥāfīz
- vi. Aṭ-Ṭarīq (Urdū): Abū Lauda‘ Al-Ḥāfīz
- vii. Correction of Some Common Mistakes (Urdū): Professor Sūfi Bishārat-ur-Raḥmān, MA
- viii. Invocations of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>: Dr. Karīmullāh Zīrvī
- ix. Meanings of the Difficult Words of the Holy Qur’ān: Compiled by Bashīr Aḥmad Qamar (English Translation by Ṭāḥīr Maḥmūd Aḥmad).
- x. Tajwīd for Beginners: M. Q. I. Ishāq, Aẓhar Academy Ltd., London, UK

The main features of the material covered in the book are:

1. *Fundamentals of the proper recitation of the Holy Qur’ān*
  - i. *Ramūz-e-Auqāf (Various stop signs of the Holy Qur’ān).*
  - ii. *Correction of some common mistakes.*
  - iii. *Basic Arabic Grammar.*
2. *Translation of Sūrah Al-Fatiḥah and the first five Rukū‘ of the following Sūrahs of the Holy Qur’ān: Al-Baqarah, Āl-e-‘Imrān, Al-Nisā’, and Al-Mā‘idah.*

3. *Qur'ānic vocabulary (Split-word translation of Sūrah Al-Fatīḥah and Sūrah Al-Baqarah) to learn translation of the Holy Qur'ān.*
4. *Guidelines for the memorization of the Holy Qur'ān.*
5. *Qur'ānic prayers.*

I am greatly thankful to Dr. Ahsanullah Zafar, Amīr Jamā'at, USA and Hafiz Samiullah Chaudhary for their interest and guidance towards making the Ta'limul Qur'ān program successful. I am also thankful to Maulana Munir-ud-Din Shams, Additional Wakilut-Taṣnīf, London and Maulana Daud Ahmad Hanif, Missionary In Charge and Nā'ib Amīr, USA for reviewing this book. I appreciate Mr. Latif Ahmed's help in making the cover of the book.

May God Almighty make this book a source of learning correct recitation and translation of the Holy Qur'ān. May all who study this book develop a love of the study of the Holy Qur'ān. Āmīn.

*Karimullah Zirvi*



## SYSTEM OF TRANSLITERATION

In transliterating Arabic words we have followed the following system adopted by the Royal Asiatic Society.

ا	at the beginning of a word, pronounced as <i>a</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> preceded by a very slight aspiration, like <i>h</i> in the English word 'honour'.
ث	<i>th</i> , pronounced like <i>th</i> in the English word 'thing'.
ح	<i>h</i> , a guttural aspirate, stronger than <i>h</i> .
خ	<i>kh</i> , pronounced like the Scotch <i>ch</i> in 'loch'.
ذ	<i>dh</i> , pronounced like the English <i>th</i> in 'that'.
ص	<i>s</i> , strongly articulated <i>s</i> .
ض	<i>ḍ</i> , similar to the English <i>th</i> in 'this'.
ط	<i>t</i> , strongly articulated palatal <i>t</i> .
ظ	<i>ẓ</i> , strongly articulated <i>z</i> .
ع	‘, a strong guttural, the pronunciation of which must be learnt by the ear.
غ	<i>gh</i> , a sound approached very nearly in the <i>r</i> 'grasseye' in French, and in the German <i>r</i> . It requires the muscles of the throat to be in the gargling position whilst pronouncing it.
ق	<i>q</i> , a deep guttural <i>k</i> sound.
ء	’, a sort of catch in the voice.

Short vowels are represented by *a* for ا (like *u* in 'bud'); *i* for ي (like *i* in 'bid'); *u* for و (like *oo* in 'wood'); the long vowels by *ā* for آ or ا (like *a* in 'father'); *ī* for ي (like *ee* in 'deep'); *ai* for ا (like *i* in 'site'); *ū* for و (like *oo* in 'root'); *au* for و (resembling *ou* in 'sound').

For quotes straight commas (straight quotes) are used to differentiate them from the curved commas used in the system of transliteration, ‘ for ع, and ’ for ء. Commas as punctuation marks are used according to the normal usage.

For the nasal sound of 'n' ن (Nūn) when و (Wāw) or ي (Yā’) with *shadda* follow the tanwīn has been represented by the symbol 'ñ'. Thus مِنْ وَ would be transliterated as 'miñwwa'.

The name of Muḥammad<sup>sa</sup>, the Holy Prophet of Islām, has been followed by the symbol <sup>sa</sup>, which is an abbreviation for the salutation *Ṣallallāhu ‘Alaihi Wasallam* (may peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him). The names of other Prophets and Messengers are followed by the symbol <sup>as</sup>, an abbreviation for ‘*Alaihissalām* (on whom be peace). The symbol <sup>ra</sup> is used with the name of the Companions of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> and those of the Promised Messiah<sup>as</sup>. It stands for *Raḍī Allāhu ‘anhu/‘anhā/‘anhum* (May Allāh be pleased with him/her/with them). The symbol <sup>rh</sup> stands for *Raḥimahullāhu Ta‘ālā* (may Allāh's blessings be on him). The symbol <sup>aba</sup> stands for *Ayyadahullāhu Ta‘ālā Binaṣrihil ‘Azīz* (May Allāh strengthen him with His Mighty help). The actual salutations have not generally been set out in full, but they should nevertheless, be understood as being repeated in full in each case.

# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

ذَٰلِكَ الْكِتَابُ لَا رَيْبَ ۚ فِيهِ هُدًى لِّلْمُتَّقِينَ ۝

*dhālikal kitābu lā raiba fih hudallil muttaqīn*

This is a perfect Book; there is no doubt in it; *it is* a guidance for the righteous. (2:3)

## RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

عَنِ بْنِ عَبَّاسٍ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى عَنْهُ قَالَ  
قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ ﷺ: إِنَّ الَّذِي لَيْسَ فِي  
جَوْفِهِ شَيْءٌ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ كَالْبَيْتِ الْخَرِبِ -

*‘anibni ‘abbāsin<sup>ra</sup> qāla qāla rasūlullāhi<sup>sa</sup> : innalladhī laisa fī jaufīhī shai’un  
minal-qur’āni kal baitil kharibi*

Ḥaḍrat Ibn ‘Abbās<sup>ra</sup> relates that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said:

He in whose heart there is nothing of the Qur’ān is  
like a house in ruin.  
(Tirmadhī)

# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

## *What is the Qur'ān*

The Qur'ān is the record of the verbal revelations in Arabic from God Almighty to the Holy Prophet Muhammad<sup>sa</sup>, over a period of about 23 years (610-632 AD). The word Qur'ān means that which is often read or recited. It contains a complete code of teaching and laws suitable to the needs of every age and provides the means for the spiritual and moral development of all mankind. The Holy Qur'ān also contains numerous prophecies for the future. The Holy Qur'ān calls itself a reminder to the worlds:

إِنْ هُوَ إِلَّا ذِكْرٌ لِلْعَالَمِينَ

*in huwa illā dhikrullil 'ālamīn*

It is nothing but a Reminder unto all the worlds. (81:28)

## *Compilation of the Holy Qur'ān*

The Divine revelations were committed to memory and written down by scribes appointed by the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. He, himself, indicated the arrangement of verses and chapters in the Qur'ān, as we find it today. So the entire text of the Holy Qur'ān was written on barks, leafs etc., during the lifetime of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. However, the compilation of it, in one volume, was undertaken and completed during the Khilāfat of Ḥadrat Abū Bakr<sup>ra</sup>.

## *Chapters and Verses of the Holy Qur'ān*

The Qur'ān is divided into one hundred and fourteen Sūrahs or Chapters. This division is based upon their subject matter and has the authority of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. Each Sūrah has a name given to it, and is further divided into *Āyāt* or verses. However, the division of the Holy Qur'ān into thirty Sīpārahs or Parts is arbitrary. A reference to a particular verse of the Holy Qur'ān is generally represented by two numbers separated by a colon, ":". For example, the reference (2:187) means the 187th verse of the 2nd Chapter.

## *Safeguarding of the Holy Qur'ān*

As soon as a revelation was received by the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> it was recorded in writing from his dictation. A number of persons are known to have been employed by the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> for this purpose. Of these the names of the following fifteen have been

mentioned in the traditions (Fath al-Bārī, Vol. 9, p. 19):

1. Zaid bin Thābit
2. Ubayy ibn Ka'b
3. 'Abdullāh bin Sa'd bin Abī Sarḥ
4. Zubair bin al-'Awwām
5. Khālīd bin Sa'īd bin al-'Ās
6. Abān bin Sa'īd bin al-'Ās
7. Hanḏalā bin al-Rabī' al-Asadī
8. Mu'aiqib bin Abī Fāṭima
9. 'Abdullāh bin Arqam al-Zuhri
10. Shuraḥbīl bin Ḥasana
11. 'Abdullāh bin Rawāḥa
12. Abū Bakr
13. 'Umar
14. 'Uthmān
15. 'Alī

Whenever the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> received a revelation, he would send for one of these persons and dictate to him the text of the revelation he had received.

A very distinctive feature of the Holy Qur'ān is that it contains a Divine guarantee for its perpetual preservation. God Almighty says in the Holy Qur'ān:

إِنَّا نَحْنُ نَزَّلْنَا الذِّكْرَ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَحَافِظُونَ ٥

*innā nahnu nazzalnadhdhikra wa innā lahū la ḥāfīzūn*

We sent down this book and verily We shall safeguard it. (15:10)

As a result of this guarantee, the text of the Holy Qur'ān has remained unchanged for more than fourteen hundred years.

### ***Some More Facts About the Holy Qur'ān***

- First Qur'ānic revelation was Sūrah Al-'Alaq, verses 2-5.
- Last Qur'ānic revelation was Sūrah Al-Baqarah, verse 282, or Sūrah Al-Mā'idah, verse 4.
- The total number of letters in the Holy Qur'ān is 323,760.
- The total number of words in the Holy Qur'ān is 86,430.
- The number of Ruku' in the Holy Qur'ān is 540.
- The number of places of *Sajdah Tilawat* (prostration during recitation) is fifteen.

## CHAPTERS (SŪRAHS) OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

CHAPTER	NAME	CHAPTER	NAME
Chapter 1	Al-Fātiḥah	Chapter 31	Luqmān
Chapter 2	Al-Baqarah	Chapter 32	Al-Sajdah
Chapter 3	Āl-e-‘Imrān	Chapter 33	Al-Aḥzāb
Chapter 4	Al-Nisā’	Chapter 34	Sabā’
Chapter 5	Al-Mā'idah	Chapter 35	Fāṭir
Chapter 6	Al-An‘ām	Chapter 36	Yā Sīn
Chapter 7	Al-A‘rāf	Chapter 37	Al-Ṣāffāt
Chapter 8	Al-Anfāl	Chapter 38	Ṣād
Chapter 9	Al-Taubah	Chapter 39	Al-Zumar
Chapter 10	Yūnus	Chapter 40	Al-Mu'min
Chapter 11	Hūd	Chapter 41	Hā Mīm al-Sajdah
Chapter 12	Yūsuf	Chapter 42	Al-Shūrā
Chapter 13	Al-Ra'd	Chapter 43	Al-Zukhruf
Chapter 14	Ibrāhīm	Chapter 44	Al-Dukhān
Chapter 15	Al-Ḥijr	Chapter 45	Al-Jāthiyāh
Chapter 16	Al-Naḥl	Chapter 46	Al-Aḥqāf
Chapter 17	Banī Isrā'īl	Chapter 47	Muḥammad
Chapter 18	Al-Kahf	Chapter 48	Al-Fath
Chapter 19	Maryam	Chapter 49	Al-Ḥujurāt
Chapter 20	Ṭā Hā	Chapter 50	Qāf
Chapter 21	Al-Anbiyā’	Chapter 51	Al-Dhāriyāt
Chapter 22	Al-Ḥajj	Chapter 52	Al-Ṭūr
Chapter 23	Al-Mu'minūn	Chapter 53	Al-Najm
Chapter 24	Al-Nūr	Chapter 54	Al-Qamar
Chapter 25	Al-Furqān	Chapter 55	Al-Raḥmān
Chapter 26	Al-Shu‘arā’	Chapter 56	Al-Wāqī‘ah
Chapter 27	Al-Naml	Chapter 57	Al-Ḥadīd
Chapter 28	Al-Qaṣaṣ	Chapter 58	Al-Mujādalah
Chapter 29	Al-‘Ankabūt	Chapter 59	Al-Ḥashr
Chapter 30	Al-Rūm	Chapter 60	Al-Mumtaḥinah

## CHAPTERS (SŪRAHS) OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

CHAPTER	NAME	CHAPTER	NAME
Chapter 61	Al-Ṣaff	Chapter 91	Al-Shams
Chapter 62	Al-Jumu'ah	Chapter 92	Al-Lail
Chapter 63	Al-Munāfiqūn	Chapter 93	Al-Ḍuḥā
Chapter 64	Al-Taghābun	Chapter 94	Al-Inshirāḥ
Chapter 65	Al-Ṭalāq	Chapter 95	Al-Tin
Chapter 66	Al-Taḥrīm	Chapter 96	Al-'Alq
Chapter 67	Al-Mulk	Chapter 97	Al-Qadr
Chapter 68	Al-Qalam	Chapter 98	Al-Bayyinah
Chapter 69	Al-Ḥāqqah	Chapter 99	Al-Zilzāl
Chapter 70	Al-Ma'ārij	Chapter 100	Al-'Ādiyāt
Chapter 71	Nūh	Chapter 101	Al-Qāri'ah
Chapter 72	Al-Jinn	Chapter 102	Al-Takāthur
Chapter 73	Al-Muzzammil	Chapter 103	Al-'Aṣr
Chapter 74	Al-Muddaththir	Chapter 104	Al-Humazah
Chapter 75	Al-Qiyāmah	Chapter 105	Al-Fīl
Chapter 76	Al-Dhar	Chapter 106	Al-Quraish
Chapter 77	Al-Mursalāt	Chapter 107	Al-Mā'ūn
Chapter 78	Al-Naba'	Chapter 108	Al-Kauthar
Chapter 79	Al-Nazī'āt	Chapter 109	Al-Kāfirūn
Chapter 80	'Abasa	Chapter 110	Al-Naṣr
Chapter 81	Al-Takwīr	Chapter 111	Al-Lahab
Chapter 82	Al-Infiṭār	Chapter 112	Al-Ikhlāṣ
Chapter 83	Al-Taṭfīf	Chapter 113	Al-Falaq
Chapter 84	Al-Inshiqāq	Chapter 114	Al-Nās
Chapter 85	Al-Burūj		
Chapter 86	Al-Ṭāriq		
Chapter 87	Al-A'lā		
Chapter 88	Al-Ghāshiyah		
Chapter 89	Al-Fajr		
Chapter 90	Al-Balad		



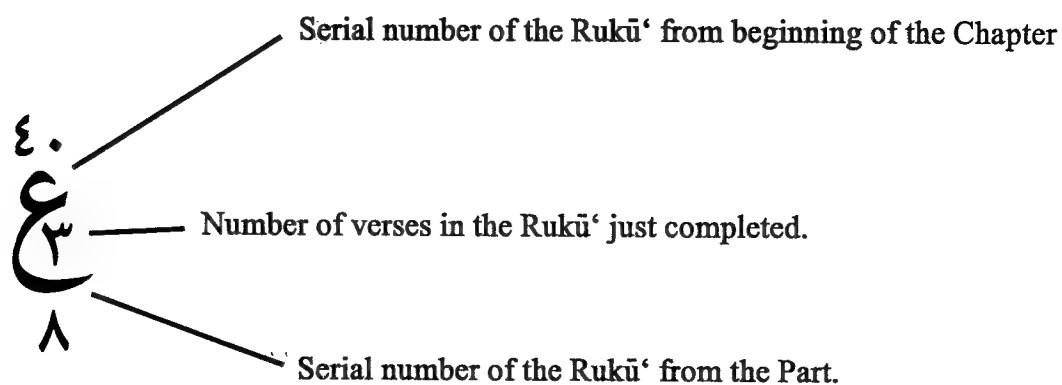
# PARTS OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

PART	Transliteration	NAME	PART	Transliteration	NAME
Part 1	alif lām mīm	الْم	Part 16	qāla alam	قَالَ أَلَمْ
Part 2	sayaqūlu	سَيَقُولُ	Part 17	iqtaraba linnāsi	إِقْتَرَبَ لِلنَّاسِ
Part 3	tilkarrusulu	تِلْكَ الرُّسُلُ	Part 18	qad aflaha	قَدْ أَفْلَحَ
Part 4	lan tanālu	لَنْ تَنَالُوا	Part 19	wa qālalladhīna	وَقَالَ الَّذِينَ
Part 5	wal-muḥṣanātu	وَالْمُحْصَنَاتُ	Part 20	amman kalaqa	أَمَّنْ خَلَقَ
Part 6	lā yuḥibbullāhu	لَا يُحِبُّ اللَّهُ	Part 21	utlu mā ūḥiya	أَتْلُ مَا أُوحِيَ
Part 7	wa idhā sami'ū	وَإِذَا سَمِعُوا	Part 22	wa mañyyaqnut	وَمَنْ يَفْقَهُتْ
Part 8	walau annanā	وَلَوْ أَنَّا	Part 23	wamā liya	وَمَا لِي
Part 9	qālal mala-u	قَالَ الْمَلَأُ	Part 24	faman aẓlamu	فَمَنْ أَظْلَمُ
Part 10	wa'lamū	وَاعْلَمُوا	Part 25	ilaihi yuraddu	إِلَيْهِ يُرَدُّ
Part 11	ya'tadhirūna	يَعْتَذِرُونَ	Part 26	ḥā mīm	حَمَّ
Part 12	wamā min dābbatin	وَمَا مِنْ دَابَّةٍ	Part 27	qāla famā khatbukum	قَالَ فَمَا خَطْبُكُمْ
Part 13	wamā ubarri'u	وَمَا أُبْرَى	Part 28	qad sami'allāhu	قَدْ سَمِعَ اللَّهُ
Part 14	rubamā	رُبَمَا	Part 29	tabārakalladhī	تَبَارَكَ الَّذِي
Part 15	subḥānalladhī	سُبْحَانَ الَّذِي	Part 30	'amma	عَمَّ

## RUKŪ' SIGN AND DIVISION OF A PART OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

٤٠  
ع  
٨

This sign is always written on the margin of the page to indicate the completion of Rukū'. The following diagram clearly explains the different parts of this sign:



### Parts and Sub-parts

ربع Ruba': means 1/4th of the Part.

نصف Niṣf: means 1/2 of the Part.

ثلث Thuluth: means 3/4th of the Part.

الجزء Al-Juz': The whole Part.

These divisions of the Part are sometimes at the completion of the Rukū' and sometimes in between.

The significance of these divisions is that the reader may find marks for recitation of the Holy Qur'ān and also for reference purposes. This helps the reader to determine how much he has covered. It has no significant value as far as the subject in the text is concerned.

## Manāzil

The whole text of the Holy Qur'ān has been divided into seven Manāzil. The division is as follows:

Manzil	From Chapter #	To Chapter #
First	1	4
Second	5	9
Third	10	16
Fourth	17	25
Fifth	26	36
Sixth	37	49
Seventh	50	114

## Serial Number of Verses

Inside the sign of a verse (0 or □) a number is written. This is the serial number starting from the beginning of the Chapter. For the numbering of the verses we count the following verse (for all Chapters) as verse number one:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ 0

This is the reason why there is a difference of one number in the serial number of the verses of all the Chapters of the Holy Qur'ān printed under the auspices of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Jamā'at and those printed by many others outside the Jamā'at. Take this difference into consideration while quoting references of the verses of the Holy Qur'ān. The only exception is *Sūrah Al-Taubah* (Chapter 9) which begins without

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ which is a conclusive proof that بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ is the first verse of each Chapter of the Holy Qur'ān and is not just added in the beginning of each Chapter for the purpose of blessings only. بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ is mentioned in Chapter Sabā' twice: First in the beginning and then in the middle of the Chapter in Ḥadrat Suleman's letter to Queen Sabā'.

(Tafsir-e-Ṣaghīr, p 1)

## مُقَطَّعَات

# Muqatta‘āt (Letters of Abbreviations) Mentioned in the Holy Qur‘ān

In the Holy Qur‘ān at the beginning of some of the chapters, after بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ certain letters are given which are in fact abbreviations of certain words. These letters are called مُقَطَّعَات muqatta‘āt. Their pronunciation is governed by the following rules:

1. A letter bearing *Madda* ٓ is read by its original name with prolonged sound.
2. A letter with vertical *Fathah* َ is pronounced according to the sign.
3. Blank alif, here, is not silent. It is read by its original name.
4. A letter with *Shadda* ّ combines the letter that comes before it according to common rules.

Each letter in the مُقَطَّعَات muqatta‘āt is read separately. Furthermore, while reciting the مُقَطَّعَات muqatta‘āt during recitation of the Holy Qur‘ān the above mentioned rules and the rules mentioned in the Ramūz-e-Auqāf must be followed. Thus, if a letter in the abbreviated letters shows presence of a vowel when it is pronounced which is followed by a sukūn or a tashdid, the long vowel in the word will be prolonged excessively. For example, in ḥā mīm حَمِيمٌ (حَا مِيمٌ) only حَا ḥā has a long vowel sound in it, so it will be read a little long. However, مِيمٌ mīm has sukūn in it after the long vowel ي (yā‘) in its pronunciation, so it will bear the sign of a madd (super long vowel) and its sound will be excessively pronounced.

## Muqatta'āt مَقْطَعَاتُ Mentioned in the Holy Qur'ān

Meaning	Abbreviation of	Chapter	مَقْطَعَاتُ muqatta'āt
I am Allāh, the All-Knowing	أَنَا اللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ	Al-Baqarah	الْمِ alif lām mīm
I am Allāh, I know and I explain.  (Truthful God)	أَنَا اللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ - أَفْصِلُ (صَادِقُ الْقَوْلِ)	Al-A'rāf	الْقَمِصِ alif lām mīm ṣād
I am Allāh Who is All-Seeing	أَنَا اللَّهُ أَرَى	Yūnus	الرِّ alif lām rā
I am Allāh, the All-Knowing and the All-Seeing	أَنَا اللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ وَ أَرَى	Al-Ra'd	الرِّ alif lām mīm rā
Thou art sufficient for all and Thou art the True Guide. O All-Knowing, Truthful God!	أَنْتَ كَافٍ وَهَادٍ يَا عَالِمُ يَا صَادِقُ	Maryam	كَهَيْعَمِصِ kāf hā yā 'ain ṣād
O Perfect Man!*	طَيبٌ هَادِيٌ	Tā Hā	طَهْ tā hā
Benignant, All-Hearing, All-Knowing God!	طَيبٌ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ	Al-Shu'arā'	طَسَمِ tā sīn mīm
Benignant, All-Hearing God!	طَيبٌ سَمِيعٌ	Al-Naml	طَسِ tā sīn
O Perfect Leader!	يَا سَيِّدُ	Yā Sīn	يَسِ yā sīn
Truthful God!	صَادِقُ الْقَوْلِ	Ṣād	صِ ṣād
The Praiseworthy, the Lord of Honor.	حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ	Al-Mu'min	حَمِ hā mīm
The Praiseworthy, the Lord of Honor; The All-Knowing, the All-Hearing, the Possessor of Power.	حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ عَلِيمٌ سَمِيعٌ قَدِيرٌ	Al-Shūrā	حَمِ hā mīm عَسَقِ 'ain sīn qāf
The Praiseworthy, the Lord of Honor.	حَمِيدٌ مَجِيدٌ	Hā Mīm Al-Sajdah	حَمِ hā mīm
The Possessor of Power.	قَدِيرٌ	Qāf	قِ qāf
I am the Light of all the Worlds. (By the inkstand)	أَنَا النُّورُ	Al-Qalam	نِ nūn

\* *Tā Hā* is a combination of *Tā* and *Hā*. In the dialect of 'Akk, an Arabic tribe, it means, 'O my beloved' or 'O perfect man'.

# ETIQUETTES OF RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

## *Physical and Spiritual Purification*

إِنَّهُ لَقُرْآنٌ كَرِيمٌ ۚ فِي كِتَابٍ مَكْنُونٍ ۚ لَا يَمَسُّهُ إِلَّا الْمُطَهَّرُونَ ۚ

*innahū la qur'ānun karīmun fi kitābimmaknūnillā yamassuhū illal muṭahharūn*

That this is indeed a noble Qur'ān; In a well preserved book; Which none shall touch except those who are purified (56:78-80)

We should be physically clean and, preferably, perform wuḍū before its recitation. Also to fully absorb the blessings of the Qur'ān and to understand its real meanings, one should be spiritually pure, clean and sincere in one's beliefs.

## *Prayer Before Starting Recitation Of the Holy Qur'ān*

It is stated in the Holy Qur'ān:

فَإِذَا قَرَأْتَ الْقُرْآنَ فَاسْتَعِذْ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ ۚ

*fa idhā qara'tal qur'āna fasta'idh billāhi minashshaiṭānirrajīm*

And when you recite the Qur'ān, seek refuge with Allāh from Satan the rejected. (16:99)

## *Isti'adhah*

أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

*a'ūdhubillāhi minashshaiṭānirrajīm*

I seek refuge with Allāh from Satan the rejected.

It is important to understand the philosophy of seeking Allāh's protection while reciting the Holy Qur'ān. We must seek Allāh's protection so that:

- We may not miss any teaching of the Qur’ān due to our negligence, sins or evil company.
- We may not fail to understand rightly any teachings of the Holy Qur’ān.
- Having understood, may Allāh provide us the strength to act upon the teachings of the Holy Qur’ān and never forgo or ignore them.

## THE RULES OF ISTI’ĀDHAH AND BISMILLĀH

- i. It is necessary to recite *Isti’ādhah* before reciting the Holy Qur’ān.
- ii. When starting a Sūrah, it is necessary to recite (except beginning of Sūrah Al-Taubah):

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīm*

- iii. If commencing recitation anywhere in a Sūrah, besides the beginning, then it will be optional to recite or not recite Bismillāh.

### Recitation of Isti’ādhah and Bismillāh at the beginning of a Sūrah

This can be done in four ways:

#### 1. Waṣl-e-kull

To recite Isti’ādhah, Bismillāh and the beginning of the Sūrah together:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīmi*

أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

*a‘ūdhubillāhi minashshaiṭā nirrajīmi*

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

*alḥamdu lillāhi rabbil ‘ālamīn*

## 2. Waṣḥle Awwal - Faṣḥle Thānī

To recite Isti‘ādhah and Bismillāh together, stopping after Bismillāh and reciting the beginning of the Sūrah separately.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīm*

أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

*a‘ūdhubillāhi minashshaiṭā nirrajīm*

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

*alhamdu lillāhi rabbil ‘ālamīn*

## 3. Faṣḥle Awwal - Waṣḥle Thānī

To recite Isti‘ādhah separately and Bismillāh and the beginning of the Sūrah together.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīm*

أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

*a‘ūdhubillāhi minashshaiṭā nirrajīm*

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

*alhamdu lillāhi rabbil ‘ālamīn*

## 4. Faṣḥle Kull

To recite Isti‘ādhah, Bismillāh and the beginning of the Sūrah separately.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīm*

أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

*a‘ūdhubillāhi minashshaiṭā nirrajīm*

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ

*alhamdu lillāhi rabbil ‘ālamīn*



## COMPLETING OF A SŪRAH AND BEGINNING OF THE NEXT SŪRAH

It can be done in following three ways:

### 1. Waṣḥ Kull

To recite the end of a Sūrah, Bismillāh and the beginning of the next Sūrah together:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ  
*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīmi*

وَتَوَاصَوْ بِالْحَقِّ وَتَوَاصَوْ بِالصَّبْرِ  
*watawāṣau bilḥaqqi watawāṣau biṣṣabri*

وَيْلٌ لِّكُلِّ هُمَزَةٍ لُّمَزَةٍ  
*wailulli kulli humazatillumazati*

### 2. Faṣḥ Awwal - Waṣḥ Thāni

To recite the end of a Sūrah separately, and Bismillāh and the beginning of the next Sūrah together.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ  
*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīmi*

وَتَوَاصَوْ بِالْحَقِّ وَتَوَاصَوْ بِالصَّبْرِ  
*watawāṣau bilḥaqqi watawāṣau biṣṣabri*

وَيْلٌ لِّكُلِّ هُمَزَةٍ لُّمَزَةٍ  
*wailulli kulli humazatillumazah*

### 3. Faṣḥ Kull

To recite the end of a Sūrah, Bismillāh and the beginning of the next Sūrah separately.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ  
*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīm*

وَتَوَاصَوْ بِالْحَقِّ وَتَوَاصَوْ بِالصَّبْرِ  
*watawāṣau bilḥaqqi watawāṣau biṣṣabri*

وَيْلٌ لِّكُلِّ هُمَزَةٍ لُّمَزَةٍ  
*wailulli kulli humazatillumazah*

# Sajdah Tilāwat

## سجده تلاوت

### LOCATIONS OF SAJDATILĀWAT (PROSTRATION DURING RECITATION) IN THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

1. Al-A'rāf (7:207)	يُسَبِّحُونَهُ وَلَهُ يَسْجُدُونَ 0
2. Al-Ra'd (13:16)	طُوعًا وَكَرْهًا وَظُلُمًا بِالْغُدُوِّ وَالْآصَالِ 0
3. Al-Nahl (16:51)	يَفْعَلُونَ مَا يُؤْمَرُونَ 0
4. Banī Isrā'īl (17:110)	يَخْرُونَ لِلْأَذْقَانِ يَنْكُونَ وَيَرْبُدُونَ هُمْ خُشُوعًا 0
5. Maryam (19:59)	خَرُّوا سُجَّدًا وَبُكِيًّا 0
6. Al-Hajj (22:19)	إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَفْعَلُ مَا يَشَاءُ 0
7. Al-Hajj (22:78)	وَأَسْجُدُوا وَاعْبُدُوا رَبَّكُمْ وَافْعَلُوا الْخَيْرَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُفْلِحُونَ 0
8. Al-Furqān (25:61)	أَنْسَجِدُ لِمَا تَأْمُرُنَا وَزَادَهُمْ تُفُورًا 0
9. Al-Naml (27:27)	لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ رَبُّ الْعَرْشِ الْعَظِيمِ 0
10. Al-Sajdah (32:16)	سَبِّحُوا بِحَمْدِ رَبِّهِمْ وَهُمْ لَا يَسْتَكْبِرُونَ 0
11. Šād (38:25)	خَرَّ رَاكِعًا وَ أُنَابَ 0
12. Hā Mīm Al-Sajdah (41:39)	وَهُمْ لَا يَسْتَكْبِرُونَ 0
13. Al-Najm (53:63)	فَأَسْجُدُوا لِلَّهِ وَاعْبُدُوا 0
14. Al-Inshiqāq (84:22)	وَإِذَا قُرِئَ عَلَيْهِمُ الْقُرْآنُ لَا يَسْجُدُونَ 0
15. Al-'Alaq (96:20)	وَأَسْجُدْ وَاقْتَرِبْ 0

## Prayers of Sajdah Tilāwat (Prostration During Recitation of the Holy Qur'ān)

One should prostrate where *Sajdah* is described in the verses of the Holy Qur'ān. For this prostration it is not necessary to be in a state of *wuḍū'* or to face the *Qiblah*. Besides the standard prayers of glorification of Allāh (*Tasbīhāt*), recitation of the following prayers is found in various traditions of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>.

§ Ḥaḍrat 'Ā'ishah<sup>ra</sup> relates that when the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> prostrated himself at night while reciting the Holy Qur'ān he said:

سَجَدَ وَجْهِي لِلَّذِي خَلَقَهُ وَشَقَّ سَمْعَهُ وَبَصَرَهُ بِحَوْلِهِ وَقُوَّتِهِ-

*sajada wajhiya lilladhī khalaqahū, wa shaqqa sam'ahū, wa baṣarahū, wa bihauhihī wa quwwatihī*

My face (Myself) prostrates itself to Him Who created it and brought forth its hearing and seeing by His Might and Power.

(An-Nasā'ī, Tirmadhī Kitābud-Da'wāt)

§ Ḥaḍrat 'Alī<sup>ra</sup> relates that as the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> used to make the following supplication when he prostrated for *Sajdah Tilāwat*:

اَللّٰهُمَّ لَكَ سَجَدْتُ وَبِكَ اٰمَنْتُ وَلَكَ اَسْلَمْتُ اَنْتَ رَبِّيْ سَجَدَ وَجْهِيْ  
لِلَّذِي شَقَّ سَمْعَهُ وَبَصَرَهُ تَبَارَكَ اللهُ اَحْسَنُ الْخَالِقِيْنَ-

*allahumma laka sajadtu, wabika āmantu, walaka aslamtu, anta rabbī, sajada wajhiya lilladhī shaqqa sam'ahu wa baṣarahu, tabārakallāhu aḥsanul khāliqīn*

O Allāh, for Thee I prostrated; and in Thee I affirmed Faith; to Thee I surrendered. Thou art my Lord, my countenance (self) prostrates itself to Him who created it and brought forth its hearing and seeing by His Might and Power. Blessed is Allāh, the Best of the Creators.

(Ibni Mājah)

§

Another prayer of *Sajdah Tilawat* is:

اللَّهُمَّ سَجَدَ لَكَ سَوَادِي وَأَمَنَ بِكَ قُودِي

*allahumma sajada laka sawādi wa āmana bika fu'ādi*

O Allāh! My whole body bowed before You and my heart believed in You.

§

The following prayer of *Sajdah Tilawat* is mentioned in *Fiqh Ahmadiyya*:

اللَّهُمَّ سَجَدَ لَكَ رُوحِي وَجَنَانِي

*allahumma sajada laka rūhī wa janānī*

O Allāh! my soul and my heart is in prostration for You.

(*Fiqh Ahmadiyya*)

\*\*\*\*\*

## ETIQUETTE OF LISTENING THE RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

It is stated in the Holy Qur'ān:

وَإِذَا قُرِئَ الْقُرْآنُ فَاسْتَمِعُوا لَهُ وَأَنْصِتُوا لَعَلَّكُمْ تُرْحَمُونَ ٥

*wa idhā qurī'al qur'ānu fastami'ū lahū wa anṣitū la'allakum turhamūn*

And when the Qur'ān is recited, give ear to it and keep silence, that you may be shown mercy. (7:205)

\*\*\*\*\*

## WHAT TO BE SAID BY THE READER AND THE LISTENER OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN WHEN CERTAIN VERSES OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN ARE RECITED

1. At the end of Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah (1:7) after the words:

وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ ۝ *wa laḍḍuā allin*

one should say:

آمين *Āmīn*

O God! accept our prayers

One should say *Āmīn* آمين in loud or low voice, upon reciting or listening similar other supplicatory verses of the Holy Qur'ān.

2. In reply to the last verse of Sūrah Al-Baqarah (2:287) in which *rabbanā* prayers are recited, acceptance should be sought by saying: *Āmīn*. When the following words are read or heard:

وَاعْفُ عَنَّا وَارْحَمْنَا ۝ *wa'afu 'annā waghfir lanā warḥamnā*

*wa'fu 'annā waghfir lanā warḥamnā*

And efface our *sins*, and grant us forgiveness and have mercy on us

one should say *Āmīn* and this prayer should be recited:

رَبِّ اغْفِرْ لِي اللَّهُمَّ رَبَّنَا لَكَ الْحَمْدُ

*rabbighfir li allāhumma rabbanā lakalḥamd*

O Lord! forgive me (my previous sins and protect and save me from every type of sins in the future). O Allāh, our Lord! all praise belongs to You.

3. When one listens or reads the following verse in Sūrah Āl-e-'Imrān (3:19):

شَهِدَ اللَّهُ أَنَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ لَا هُوَ لَا هُوَ لَا هُوَ وَلَا الْمَلَائِكَةُ وَلَا أُولُوا الْعِلْمِ قَائِمًا بِالْقِسْطِ

*shahidallāhu annahū lā ilāha illā huwa walmaʿā'ikatu wa ulul 'ilmi  
qā'imam bilqist*

Allāh bears witness that there is no God but He---and *also do* the angels and those possessed of knowledge---Always standing guard over justice.

one should say:

رَبِّي أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ

*rabbī ash-hadu allā ilāha illā anta*

O my God! I bear witness that there is no God except Thee.

4. At the end of Sūrah Banī Isrā'il (17:112) after the words:

وَكَبِّرْهُ تَكْبِيرًا 0 *wa kabbirhu takbira*

And extol His glory with all glorification.

one should say:

اللَّهُ أَكْبَرُ *allāhu akbar*

Allāh is the Greatest

5. When one listens or reads the following verse in Sūrah Al-Aḥzāb (33:57):

إِنَّ اللَّهَ وَمَلَائِكَتَهُ يُصَلُّونَ عَلَى النَّبِيِّ يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا صَلُّوا عَلَيْهِ وَسَلِّمُوا

تَسْلِيمًا 0

*innallāha wa malā'ikatahū yuṣallūna 'alannabiyyi yā ayyuhalladhīna  
āmanū ṣallū 'alaihi wa sallimū taslimā*

Allāh and His angels send blessings on the Prophet. O you who believe! you *also* should

invoke blessings on him and salute *him* with the salutation of peace.

one should say:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ وَرَحِمَتُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ - اَللّٰهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ

*assalamu 'alaika ayyuhannabiyyu wa rahmatullahi wa barakatuhū,  
allahumma ṣalli 'alā muḥammadin*

Peace be on you O the Messenger of God and God's Mercy and Blessings. Bless, O Allāh, Muḥammad.

Wherever the Holy name of Prophet Muḥammad<sup>sa</sup> comes while reciting the Holy Qur'ān, the following words should be said:

صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ *ṣallallāhu 'alaihi wasallam*

Peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him

The Holy name of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has been mentioned four times in the Holy Qur'ān (3:145, 33:41, 47:3 and 48:30).

6. When one listens or reads the following verse in Sūrah Yāsīn (36:79):

مَنْ يُخَيِّ الْعِظَامَ وَهِيَ رَمِيمٌ ۝ *mañyyuhyil 'izāma wa hiya ramīm 0*

Who can quicken the bones when they are decayed?

one should say:

يُخَيِّهَا الَّذِي أَنْشَأَهَا أَوَّلَ مَرَّةٍ وَهُوَ بِكُلِّ خَلْقٍ عَلِيمٌ ۝

*yuhyihalladhī ansha-ahā awwala marratin wa huwa bikulli khalqin 'alīm*

He, Who created them the first time, will quicken them and He knows well the condition of every created thing.

7. When one listens or reads the following verse in Sūrah Yāsīn (36:82):

أَو لَيْسَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ السَّمُوتِ وَالْأَرْضَ بِقَدِيرٍ عَلَى أَنْ يَخْلُقَ مِثْلَهُمْ ؕ

*awa laisalladhi khalqassamāwāti wal arḍa bi qādirin ‘alā añyyakhluqa mithlahum*

Has not He Who created the heavens and the earth the power to create the like of them?

one should say:

بَلَىٰ وَهُوَ الْخَلَّاقُ الْعَلِيمُ ۝ *baḷa wa huwal khallaqul ‘alim*

Yes, and He is indeed the Supreme Creator, the All-Knowing

8. In Sūrah Al-Raḥmān (55:14) after the words:

فَبِأَيِّ آلَاءِ رَبِّكُمَا تُكَذِّبِينَ ۝ *fabi ayyi ālā’i rabbikumā tukadhdhibān*

Which, then, of the favors of your Lord will you twain deny, *O men and Jinn*?

one should say:

لَا بِشَيْءٍ مِّنْ نِّعْمَتِكَ نُكَذِّبُ يَا رَبَّنَا

*lā bi shai’imminni‘matika nukadhdhibu yā rabbanā*

None of Your favors we deny, O our Lord

9. When one listens or reads any one of these verses in Sūrah Al-Wāqī‘ah (56:60, 65, 70, 73):

ءَ أَنْتُمْ تَخْلُقُونَهُ أَمْ نَحْنُ الْخَالِقُونَ ۝

*‘a-antum takhluqūnahū am naḥnul khāliqūn*

Is it you who have created it or are We the Creator?

ءَ أَنْتُمْ تَزْرَعُونَهُ أَمْ نَحْنُ الزَّارِعُونَ ۝



*'a antum tazra 'ūnahū am nahnuzzārī'ūn*

Is it you who grow it or are We the Grower?

ءَأَنْتُمْ أَنْزَلْتُمُوهُ مِنَ الْمُزْنِ أَمْ نَحْنُ الْمُنْزِلُونَ ٥

*'a-antum anzaltumūhu minalmuzni am nahnul munzilūn*

Is it you who send it down from the clouds, or are We the Sender?

ءَأَنْتُمْ أَنْشَأْتُمْ شَجَرَتَهَا أَمْ نَحْنُ الْمُنْشِئُونَ ٥

*'a-antum ansha'tum shajaratahā am nahnul munshi'ūn*

Is it you who produce the tree for it, or are We the Producer?

one should say:

بَلْ أَنْتَ يَا رَبِّ *bal anta yā rabbi*

But Thou only, O my Lord!

10. When one listens or reads this verse in Sūrah Al-Wāqī'ah (56:75):

فَسَبِّحْ بِاسْمِ رَبِّكَ الْعَظِيمِ ٥ *fasabbih bismi rabbikal 'azīm*

So glorify the name of thy Lord, the Great.

one should say:

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْعَظِيمِ *subhāna rabbiyal 'azīm*

Holy is my Lord, the Great

11. At the end of Sūrah Al-Mulk (67:31) after the words:

قُلْ أَرَأَيْتُمْ إِنْ أَصْبَحَ مَاؤُكُمْ غَوْرًا فَمَنْ يَأْتِيكُمْ بِمَاءٍ مَعِينٍ ٥

*qul ara 'aitum in asbaḥa mā 'ukum ghauran famaṣṣya 'tikum bi  
mā 'imma 'in*

Say, 'Tell me, if *all* your water sinks into a deep recess, who then will bring you *clear*  
flowing water?

one should say:

*allāhu ya 'tīnā biḥi wa huwa rabbul 'ālamīn* اللَّهُ يَاتِينَا بِهِ وَهُوَ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ

Only Allāh will bring water to us Who is Lord of all the worlds

12. At the end of Sūrah Al-Qiyāmah (75:41) after the words:

*al-nās ḏalika biqadri 'alā an-ṣayyuhīyal maufā* أَلَيْسَ ذَلِكَ بِقَدْرِ عَلَى أَنْ يُخَيَّرَ الْمَوْتَى ٥

*a-laisa dhālika biqadirin 'alā aṣṣayyuhīyal maufā*

Has not such a One the power to raise the dead to life?

one should say:

*balā innahū 'alā kulli shai'in qadira* بَلَى إِنَّهُ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ٥

Yes, surely He has the power over all things.

13. At the end of Sūrah Al-Mursalāt (77:51) after the words:

*fabi ayyi ḥadīthim ba'dahū yu'minūn* فَبِأَيِّ حَدِيثٍ بَعْدَهُ يُؤْمِنُونَ ٥

*fabi ayyi ḥadīthim ba'dahū yu'minūn*

In which word then, after this, will they believe?

one should say:

*āmannā billāhi* آمَنَّا بِاللَّهِ

*āmannā billāhi*

We believe in Allāh

14. In the second verse of Sūrah Al-A‘lā (87:2) after the words:

سَبِّحْ اسْمَ رَبِّكَ الْأَعْلَى ۝ *sabbihisma rabbikal a‘Ta*

Glorify the name of thy Lord, the Most High

one should say:

سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيَ الْأَعْلَى

*subhāna rabbiyal a‘Ta*

Holy is my Lord, the Most High

15. At the end of Sūrah Al-Ghāshiyah (88:27) after the words:

إِنَّ إِلَيْنَا إِيَابَهُمْ ۝ ثُمَّ إِنَّ عَلَيْنَا حِسَابَهُمْ ۝

*inna ilainā iyābahum thumma inna ‘alainā hisābahum*

Unto us surely is their return. Then, surely, it is for Us to call them to account.

one should say:

اللَّهُمَّ حَاسِبُنَا حِسَابًا يَسِيرًا ۝ *allahumma hāsibnā hisābañnyyasīra*

O God! make easy my reckoning

16. When one listens or reads the following verse in Sūrah Al-Shams (91:9):

فَالْهَمَهَا فُجُورَهَا وَتَقْوَاهَا ۝

*fa-alhamahā fujūrahā wa taqwāhā*

And He revealed to it what is wrong for it what is right for it ---

one should say:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَتِ نَفْسِيْ تَقْوٰیهَا وَ زَكَّاهَا اَنْتَ خَيْرُ مَنْ زَكَّاهَا اَنْتَ وَلِيُّهَا وَ مَوْلَاهَا

*allāhumma āti nafsī taqwāhā wa zakkahā anta khairu man zakkāhā anta waliyyuhā wa maulāhā*

O God! give myself what is right and purified for it. Thou are the best of them Who purified it. Thou are Guardian and Master of it.

17. At the end of Sūrah Al-Tīn (95:9) after the words:

اَلَيْسَ اللّٰهُ بِاَحْكَمِ الْحٰكِمِيْنَ ۝ ۙ *alaisallāhu bi aḥkamil ḥākīmīn*

Is not Allāh the Best of judges?

one should say:

بَلٰى وَاَنَا عَلٰى ذٰلِكَ مِنَ الشّٰهِدِيْنَ

*balā wa anā ‘alā dhālika minashshāhidīn*

Yes, why not, I am among witnesses on this point

18. At the end of Sūrah Al-Naṣr (110:4) after the words:

فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ

*fasabbih bi ḥamdi rabbika wastaghfirhu*

Glorify thy Lord with *His* praise, and seek His forgiveness

one should say:

سُبْحَانَكَ اللّٰهُمَّ رَبَّنَا وَبِحَمْدِكَ اللّٰهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِيْ

*subḥānaka allāhumma rabbanā wabi ḥamdika allāhummaghfirhī*

Holy is Thou O Allāh, our God with Thy praise. O Allāh forgive me.

19. Where is the mention of paradise one should pray:

**اللَّهُمَّ ادْخُلْنَا فِي رَحْمَتِكَ *allāhummadkhillnā fi rahmatika***

O Allāh! Admit us to it with Your Mercy

20. Where punishment is mentioned there the following should be prayed:

**اللَّهُمَّ لَا تُعَذِّبْنَا *allāhumma lā tu‘adhdhibnā***

O Allāh! Do not punish us

21. It has been ordained to seek forgiveness at various occasions in the Holy Qur’ān. For instant in Sūrah Al-Baqarah: Verse #200; Al-Nisā’: Verse #107; and Al-Ḥadid: Verse #53. In reply it should be said:

**أَسْتَغْفِرُ اللَّهَ *astaghfirullāh***

I seek forgiveness of Allāh

§ Ḥaḍrat Ḥudhaifah bin Mālīk Ashja‘ī<sup>ra</sup> relates that he stood along with the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> for *Nafal* Prayers, while he<sup>sa</sup> recited *Sūrah Al-Baqarah*. Whenever he<sup>sa</sup> recited the portion referring to the blessings of Allāh, he<sup>sa</sup> paused and asked for the blessings of Allāh, and whenever he recited the portion referring to some punishment, he paused and asked for protection of Allāh from the punishment. (*Abū Dā’ūd Kitābus-Ṣaḥīḥ*). Ḥudhaifah<sup>ra</sup> further relates that wherever there was a need to say *Tasbīh*, the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> always said:

**سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ *subḥānallāh*** Holy is Allāh

(*Muslim Kitābus-Ṣaḥīḥ*)

Ḥaḍrat Abī Laila<sup>ra</sup> relates that he observed Prayer by the side of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> while he was offering voluntary Prayer at night. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> recited the verse (conveying a warning) of the torment. Upon this, he prayed:

**أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ النَّارِ ، وَوَيْلٌ لِأَهْلِ النَّارِ -**

***a‘ūdhu billāhi minannāri, wa wailun li ahlinnāri***

I seek refuge with Allāh against the Fire. Woe to the denizens of the Fire (Hell).

(*Ibni Mājah Kitābus-Ṣaḥīḥ*)

## Prayer of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> to Strengthen Memory and the Method to Memorize the Holy Qur'ān

Ḥaḍrat 'Abdullāh bin 'Abbās<sup>ra</sup> relates that in a gathering Ḥaḍrat 'Alī<sup>ra</sup> complained to the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> about forgetting the Holy Qur'ān. The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said: "O Abul Ḥasan! Should I not tell you such useful words which will help strengthen your memory for memorization of the Holy Qur'ān? Then, he told him to do so: Offer Prayer in the later part of the night on Friday night. Prophet Jacob<sup>as</sup> also waiting for the Friday night had said:

سَوْفَ أَسْتَغْفِرُكُمْ رَبِّي

*saufa astaghfiru lakum rabbī*

I will certainly ask forgiveness for you of my Lord. (12: 99)

If you cannot do so, then offer four *rak'at* voluntary prayer either in the middle or the first part of the night. In the first *rak'at* recite *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah* and *Sūrah Yāsīn*, in the second *rak'at* recite *Sūrah Al-Dukhān* with *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah*, in the third *rak'at* recite *Sūrah Ḥā Mim Al-Sajdah* with *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah*, and in the fourth *rak'at* recite *Sūrah Al-Mulk* with *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah*. In the last *rak'at* after reciting the *Tashahhud*, praise God Almighty, invoke blessings upon me and other Prophets, do *Istighfār* for the believers and then recite the following prayer:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَرْحَمِنِيْ بِتَرْكِ الْمَعَاصِيْ اَبَدًا مَّا اَبْقَيْتَنِيْ ، وَاَرْحَمِنِيْ ، اَنْ اَتَكَلَّفَ مَا لَا يَغْنِيْنِيْ وَاَرْزُقْنِيْ حُسْنَ النَّظَرِ فَيَمَّا يُرْضِيْكَ عَنِّيْ ، اَللّٰهُمَّ بَدِّعِ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَاَلْاَرْضِ ، ذَا الْجَلَالِ وَالْاِكْرَامِ ، وَالْعِزَّةِ الَّتِي لَا تُرَامُ ، اَسْأَلُكَ يَا اَللّٰهُ ، يَا رَحْمٰنُ ، بِجَلَالِكَ وَنُوْرِ وَجْهِكَ اَنْ تُلْزِمَ قَلْبِيْ حِفْظَ كِتٰبِكَ كَمَا عَلَّمْتَنِيْ وَ اَرْزُقْنِيْ اَنْ اَتْلُوْهُ عَلٰى النَّحْوِ الَّذِيْ يُرْضِيْكَ عَنِّيْ ، اَللّٰهُمَّ بَدِّعِ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَاَلْاَرْضِ ذَا الْجَلَالِ وَالْاِكْرَامِ ، وَالْعِزَّةِ الَّتِي لَا تُرَامُ ، اَسْأَلُكَ يَا اَللّٰهُ ، يَا

رَحْمَنُ ‘ بِجَلَالِكَ وَ نُورِ وَجْهِكَ ‘ أَنْ تُنَوِّرَ بِكِتَابِكَ بَصَرِي ‘ وَ أَنْ تُطْلِقَ بِهِ  
 لِسَانِي ‘ وَ أَنْ تُفَرِّجَ بِهِ عَنْ قَلْبِي وَ أَنْ تُشْرَحَ بِهِ صَدْرِي ‘ وَ أَنْ تَغْسِلَ بِهِ  
 بَدَنِي ‘ فَإِنَّهُ لَا يُعِينُنِي عَلَى الْحَقِّ غَيْرُكَ ‘ وَلَا يُؤْتِينِيهِ إِلَّا أَنْتَ ‘ وَلَا حَوْلَ وَلَا  
 قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِأَللَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ -

*allāhummarḥamnī bi tarkil ma‘āṣī abadamma abqaitanī, warḥamnī, ann  
 atakallafa mā lā ya‘nīnī, warzuqnī ḥusnannazarī fimā yurḍika ‘annī, allāhumma  
 badī‘assamāwāti wal arḍi, dhal jalāli wal ikrāmi, wal ‘izzatillafī lā turāmu,  
 as-aluka yā allāhu, yā raḥmānu, bi jalālika wa nūri wajhika an tulzima qalbī ḥifza  
 kitābika kamā ‘allamtanī warzuqnī ann atluwahū ‘alannahwilladhī yurḍika ‘annī,  
 allāhumma badī‘assamāwāti wal arḍi dhal jalāli wal ikrāmi, wal‘izzatillafī lā  
 turāmu, as-aluka yā allāhu, yā raḥmānu, bi jalālika wa nūri wajhika, ann  
 tunawwira bi kitābika baṣarī, wa ann tutliqa bihi lisānī wa ann tufarrija bihi ‘ann  
 qalbī wa ann tashraḥa bihi ṣadrī, wa ann taghsila bihi badanī, fa innahū lā  
 yu‘inunī ‘alal ḥaqqi ghairuka, wa lā yu‘tinīhi illā anta, wa lā ḥaula wa lā  
 quwwata illā billā hil‘aliyyil ‘azīm.*

O Allāh! As long as You keep me alive always have special mercy on me that I avoid sins. Have mercy upon me with regards to doing absurd things intentionally and grant me such a good vision by which You are pleased with me. O Allāh, the Originator of heavens and the earth beautifully. O the Majestic, the Honorable and the Possessor of such a high Esteem which no one can attain. O Allāh, O the Beneficent God, I beseech You through Your Majesty and the Illumination of Your Face to facilitate the memorization of Your sacred Book as You have taught it to me, and enable my heart to retain it and empower me to recite it, in a manner that You are pleased. O Allāh, the Creator of the unique heavens and the earth, the Majestic, the Honorable and the Possessor of such a high Esteem which no one can attain; O Allāh, O the Beneficent God, I beseech You through Your Majesty and the Illumination of Your face to illuminate my eyes with the light of Your sacred Book and let me read it fluently (Āmīn). And expand my heart for it and open my chest with it, and wash my body with this Holy Word of Yours. Who else besides You can help me with regards to the Truth? No one else besides You can bestow upon me the power for that. There is no might and no power but in God Almighty. The God Who is Majestic and Great.

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> further said, "Follow this procedure for at least three Fridays and the maximum five to seven Fridays. Your prayer will be accepted by God Almighty. I swear by Him who has ordained me as His Messenger that a prayer of a true Muslim is not turned down."

Ḥaḍrat Ibn ‘Abbās<sup>ra</sup> relates that Ḥaḍrat ‘Alī<sup>ra</sup> after trying this prescription for five

to seven times came to the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> in a gathering and said, "My memory was such that if I memorized just four verses I used to forget these and now I can memorize forty verses daily. And when I repeat the verses after memorization it seems as if I am reciting while seeing the Holy Qur'ān. Same was the case with regards to memorizing the sayings of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>. Soon after listening to the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>, I used to forget everything. Now, after listening just once the sayings of the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> I can repeat these from my memory almost word by word."

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said, "I swear by Lord of Ka'bah, Abul Ḥasan 'Alī<sup>ra</sup> is a staunch believer.

(Tirmadhī, Kitābudda'wāt)

## Etiquettes of Memorization of the Holy Qur'ān

1. Pray to God Almighty for bestowing upon you the ability and the strength to memorize the Holy Qur'ān.
2. Always use the same *Mushaf* (Copy of the Holy Qur'ān). Do not use different copies of the Holy Qur'ān.
3. Make a goal. Fix a target. Fix in your mind the portion of the Holy Qur'ān which you want to memorize in a specific period of time.
4. Before starting memorization, recite the portion of the Holy Qur'ān you want to memorize in front of a person who is competent in the correct recitation of the Holy Qur'ān. Underline the errors you have made in the recitation, which have been pointed out by the teacher.
5. Start memorization in small portions, such as the part you have fixed as the goal to memorize. Repeat this portion till you have memorized it.
6. Combine the portion you have memorized with the next small portion to be memorized. Follow this procedure throughout the memorization process.
7. Recite the portion you have memorized to your teacher. He will pinpoint the errors. Keep making corrections in the recitation till the teacher approves.
8. Recite the portion you have memorized in the Ṣalāt, which you are offering by yourself. You may forget some parts. After offering the Prayer, check in the Holy Qur'ān for corrections.
9. Audio record your recitation of the portion you have memorized. Compare and check the tape with the Holy Qur'ān. Be your own critique.
10. Be careful of *Mushābeh* (Similar sounding verses in different parts of the Holy Qur'ān). These may confuse you and may make you jump from one verse to another verse in a different Sūrah. Mark down such similar verses in the Holy Qur'ān. Write down the Chapter and the verse number to which another verse is *Mushābeh* (At both places).
11. Learn meanings of the verses being memorized. It will help in the memorization.
12. Keep on reciting your *Manzil* (The portion of the Holy Qur'ān which you have already memorized is called a *Manzil*).
13. Once memorized, recite frequently in the Prayers.
14. Recite the memorized portion frequently, particularly, in the morning.



## Prayer to be Recited on Completing the Recitation of the Entire Holy Qur'ān

§

Ḥaḍrat Ḥudhaifah<sup>ra</sup> relates that at the completion of the cycle of recitation of the Holy Qur'ān, the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> used to recite the following prayer:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اَرْحَمْنِيْ بِالْقُرْاٰنِ الْعَظِيْمِ وَاَجْعَلْهُ لِيْ اِمَامًا وَّنُوْرًا وَّهَدًى وَّرَحْمَةً  
اَللّٰهُمَّ ذَكِّرْنِيْ مِنْهُ مَا نَسِيتُ وَعَلِّمْنِيْ مِنْهُ مَا جَهِلْتُ وَاَرْزُقْنِيْ تِلَاوَتَهٗ  
اِنَّاءَ اللَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ وَاَجْعَلْهُ لِيْ حُجَّةً يَّا رَبَّ الْعَالَمِيْنَ -

*allāhummarḥamnī bil qur'ānīl 'azīmi waj'alhu li imāmañwwa nūrañwwa  
hudañwwa rahmatan allāhumma dhakkirnī minhu mā nasītu wa 'allimnī  
minhu mā jahiltu warzuqnī tilawatahū ānā'allaili wannahāri waj'alhu li  
ḥujjatañyyā rabbal 'ālamīn*

O Allāh! Have mercy upon me with (the blessings) of the Great Qur'ān. Make it for me a Model, Light, Guide and Mercy. O my Allāh! Remind me whatever I have forgotten of it and teach me what I do not know of it. Grant me its recitation in the watches of the night and in the hours of the day. O Lord of the worlds! Make it an Authority for me for my benefit. Āmin.

(Ihyā' 'Ulūm ad-Dīn lil-Ghazālī)

# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

وَرَتِّلِ الْقُرْآنَ تَرْتِيلًا ۝

*wa rattilil qur'āna tarfīlā*

And recite the Qur'ān slowly and thoughtfully. (73:5)

# THE ARABIC ALPHABET حُرُوفُ التَّهَجِّي (Hurūfut-Tahajjī)

## WITH PRONUNCIATION AND TRANSLITERATION

Correct pronunciation of Arabic words is very important. Transliteration marks have been shown below as guide to correct pronunciation. These marks help to show how the words should sound but it is not possible to show in print exactly how to pronounce the words. For example, the name *Muḥammad* should be pronounced with a glottal sound of H (which is represented by the sign Ḥ) rather than the normal H sound.

خ	ح	ج	ث	ت	ب	ء	ا	Arabic Alphabet
Khā'	Ḥā'	Jim	Thā'	Tā'	Bā'	Hamzah	Alif	Pronunciation
Kh	H	J	Th	T	B	'	A	Transliteration
خَلِيفَة	حَمَد	جَنَّة	ثَالِث	تَرْمَذِي	بَلال	مَلِئِكَة	أَوَّل	Example
Khalifah	Ḥamad	Jannah	Thālith	Tirmadhī	Bilāl	Malā'ikah	Awwal	Transliteration
ض	ص	ش	س	ز	ر	ذ	د	Arabic Alphabet
Dād	Sād	Shin	Sin	Zā	Rā'	Dhāl	Dāl	Pronunciation
Ḍ	Ṣ	Sh	S, C, X	Z	R	Dh	D	Transliteration
ضَعِيف	صَوْم	شَهِيد	سَلْمَان	زَكَاة	رَحِيم	ذَاكِر	دَاوُد	Example
Ḍa'if	Ṣawm	Shahīd	Salmān	Zakāh	Raḥīm	Dhākir	Dāwūd	Transliteration
ل	ك	ق	ف	غ	ع	ظ	ط	Arabic Alphabet
Lām	Kāf	Qāf	Fā'	Ghayn	'Ayn	Zā'	Tā'	Pronunciation
L	K, C, X	Q	F	Gh	'	Z	T	Transliteration
لَبَن	كِتَاب	قِبْلَة	فَارُوق	غَائِب	عِيسَى	ظَهَر	طِين	Example
Labanin	Kitābun	Qiblatun	Fārūq	Ghā'ib	'Isā	Zuhar	Tīn	Transliteration
			ي	ه	و	ن	م	Arabic Alphabet
			Yā'	Hā'	Wāw	Nūn	Mīm	Pronunciation
			Y	H	W	N	M	Transliteration
			يَسِين	هَجْرِي	وَلَد	نُوح	مُوسَى	Example
			Yāsīn	Hijrī	Waladun	Nūḥ	Mūsā	Transliteration

The Arabic Alphabet letters حُرُوفُ التَّهْجِي (Hurūfut-Taḥajjī) are 29 in number.

The pronunciation of the majority of these letters bears resemblance to English sounds. However, the pronunciation of a few is exclusively Arabic. The following consonants bear little or no resemblance to English sounds:

Arabic Letter	Soud Symbol	English Equivalent
ص	ṣ	saw
ض	ḍ	doll
ط	ṭ	task
ظ	ẓ	No Equivalent*
ح	ḥ	No Equivalent*
ع	ʿ	No Equivalent*

\* Pronunciation is strictly Arabic.

## THE EMPHATIC AND NON-EMPHATIC LETTERS

The following four letters are traditionally called the emphatics:

ص ض ط ظ

Pronunciation of these letters is indicated in transliteration by a dot underneath the sound symbol for their non-emphatic counterparts as shown below.

Non-emphatics	Transliteration	Emphatics	Transliteration
س	s	ص	ṣ
د	d	ض	ḍ
ت	t	ط	ṭ
ذ	dh	ظ	ẓ

Sound-wise the Arabic letters are of two kinds:

1. Letters which are light in voice.
2. Letters which are heavy in voice.

For example **س** has a light voice like "S" in English word "Seen", while **ص** has a heavy voice like "S" in English word "Salt". Letters that have heavy voice are:

خ ص ض غ ط ظ ق ر

While reading words an Arabic letter is pronounced mostly as heavy but sometimes it is pronounced light. However, while reading Arabic alphabet the above letters will be pronounced heavy. Other than the above eight letters should be pronounced carefully light in voice.

Non-emphatics	Transliteration/English word	Meaning	Emphatics	Transliteration/English word	Meaning
س سَيْفُ	saif	Sea	ص صَيْفُ	ṣaif	Saw
د دَيْرُ	dair	Dead	ض ضَيْرُ	ḍair	Doll
ت تَيْنُ	tīn	Tell	ط طَيْنُ	ṭīn	Talk
ذ ذَلِيلُ	dhalīl	This	ظ ظَلِيلُ	ẓalīl	Those

Phonetically, the *ḥamza* ( ء ) is a 'glottal stop'. There is no letter corresponding this sound in English.

Written Arabic has only three vowels: *a*, *u* and *i*. Each vowel can be either long or short. These are not part of the *alphabets*. The different sounds of the vowels can be described using the latter Sīn ( س ) as follows:

سَ	sa	سَا	sā
سُ	su	سُو	sū
سِ	sī	سِي	sī
سَوْ	sau	سَي	sai

## LETTERS SIMILAR IN SOUND

### (TWO DISTINCT SOUNDS OF CERTAIN ALPHABETS)

In Arabic, accurate pronunciation of letters is very important. Each of the 28 letters of Arabic consonants has its own distinct sound. Correct pronunciation of Arabic letters can be mastered in two ways:

1. By reading Arabic letters like one reads English alphabet.
2. By reading Arabic letters with sukūn (quiescent letters). While reading quiescent letters voice is settled on the quiescent letters. This makes the reader to pronounce the letters better.

Use the following exercise to practice correct pronunciation of similar Arabic letters with and without sukūn.

### EXERCISE

إِهْدِ	هَادِيْ	هَآ	هَ	تَالَمْ	أَلِمْ	ءَا	ءَ
ihdi	hādī	hā	Hā'	ta'lam	'ālim	'ā	hamzah
أَدْرِ	دَارْ	دَا	دَ	تَغْلَمْ	عَالِمْ	عَا	عَ
adrī	dār	dā	Dāl	ta'lam	'ālim	'ā	'Ain
أَضْعَفْ	ضَامِرْ	ضَا	ضَ	أُتْرُكْ	تَارِكْ	تَا	تَ
ad'af	dāmir	dā	Ḍād	utruk	tārik	tā	Tā'
أُذْكَرْ	ذَاكِرْ	ذَا	ذَ	أَطْهَرْ	طَاهِرْ	طَا	طَ
udhkur	dhākir	dhā	Dhāl	aṭhar	tāhir	tā	Tā'
أُزْجِرْ	زَاجِرْ	زَا	زَ	مَثْنَى	ثَانِيْ	ثَا	ثَ
uzjur	zājir	zā	Zā	mathnā	thānī	thā	Thā'
أُظْلَمْ	ظَالِمْ	ظَا	ظَ	أُسْكُنْ	سَاكِنْ	سَا	سَ
aẓlam	ẓālim	ẓā	Ẓā'	uskun	sākin	sā	Sin
أَقْدَرْ	قَادِرْ	قَا	قَ	إِصْبِرْ	صَابِرْ	صَا	صَ
aqdar	qādir	qā	Qāf	iṣbir	ṣābir	ṣā	Ṣād
أَكْمَلْ	كَامِلْ	كَآ	كَ	أُحْكَمْ	حَاكِمْ	حَا	حَ
akmal	kāmil	kā	Kāf	uḥkum	ḥākim	ḥā	Ḥā'

## ALPHABETS حُرُوفُ التَّهْجِي (Hurūfut- Taḥajjī)

### THE WRITTEN FORMS

During writing, all letters in a word are joined up to the letter with which the word ends. Since almost all the letters are joined together in the formation of the words, they take different forms depending on where they appear in the word. Generally, the letters have four forms as shown in the following Table:

Name of Letter	Standing Alone	Initial	Medial	Final
Alif	ا			ل
Bā'	ب	بـ	بـ	بـ
Tā'	ت	تـ	تـ	تـ
Thā'	ث	ثـ	ثـ	ثـ
Jīm	ج	جـ	جـ	جـ
Ḥā'	ح	حـ	حـ	حـ
Khā'	خ	خـ	خـ	خـ
Dāl	د			د
Dhāl	ذ			ذ
Rā'	ر			ر
Zā	ز			ز
Sīn	س	سـ	سـ	سـ

Name of Letter	Standing Alone	Initial	Medial	Final
Shīn	ش	ش	شـ	شـ
Ṣād	ص	ص	صـ	صـ
Ḍād	ض	ض	ضـ	ضـ
Ṭā'	ط	ط	طـ	طـ
Zā'	ظ	ظ	ظـ	ظـ
'Ayn	ع	ع	عـ	عـ
Ghayn	غ	غ	غـ	غـ
Fā'	ف	ف	فـ	فـ
Qāf	ق	ق	قـ	قـ
Kāf	ك	ك	كـ	كـ
Lām	ل	ل	لـ	لـ
Mīm	م	م	مـ	مـ
Nūn	ن	ن	نـ	نـ
Wāw	و	و		
Hā'	هـ	هـ	هـ	هـ
Yā'	ي	ي	يـ	يـ



الْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ (Al-hurūfushshamsiyyah)

and

الْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ (Al-hurūful Qamariyyah)

A word is formed by the combination of letters. Fourteen letters are called (Al-hurūfushshamsiyyah) الْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ and the rest of the letters are called (Al-hurūful Qamariyyah) الْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ

### الْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ

(Al-hurūfushshamsiyyah, THE SUN LETTERS)

The following 14 letters are known as: الْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ (Al-hurūfushshamsiyyah, The sun letters):

ت ث د ذ ر ز س ش ص ض ط ظ ل ن

One of the characteristics of the الْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ (Sun Letters) is that when اَلْ (alif and lām) is added in the beginning of the word starting with a Sun Letter, the ل (lām) remains silent. While reading these words اَ is added before the silent ل (lām) and اَ is combined with the Sun Letter in such a way that the Sun Letter is pronounced twice and a شَدَّة (shadda: a double-word sign) is added to the letter.

Here are a few examples:

turābun: al + turābun = atturābu	تُرَابٌ -- أَلْ + تُرَابٌ = اَلتُّرَابُ
shamsun: al + shamsun = ashshamsu	شَمْسٌ -- أَلْ + شَمْسٌ = اَلشَّمْسُ
dīnun: al + dīnun = addīnu	دِينَ -- أَلْ + دِينَ = اَلدِّينُ
rahīmun: al + rahīmun = arrahīmu	رَحِيمٌ -- أَلْ + رَحِيمٌ = اَلرَّحِيمُ
ḍaifun: al + ḍaifun = aḍḍaifu	ضَيْفٌ -- أَلْ + ضَيْفٌ = اَلضَّيْفُ

## اَلْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ

### (Al-ḥurūful Qamariyyah, THE MOON LETTERS)

The following 14 letters are called: اَلْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ (Al-ḥurūful Qamariyyah, The moon letters).

ا ب ج ح خ ع غ ف ق ك م و ه ي

One of the characteristics of the اَلْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ (Moon Letters) is that when اَلْ (alif and lam) is added in the beginning of the word starting with a Moon Letter then the ل (lam) has to be pronounced.

These are few of the examples:

qalamun: al + qalamun = al-qalamu	قَلَمٌ -- أَلْ + قَلَمٌ = اَلْقَلَمُ
malikun: al + malikun = al-maliku	مَلِكٌ -- أَلْ + مَلِكٌ = اَلْمَلِكُ
‘arīfun: al + ‘arīfun = al-‘arīfu	عَرِيفٌ -- أَلْ + عَرِيفٌ = اَلْعَرِيفُ

baitun: al + baitun = al-baitu	بَيْتٌ -- أَلْ + بَيْتٌ = أَلْبَيْتٌ
bābun: al + bābun = albābu	بَابٌ -- أَلْ + بَابٌ = أَلْبَابٌ
qamarun: al + qamarun = al-qamaru	قَمَرٌ -- أَلْ + قَمَرٌ = أَلْقَمَرُ

#### EXERCISE:

Please add اَل (alif and lam) to the following words:

مَظْلُومٌ - ظَالِمٌ - عَادِلٌ - كِتَابٌ - وَلَدٌ - بِنْتُ - رَجُلٌ - أَرْضٌ - نَجْمٌ -  
سَمَكٌ - رِيَاضَةٌ - حِكْمَةٌ - قَوْمٌ - طَالِبٌ - خَلِيلٌ

mazlūmun, zālimun, ‘ādilun, kitābun, waladun, bintun, rajulun, arḍun, najmun, samakun, riyāḍatun, hikmatun, qaumun, ṭālibun, khalīlun

\*\*\*\*\*

### أَلِف (Alif)

اَل alif has three uses:

- It may be used for prolongation of sound of a letter and indicates a long "a". e.g. بَا bā. It is sometimes written as a small ا alif, e.g. لَكِنْ (lākin).
- أَلِفُ الْفَاصِلَةِ (aliful wiqāyah, Precautionary Alif) or أَلِفُ الْوَقَايَةِ (aliful fāṣilah, Separating Alif). e.g. The ا alif which is added after و wāw at the end of a word. e.g. كَتَبُوا (katabū).
- It acts as the bearer of هَمْزَةٌ (hamzah). It is of two kinds:  
هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ (hamzatul qat‘i) and هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ (hamzatul wasl)

## هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ (HAMZATUL QAT'Ī)

It acts like a consonant which may be written at the beginning of the word (إِعْرَابٌ *I'rābun*), in the middle or end of the word on **alif** (سَأَلَ *sa'ala*), **wāw** (لَا تُسَمِّتُوا *lā tasma'ū*) or on **yā** (قُرِئَ *qurī'a*) or standing alone (سُورَةٌ *sū'un*).

## هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ HAMZATUL WAṢL (JOINING HAMZAH)

Sometimes there is an **alif** in the beginning of an Arabic word having no short vowel. This is called هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ (hamzatul waṣl, Joining Hamzah). While reading such a word alone or to resume reading from it, one should know which of the three short vowels will be used.

### a) Usage of fathah ( َ )

Words prefixed with **alif-lām** (أَلْ): As كِتَابٌ (kitābun) after prefixing with **alif-lām** (أَلْ) will become أَلْكِتَابُ (al-kitābu). Joining hamzah of such words will be read with fathah. For example, in words الَّذِي (alladhī) and الَّتِي (allatī) and their duals and plurals forms, the joining hamzah will be given fathah.

### EXERCISE

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ۝ الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّحِيمُ - فَلَا أُقْسِمُ بِالْخُتَمِ ۝ الْجَوَارِ الْكُنُسِ - هُدًى  
لِّلْمُتَّقِينَ ۝ الَّذِينَ يُؤْمِنُونَ بِالْغَيْبِ -

### b) Usage of dammah ( ُ ) and kasrah ( ِ )

If a word has been prefixed only with an **alif** (أ) instead of **alif-lām** (أَلْ) and **lām** (لْ) to

read it the reader should see the third letter to it. If the third letter has ـِ (dammah), the first letter should be read with ـِ (dammah). For example in the word اذْكُر the third letter to the joining hamzah is كُ (ku). Kāf ك has a ـِ (dammah) on it so the word will be read as اذْكُر (udhkur). However, if the third letter to prefix ا (alif) has ـَ (fathah) or ـِ (kasrah), in both cases the joining hamzah will be read with ـِ (kasrah). For example, in the word افْتَح the third letter to joining hamzah is تَ. It has ـَ (fathah), so joining hamzah will be read with kasrah as اِفْتَح (iftah). In the word اغْفِر, the third letter to the joining hamzah is with ـِ (kasrah) فِ (fi), so the joining hamzah will also be read with kasrah as اِغْفِر (ighfir).

Practice the rule in the following exercise:

#### EXERCISE

قُولُوا انظُرْنَا وَاسْمَعُوا - قِيلَ ارْجِعُوا وَرَاءَكُمْ فَالْتَمِسُوا نُورًا - وَاشْكُرُوا لِي -  
 فَادْكُرُونِي اَذْكُرْكُمْ - اتَّقُوا رَبَّكُمْ - وَاتَّبِعُوا اَحْسَنَ مَا اُنْزِلَ اِلَيْكُمْ - اِرْجِعْنِي  
 اِلَى رَبِّكَ رَاضِيَةً مَّرْضِيَّةً فَادْخُلْنِي فِي عِبَادِي وَادْخُلْنِي جَنَّتِي -

## RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

عَنْ بَشِيرِ بْنِ عَبْدِ الْمُنْذِرِ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى  
عَنْهُ أَنَّ نَبِيَّ ﷺ قَالَ: مَنْ لَمْ يَتَغَنَّ بِالْقُرْآنِ  
فَلَيْسَ مِنَّا -

*'an bashīribni 'abdil mundhiri<sup>ra</sup> anna nabiyya<sup>sa</sup> qāla: man lam yataghanna  
bil-qur'āni falaisha minnā*

The one who does not recite the Holy Qur'ān  
melodiously, is not one of us.

# THE ART OF TAJWĪD

## تجوید

The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has enjoined us to recite the Holy Qur'ān with *Tajwīd* and in a pleasing tone:

زَيِّنُوا الْقُرْآنَ بِأَصْوَاتِكُمْ

*zayyinul qur'āna bi aṣwātikum*

(Bukhārī)

The skill and the rules whose application makes the correct pronunciation of the Holy Qur'ān possible is the art of *Tajwīd*. *Tajwīd* means to recite every letter correctly from its *Makhraj*, with all its qualities. The purpose of it is to recite the Holy Qur'an in the manner it was revealed to, and recited by the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup>.

In the terminology of Phonetics of the Holy Qur'ān, *Tajwīd* means recitation of every letter of the Holy Qur'ān from its point of articulation, with its attributes:

- |    |                                    |            |               |
|----|------------------------------------|------------|---------------|
| a. | Elevation                          | (isti'lā') | إِسْتِعْلَاءٌ |
| b. | Depression                         | (istifāl)  | إِسْتِفَالٌ   |
| c. | Softness                           | (tarqīq)   | تَرْقِيقٌ     |
| d. | Heavy sound                        | (tafkīm)   | تَفْكِيمٌ     |
| e. | Other rules of phonetics, such as: |            |               |

### i. Clear Pronunciation (izhār) اِظْهَارٌ

The common meaning of اِظْهَارٌ (izhār) is to pronounce the letters from their Makhraj clearly and distinctly without any changes. If after mīm with sukūn م besides the letters mīm م and ب bā' any other letter appears اِظْهَارٌ (izhār) will take place. e.g. هُمْ يُوقِنُونَ.

## ii. Assimilation (idghām) اِذْغَامٌ

The common meaning of اِذْغَامٌ (idghām) is to enter one thing into another. If after mīm with sukūn مْ there appears a mīm م then اِذْغَامٌ (idghām) with غُنَّةٌ (ghunna) will take place.

## iii. Change or Conversion (qalb) قَلْبٌ

The literal meaning of قَلْبٌ (qalb) is to change one thing into another. If after nūn with sukūn نْ or tanwīn the letter ب bā' appears then the nūn sākin or tanwīn will change to mīm sākin مْ and will be recited with غُنَّةٌ (ghunna).

## iv. Suppressed Pronunciation (ikhfā') اِخْفَاءٌ

The literal meaning of اِخْفَاءٌ (ikhfā') is to conceal. If after nūn sākin نْ or tanwīn besides six letters of Ḥurūf-e-Ḥalqī هـ ع ح غ خ, the six letters of yarmalūn يَزْمَلُون and the letter ب bā', if any other letter appears then the nūn sākin or tanwīn will be recited with اِخْفَاءٌ (ikhfā').

### COMMON ERRORS MADE DURING RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

Errors which are made while reciting the Holy Qur'ān can be classified as:

- i. Major Errors
- ii. Minor Errors

#### Major Errors:

#### 1. To recite one letter in place of another

- i. Instead of reciting اَلْحَمْدُ (Alḥamdu) one recites اَلْعَمْدُ (Al'amdu)



- ii. In a word one recites **س** (*Sīn*) instead of **ث** (*Thā'*) or **ت** (*Tā'*) instead of **ط** of (*Tā'*).

## 2. To add a letter to a word

One adds **و** (*Wāw*) after **د** (*Dāl*) and **ي** (*Yā'*) after **ه** (*Hā'*). Thus reads

**الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ** (*Alḥamdu lillāhi*) as **الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ** (*Alḥamdū lillāhi*)

## 3. To delete a letter from a word

Not to recite the **و** (*Wāw*) in a word. e.g. to read **لَمْ يُؤَلَدْ** (*Lam yūlad*) as **لَمْ يُلَدْ** (*Lam yulad*).

## 4. To recite one *Harkat* in place of another

To recite (*Kāf*) with *Kasrah* instead of with *Fathah*. e.g. To recite **إِيَّاكَ** (*Iyyāki*) instead of **إِيَّاكَ** (*Iyyāka*) or to recite (*Alif*) with *Fathah* instead of with *Kasrah*. e.g. To recite **أَهْدِنَا** (*Ahdinā*) instead of **إِهْدِنَا** (*Ihdinā*).

## 5. To recite *Harkat* instead of *Jazm*

To recite **أَنْعَمْتَ** (*An'amta*) as **أَنْعَمْتَ** (*An-'amata*) or as **أَنْعَمْتَ** (*Ana-'amata*)

## Minor Errors:

The errors made when a person does not follow any of those rules which show the beauty of the Holy Qur'ān. e.g. not to recite the **ر** (*Rā'*) in **صِرَاطَ** (*Ṣirāṭa*) with a full mouth when it has a *Fathah* or not to recite the two (*Lām*) in (*Allāh*) with a full mouth when there is a *Fathah* or a *Dammah* before them, or not to make *Ghunna*, *Ikhfā'* or *Madd*.

# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

أُتْلُ مَا أُوحِيَ إِلَيْكَ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ

*utlu mā ūhiya ilaika minal kitābi*

Recite that which has been revealed to thee of the Book.  
(29:46)

# CORRECT RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

To recitate the Holy Qur'ān correctly, one should pay special attention to the following:

1. Ḥarakāt ( حَرَكَات ): How much to prolong or shorten a sound.
2. Ramūz-e-Auqāf ( رُمُوزِ أَوْقَاف ): Pause and stop Signs contained within the Arabic text of the Holy Qur'ān.
3. Makhārij ( مَخَارِج ): Correct pronunciation of the alphabets.
4. Correct combinations.
5. I'rāb ( إِعْرَاب ): Proper punctuation.

## THE SHORT VOWELS ( حَرَكَات ḥarakāt )

There are three vowel marks in Arabic which are used above or under a letter to change its sound in a certain way. These vowels, which are called fathah فَتْحَة, dammah ضَمَّة and kasrah كَسْرَة are explained here:

1. fathah فَتْحَة: A raised hyphen placed over the pertinent consonant is called fathah ـَ. The sound symbol is "a" and its nearest correspondent in English is the word "rash". In Arabic the word "rash" will be written as رَيْشٌ and its transliteration will be "a" as in "clash".
2. dammah ضَمَّة: A mark ـُ written over the pertinent consonant is called dammah. The sound symbol for it is "u" and its nearest correspondent in English is the vowel sound in the word "wood". In Arabic, the word "bush" will be written as بُشٌ and its transliteration will be "u" as in "Push".

3. **kasrah كَسْرَة**: A hyphen    that is placed under the pertinent consonant is

called kasrah. The sound symbol for kasrah is "i" and its nearest correspondent in English is the vowel sound in the word "bid". In Arabic, the word will be written as

بِذ and its transliteration will be "i" as in "Bill"

The length of sound of **fathah فَتْحَة**, **dammah ضَمَّة** and **kasrah كَسْرَة** is same.

4. **sukūn/Jazm سُكُون / جزم**: When a consonant is pronounced without any vowel

mark, the absence of the vowel is indicated by the sign ◌ْ or ◌َ placed over the pertinent consonant. This sign is called sukūn or Jazm.

## LETTERS WITH VOWEL MARKS: **مُتَحَرِّك حُرُوف** mutaharrik hurūf

In Arabic a letter bearing the vowel mark is called mutaharrik. With the addition of vowel marks sound of the Arabic letters changes as follows:

### LETTERS WITH VOWEL MARK **فَتْحَة** FATHAH

To pronounce a letter bearing fathah the mouth should be opened but the letter should be uttered in a very short form. For instance **بَ** (ba) will be pronounced as 'B' is pronounced in the word 'But'.

خَ	حَ	جَ	ثَ	تَ	بَ	ءَ	أَ	Arabic Alphabet
Kha	Ha	Ja	Tha	Ta	Ba	'a	a	Pronunciation
ضَ	صَ	شَ	سَ	زَ	رَ	دَ	دَ	Arabic Alphabet
Ḍa	Ṣa	Sha	Sa	Za	Ra	Dha	Da	Pronunciation
لَ	كَ	قَ	فَ	غَ	عَ	ظَ	طَ	Arabic Alphabet
La	Ka	Qa	Fa	Gha	'a	Za	Ta	Pronunciation
			يَ	هَ	وَ	نَ	مَ	Arabic Alphabet
			Ya	Ha	Wa	Na	Ma	Pronunciation

## LETTERS WITH VOWEL MARK DAMMAH ضَمَّة

To pronounce a letter with dammah lips should be rounded and the letter should be uttered in a very short form. بُ (bu) is pronounced as 'B' is pronounced in the word 'Bush'.

خُ	حُ	جُ	ثُ	تُ	بُ	ءُ	أُ	Arabic Alphabet
Khu	Hu	Ju	Thu	Tu	Bu	'U	U	Pronunciation
ضُ	صُ	شُ	سُ	زُ	رُ	دُ	ذُ	Arabic Alphabet
Du	Su	Shu	Su	Zu	Ru	Dhu	Du	Pronunciation
لُ	كُ	قُ	فُ	غُ	عُ	ظُ	طُ	Arabic Alphabet
Lu	Ku	Qu	Fu	Ghu	'u	Zu	Tu	Pronunciation
			يُ	هُ	وُ	نُ	مُ	Arabic Alphabet
			Yu	Hu	Wu	Nu	Mu	

## LETTERS WITH VOWEL MARK KASRAH كَسْرَة

To pronounce a letter with kasrah the voice should be stretched downward and should be short. بِ (bi) will be pronounced as if one is saying the English word "bit" without pronouncing the letter "t".

خِ	حِ	جِ	ثِ	تِ	بِ	ءِ	أِ	Arabic Alphabet
Khi	Hi	Ji	Thi	Ti	Bi	'i	i	Pronunciation
ضِ	صِ	شِ	سِ	زِ	رِ	دِ	ذِ	Arabic Alphabet
Di	Si	Shi	Si	Zi	Ri	Dhi	Di	Pronunciation
لِ	كِ	قِ	فِ	غِ	عِ	ظِ	طِ	Arabic Alphabet
Li	Ki	Qi	Fi	Ghi	'i	Zi	Ti	Pronunciation
			يِ	هِ	وِ	نِ	مِ	Arabic Alphabet
			Yi	Hi	Wi	Ni	Mi	Pronunciation

## EXERCISE

### Letters with mixed vowel marks

أَ	إِ	أُ	ءَ	ءُ	ءِ	هَ	هَ	هَ
عَ	عِ	عُ	عَ	حَ	حُ	حِ	حَ	غَ
غِ	غُ	خِ	خُ	قِ	قُ	قِ	قَ	كَ
كِ	كُ	جِ	جُ	شِ	شُ	شِ	شَ	يِ
يِ	يُ	ضِ	ضُ	ضِ	لِ	لُ	لِ	نِ
نِ	رِ	رُ	رِ	طِ	طُ	طِ	طَ	دِ
دِ	دُ	تِ	تُ	تِ	ظِ	ظُ	ظِ	ذِ
ذِ	ذُ	ثِ	ثُ	ثِ	زِ	زُ	زِ	سِ
سِ	سُ	صِ	صُ	صِ	فِ	فُ	فِ	وِ
وِ	وُ	بِ	بُ	بِ	مِ	مُ	مِ	نِ

Note: The letter ا (alif) with any diacritical mark is no more ا (alif), it becomes ء (hamzah). So with any diacritical mark the sounds of ا (alif) and ء (hamzah) are same.

While practicing, in the above exercise, utterance should be short and quick. Read only one letter at a time and write transliteration below the letter. Stop after uttering each letter so that you have control over your breath. It will help you to utter the words correctly.

## EXERCISE

### READING TWO OR MORE LETTERS TOGETHER

In order to gain fluency in reading two or more letters at a time, read the letters given below continually. In reading the letters continually their sounds should not be mixed up. i.e., Sound of one letter should not be mixed with that of the other. For example, <sup>لَا</sup> should be read separately as "la-'u" and not together as "lau". The sound of <sup>أ</sup> (hamzah) should not be mixed up with the sound of <sup>ل</sup> (lām). Similarly, word <sup>سَمِعَ</sup> should be read separately as "sa-mi-'a" and not together as "samia" If you read it as "samia" you will be mixing up the sound of letter <sup>م</sup> (mīm) with its preceding letter <sup>س</sup> (sīn). So read every letter separately but without pausing between the letters so that the complete word is uttered fluently.

أَب	أُب	إِب	ئُق	ئُقُ	ئُقِ	قَا	لَا
جَا	جَا	هَمِر	هَمَ	مَه	تَه	هَه	بَه
بَه	هُو	بُه	بَه	عَفَ	شُعِ	عُفِ	شُع
حُو	حَو	حُو	ئَح	جُح	ئَح	لَا	عُن
نُد	نَا	لَر	فُر	رَو	رِمَ	إَر	طَل
فَعَلَ	فَعُلُ	فَعِلَ	فَعَلَ	سَمِعَ	سَمِعَ	جَمَعَ	جَمِعَ
مَكَّنَ	أَمَر	حَمَدَ	حَمِدَ	عَرَضَ	عَرِضَ	بَلَدَ	مَعَكَ
نُفِخَ	بَرِقَ	خَسَفَ	مَثَدَ	ذَكَّرَ	ذَكَرَ	قَتَلَ	قُتِلَ
سَالَ	سَالَ	لَكَأَ	نِكَأَ	كَلَا	كَلِلَ	فِتْنَةُ	أَجَلَ
رَجُلُ	نَذَرَ	مَلِكَ	وَلِيَ	فَلَقَ	خَلَقَ	رَطَبُ	صَدَمَ

## THE LONG VOWELS (حُرُوفُ مَدّ hurūf-e-madd)

ا ('alif) preceded by َ (fathah): ا + َ ; و (wāw) preceded by ُ (ḍammah): و + ُ and ي (yā') preceded by ِ (kasrah): ي + ِ are letters of prolongation. They stretch the sound of preceding letters. In Arabic the sign ~ (madd) expresses the meaning of stretching so these three letters ا ('alif), و (wāw) and ي (yā') are called "hurūf-e-madd" after their character or quality. For example بَ (ba), بُ (bu), بِ (bi) are when followed by ا, و, ي will be read long. They will be read as بَا "bā", بُو "bū", and بِي "bī" respectively. In transliteration, a sign is used over the symbol of short vowel. These must be pronounced long, otherwise, sound of a letter will be dropped. For example, if the word بُو "bū" is read as بُ "bu" (with a short sound) we will be dropping the sound of و "wāw" from the word. So it must be pronounced long as بُو "bū".

1. ب + َ + ا (bā' + fathah + alif) = بَا (bā). Its nearest corresponding sound in English is the vowel in word "far". In transliteration it is represented by the symbol "ā". Transliteration of Arabic word صَبَاحٌ will be written as "ṣabāḥun".
2. ب + ُ + و (bā' + ḍammah + wāw with sukūn) = بُو (bū). Its nearest corresponding sound in English is in the word "Soon". In transliteration it is represented by the symbol "ū". Transliteration of Arabic word أُسْبُوْعٌ will be written as "usbū'un".
3. ب + ِ + ي (bā' + kasrah + yā' with sukūn) = بِي (bī). Its nearest corresponding sound in English is in the word "She". In transliteration it is represented by the symbol "ī". Transliteration of Arabic word دَقِيقَةٌ will be written as "daqīqatun".

Pronounce each word in the Table keeping in mind the above rules:



هَوُ	إِئِ	أُو	ئِئِ	ءُو	آ
حَا	عِئِ	عُو	عَا	هَا	هِي
خِئِ	غِئِ	غَا	غُو	خُو	جِي
كِي	قُو	قِي	قَا	خُو	خَا
ثَا	جِي	جُو	جَا	كُو	كَا
ضِي	يِي	يَا	يُو	شُو	شِي
بِي	لِي	لُو	لَا	ضُو	ضَا
طُو	رَا	رُو	رِي	تُو	تَا
تِي	دُو	دَا	دِي	طِي	طَا
ذَا	ظُو	ظَا	ظِي	تُو	تَا

### SOME EXAMPLES OF THE SHORT AND LONG VOWELS

#### Arabic

#### English

Fathah as in	بَيْنَ	(baina)	a (as in <u>bat</u> )
Fathah as in	دَارَ	(dār)	ā (as in <u>far</u> )
Fathah as in	أَتَقُّكُمْ	(atqākum)	u (as in <u>cut</u> )
Fathah as in	يَسْعَى	(yas‘ā)	e (as in <u>her</u> )
Kasrah as in	أَلْبِنْتُ	(al-bintu)	i (as in <u>pin</u> )
Kasrah as in	دَارِي	(dārī)	ī (as in <u>capital</u> )
Ḍammah as in	زُ	(zur)	u (as in <u>put</u> )
Ḍammah as in	دُونِ	(dūna)	ū (as in <u>lunar</u> )
Ḍammah as in	بُهِتَ	(buhita)	o (as in <u>Holy</u> )

## MARKS FOR LONG VOWELS

In the previous lesson, it has been stated that letters ا, ق, ي are "letters of prolongation" (hurūf-e-madd). These letters prolong or stretch the preceding sound. However, sometimes sound of words is prolonged without the presence of hurūf-e-madd. In such cases, the shape of the short vowel is changed as follows:

The sign of fathah, instead of slanting, is written vertical. Thus, ا + َ (alif plus fathah) is written as َا and بَا (bā) is written as بَ (bā). The sign of dammah ُ is written with upside instead of downside as ُ (ring shape is moved from upside to lower side). Thus, وُ + ُ is written as ُو and بُو (bū) is written as بُو (bū). The sign of kasrah ِ instead of crosswise is written vertical under the letter like ِ and يَ + ِ (yā' and kasrah) is written as ِي. Thus, بِي (bī) is written as بِ (bī).

So َا, ُو, ِي, are representatives of long vowels and they are called fathah ishbā'iyah فَتْحَةُ إِشْبَاعِيَّة, dammah ishbā'iyah ضَمَّةُ إِشْبَاعِيَّة and kasrah ishbā'iyah كَسْرَةُ إِشْبَاعِيَّة respectively.

The Arabic word ishbā' (إِشْبَاع) means to render the sound full. Thus, when fathah, dammah and kasrah sound like long vowels, their shape changes and these are called fathah ishbā'iyah, dammah ishbā'iyah and kasrah ishbā'iyah, respectively. This reflects change in the sound of fathah, dammah and kasrah.

## EXERCISE

َا	ُو	ِي	َا	ُو	ِي	َا
َا	ُو	ِي	َا	ُو	ِي	َا

## EXERCISE

كِتَابُ	مَارِبُ	مَلِكِ	فَرَضْنَهَا	أَمَنْ	أَدَمَ	فِيهِ
kitābu	maāribu	māliki	faradnāhā	āmana	ādama	fihī
خَطَايَكُمْ	إِلْفِهِمْ	سُبْحَنَكَ	لِلْكَافِرِينَ	أَذْبِهِمْ	أَيْتُنَا	سَمَوَاتِ
بِمُزَحْزِحِهِ	بَعْدِهِ	تُورِهِ	تُزْزِقِيهِ	إِبْرَاهِمَ	عِبْدَاتُ	يَدَاوُدُ
يَسْتَقُونَ	نَابِجَانِيهِ	قُرْآنَهُ	وَوَرَى	مَوْءَدَهُ	سُبْحَنَهُ	كَلِمَتُهُ

## SUPER LONG VOWELS: مَدَّات MADDĀT

Arabic letters bearing short vowels followed by ا, و, ي are stretched and pronounced long. So ا, و, ي for their stretching quality are called حُرُوفِ مَدَّات (hurūf-e-maddāt) or long vowels. Sometimes, these long vowels are further prolonged. To indicate this extra prolongation the signs ~ ~ are used over the letters. Thus, these signs are called مَدَّات maddāt or super long vowels.

There are two basic causes for using the super long vowels:

- 1) Voice of hamzah ء, ا occurring after long vowel or its representative mark makes the voice super long. For example, in the word سَيِّئَاتِ si'at, there is ء hamzah after ي yā'. Therefore, long vowel ي yā' will become super long because of its following ء hamzah and it will be written with a ~ madd and read with super prolonged voice as سَيِّئَاتِ (siī'at). Similarly, يَآ أَدَمُ yā ādamu will become يَّآ أَدَمُ (yāā ādamu).

The super long vowels are of two kinds:

1. Madd-e-Aṣlī مَدِّ أَصْلِي
2. Madd-e-Far'ī مَدِّ فَرْعِي

## 1. Madd-e-Aṣlī مَدِّ أَصْلِي

The *madd* where after the letters of *madd* there is no ء hamzah or ْ sukūn. The letters of Madd-e-Aṣlī مَدِّ أَصْلِي are three:

- i. An Alif ا before which there is a letter with a Fathah.
- ii A Wāw و before which there is a letter with Dammah.
- iii. A Yā' ي before which there is a letter with Kasrah.

e.g.

أُودِينَا وَأُوتِينَا نُوحِيهَا

*nūḥihā wa ūṭinā ūdhinā*

## 2. Madd-e-Far'ī مَدِّ فَرْعِي

The *madd* where after the letters of *madd* there is a hamzah ء or a sukūn ْ.

e.g.

مَا أَوْحَىٰ بِضَارِّينَ هَؤُلَاءِ وَالْمَلِكَةِ

*walmalā'ikati hā'ulāi biḍā-arrīna mā auḥā*

There are four types of Madd-e-Far'ī مَدِّ فَرْعِي:

- i. Madd-e-Muttaṣil مَدِّ مُتَّصِل
- ii. Madd-e-Munfaṣil مَدِّ مُنْفَصِل

iii. Madde-e-‘Ārid Waqfī مَدِّ عَارِضٌ وَقْفِيّ

iv. Madd-e- Lāzim مَدِّ لَازِمٌ

### Madd-e-Muttaṣil مَدِّ مُتَّصِلٌ (Contiguous madd)

If ء hamzah occurs in the same word after long vowel, the super long vowel is used which is called مَدِّ مُتَّصِلٌ madd-e-muttaṣil (contiguous madd). So, نِسَاءٌ nisā’un will become نِسَاءٌ nisāā’un. e.g.

أُولِيَاءَ	خَزَائِنُ	مَنْ يَشَاءُ
و	مِنْ سُوءٍ	لَتَنْوُوا
وَجَائِءٍ	يُضْنَى	

### Madd-e-Munfaṣil مَدِّ مُنْفَصِلٌ (Separable madd)

If a word has long vowel in its end and its following word is beginning with the voice of ء hamzah here مَدِّ مُنْفَصِلٌ separable madd ~ (Super long vowel) will occur. Thus, أَلَا alā here مَدِّ مُنْفَصِلٌ separable madd ~ (Super long vowel) will occur. Thus, أَلَا alā-innahum will become أَلَا alāā-innahum. Similarly, لَا يَسْتَحْيِ lā yastahyī will become لَا يَسْتَحْيِ lā yastahyīī. e.g.

أَتَى أَمْرُ اللَّهِ	لَا إِلَهَ	كَمَا أَمَرْتُ
فَاتَّبِعُوا أَمْرَ	تُؤْتُوا إِلَيْهِ	قَالُوا أَوْدَيْنَا
وَتَزَحَفْنِي أَكُنْ	وَيَهْدِنِي إِلَيْهِ	بِعَهْدِي أَوْفِ

## مَدِّ عَارِضٌ وَقْفِي Madd-e-‘Ārid Waqfī

That madd where after the letters of madd, the ḥarkat of the last letter of the word, due to stopping, will be changed temporarily into a sukūn.

e.g.

ا	خَلَقَ الْإِنْسَانَ	فِي الْمِيزَانِ	لَهُمُ الْآبُوابُ
و	لَوْ تَشْعُرُونَ	وَاطِيعُونَ	كُنْ فَيَكُونُ
ى	مِنَ الْمُنْذِرِينَ	سَيَهْدِينِ	لَهُوَ الْعَزِيزُ الرَّحِيمُ

## مَدِّ لَازِمٌ Madd-e-Lāzim

Madd-e-Lāzim مَدِّ لَازِمٌ is that madd where after the letters of madd, there is an original (aşlī أَصْلِي) sukūn (i.e., the sukūn which is part of the word whether one stops or not.) e.g.

ضَالِّينَ بِضَالِّينَ آلُفْنَ التَّمَّ التَّمَّ الزَّالِمَ

If a sukūn or tashdīd bearing letter occurs after the long vowel and the long vowel is necessary to save it from dropping, a *madd* is brought as in the words: ضَالِّينَ - آلُفْنَ

## EXERCISE

يَا أَدَمُ - لَكُنَّا أَهْدَى - يَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ - جَاءُوا آبَاءَهُمْ وَجَاءِيَّ - يَوْمَئِذٍ - وَرِثَهُ أَبَوَاهُ - بَنُوا إِسْرَئِيلَ -  
 آلُفْنَ - ضَالًّا - اللَّهُ - مُذْ هَامُنْ - آمِينَ - حَاجُوْنِي - أَلَذَّكَرِينَ - وَلَا تَتَّبِعَانِ - خَادُ اللَّهُ -  
 تَأْمُرُونِي - وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ -

While stopping during the recitation of the Holy Qur'ān, the last letter of the word, on which one is stopping, will be pronounced as quiescent. Thus, if the second last letter of the word, on which one is halting is a long vowel it creates a condition of super long vowel and the ending of the word is prolonged. For Example, the word تَغْلُمُونَ (ta'lamūna) on stoping will become تَغْلُمُون (ta'lamūn). In such cases long vowels are, generally, read as super long vowels.

## PLIABLE LETTERS حُرُوفُ الْيِّنِ (hurūfullin)

If the quiescent letters **و** and **ي** are preceded by    fathah the preceding letter will be pronounced and the sound will travel softly over or below the following letter. Consequently the sound will make curve from over or below the letter. For example the combination **و** + **ب** will be read as **بَو** "bau" as in English word "bowl" without the letter "l" and the combination **ي** + **ب** will be read as **بَي** "bai" as in English word "bat". Thus the character of **و** and **ي** is different when preceded by fathah as compared to their character when preceded by    dammah and    kasrah. So they are now pliable letters (hurūfullin) instead of letter of prolongation (hurūf-e-madd). As for time, hurūf-e-madd and hurūfullin are equal. Only in shape their sound is different.

ثِي	ثَو	تِي	تَو	بِي	بَو	أِي	أَو
thai	thau	tai	tau	bai	bau	'ai	'au
رِي	رَو	كِي	كَو	عِي	عَو	زِي	زَو
هِي	هَو	وِي	وَو	لِي	لَو	سِي	سَو
رَيْبُ	يَيْنِ	حَيْثُ	عَيْبِ	فَوْزُ			
raiba	yaini	haithu	ghaibi	fauzu			
زَوْجُ	دَيْنِ	دَوْرُ	خَيْطُ	خَوْفُ			
فَوْقُ	ذَوْقُ	كَيْفُ	رَيْثُ	رَوْحُ			

# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

إِنَّ هَذَا الْقُرْآنَ يَهْدِي لِلَّتِي هِيَ أَقْوَمُ

*inna hādhal qur'āna yahdī lillatī hiya aqwamu*

Surely, this Qur'ān guides to what is most right. (17:10)



## RAMŪZ-E-AUQĀF (STOP SIGNS OR PAUSES)

The various signs used in the Holy Qur'ān to stop or pause while reciting the Holy Qur'ān can be divided into the following three categories:

1. Signs of Waqf-e-tām (وقف تام)
2. Signs of Waqf-e-kāfi (وقف كافى)
3. Signs of Waqf-e-ḥasan (وقف حسن)

**Waqf-e-tām (وقف تام):** It means to stop at a word where meaning of the words which follow the word at which one stops has no relationship either with the word at which one stops or with the words which precede it. e.g. In the following verse the subject matter ends at the word **يَسْمَعُونَ** (*yasma'ūna*) and a different subject matter starts with the words following **يَسْمَعُونَ** (*yasma'ūna*):

إِنَّمَا يَسْتَجِيبُ الَّذِينَ يَسْمَعُونَ وَالْمَوْتَى يَبْعَثُهُمُ اللَّهُ

*innamā yastajībulladhīna yasma'ūn walmautā yab'athuhumullāhu*

Only those who listen sincerely respond. And *as for* the dead, Allāh will raise them *to life*. (6:37)

Therefore, after **يَسْمَعُونَ** (*yasma'ūna*) a waqf-e-tām sign is given. *Waqf-e-tām* signs include the following: ۞ , ط , م

**Waqf-e-kāfi (وقف كافى):** It means to stop at such a place where the sentence is complete. However, the words which follow the word at which one stops have a connection of only the meaning and not the word of the sentence which precedes. e.g. In the following verse:

وَمَا أُنزِلَ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ إِلَّا بِإِذْنِهِمْ يُؤْفِقُونَ ۞

*wamā unzila min qablik wa bil ākhirati hum yūqinūn*

And that which was revealed before thee, and they have firm faith in what is *yet* to come. (2:5)

in the word **مِنْ قَبْلِكَ** (*min qablik*) a statement has been made about the righteous people. However, in the part coming after **مِنْ قَبْلِكَ** (*min qablik*) also a characteristic of the righteous people is mentioned. Therefore, a stop at **مِنْ قَبْلِكَ** (*min qablik*) cannot be a Waqf-e-tām. Rather, it will be a Waqf-e-kāfi. This category of stop signs contains only one sign: "ج"

**Waqf-e-ḥasan** (وقف حسن): It means to stop at a word where the sentence is complete. However, there is a connection in both meaning and word of the sentences which precede or follow. e.g. In the verse:

أُولَئِكَ عَلَىٰ هُدًى مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ ق وَأُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْمُفْلِحُونَ ٥

*ulā'ika 'alā hudammirrabihim wa ulā'ika humul muflihūn*

It is they who follow the guidance of their Lord and it is they who shall prosper. (2:6)

at the word **مِنْ رَّبِّهِمْ** (*mirrabihim*) a statement about the righteous people has been completed. However, in the next sentence again a statement about the righteous people is being made. Therefore, the stop at **رَبِّهِمْ** (*rabbihim*) is a Waqf-e-ḥasan. The Waqf-e-ḥasan category contains the following stop signs: "صل" "قل" "صل" "ق" "ص" "ز"

In Waqf-e-tām and Waqf-e-kāfi the reading will be initiated after stopping on the sentence. It will not be necessary to repeat. If Waqf-e-ḥasan is made on an *Āyat* the reading will be initiated after the *Āyat*, otherwise, it will be necessary to repeat.

If one stops at a place where the sentence is incomplete and there is every type of connection with that which is preceding or following it and also meaning is distorted. Such a stop is called Waqf-e-qabiḥ (وقف قبيح). e.g.

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا تَقْرَبُوا الصَّلَاةَ

*yā ayyu halladhīna āmanū lā taqrabuṣṣalata*

O ye who believe! approach not Prayer ... (4:44)

Besides the above mentioned stop signs there are some other stop signs. All stop signs are briefly explained here:

0 or □

This is a sign written on the completion of a verse. Basically this is the abbreviation of a letter ٥ which is the sign of an āyat (verse). We should stop here. For rules regarding stopping or not stopping at 0 sign, please see below under the sign: لا (Lā, No).

Example:

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ٥ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ٥ مَلِكِ يَوْمِ الدِّينِ ٥  
إِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ وَ إِيَّاكَ نَسْتَعِينُ ٥ اهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ ٥ صِرَاطَ  
الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ ٥ غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ ٥

*alḥamdu lillāhi rabbil ‘ālamīn • arraḥmā nirraḥīm • māliki yaumiddīn •  
iyyāka na‘budu wa iyyāka nasta‘īn • ihdi naṣṣirātal mustaqīm •  
ṣirāṭalladhīna an‘amta ‘alaihim, ghairil maghdūbi ‘alaihim wa ladḍu‘a allīn*

All praise belongs to Allāh, Lord of all the worlds, The Gracious, the Merciful, Master of the Day of Judgment. Thee alone do we worship and Thee alone do we implore for help. Guide us in the right path --The path of those on whom Thou has bestowed Thy blessings, those who have not incurred displeasure, and those who have not gone astray. (1:1-7)

م (Mīm):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the word لازم (lāzim) . It is a mandatory stop sign. One **MUST** stop at this sign. So stop and take a breath.

Example:

وَمَا يَعْلَمُ تَأْوِيلَهُ إِلَّا اللَّهُ مَوَالِيسُخُونَ فِي الْعِلْمِ يَقُولُونَ آمَنَّا  
بِهِ لَا كُلٌّ مِّنْ عِنْدِ رَبِّنَا وَمَا يَذَّكَّرُ إِلَّا أُولُوا الْأَلْبَابِ ٥

*wamā ya‘lamu ta’vīlahū illallāh warrāsikhūna fil ‘ilmi yaqūlūna āmannā  
bihi kullummin ‘indi rabbīnā wa mā yadhdhakkaru illā ulul albāb*

And none knows its *right* interpretation except Allāh and those who are firmly grounded in knowledge; they say, 'We believe in it; the whole is from our Lord.' -- And none heed except those gifted with understanding. (3:8)

ط (Tā’):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the word مُطْلَقٌ (*mutlaq*). We should stop at this sign but bearing in mind that the message is not complete and there is a follow up statement for explanation. There may be something else related to the subject matter which could be in the next (following) part of the recitation. If you stop at this sign it is not necessary to repeat the last word.

Example:

وَإِذْ قَالَ لُقْمَنُ لِبْنِهِ وَهُوَ يَعِظُهُ يَبْنِي لَا تُشْرِكْ بِاللَّهِ إِنَّ الشِّرْكَ  
لَظُلْمٌ عَظِيمٌ ٥

*wa idh qāla luqmānu li ibnihi wa huwa ya‘izuhū yā bunayya lā tushrik  
billāh innashshirka lazulmun ‘azīm*

And *remember* when Luqmān said to his son while exhorting him, 'O my dear son! associate not partners with Allāh. Surely, associating partners *with God* is a grievous wrong.' (31:14)

## ج (Jīm):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the word جَائِز (*Jā'iz*) It is an optional stop sign. It is better to stop but you may or may not stop at this sign.

Example:

وَلَقَدْ أَنْزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ آيَاتٍ بَيِّنَاتٍ ۖ وَمَا يَكْفُرُ بِهَا إِلَّا الْفَاسِقُونَ ۝

*walaqad anzalnā ilaika āyātim bayyinātin wamā yakfuru bihā illal fāsiqūn*

And surely We have sent down to thee manifest Signs, and none disbelieves in them but the disobedient. (2:100)

## ز (Zā):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the word مُجَوِّز (*mujawwaz*). Although stop is permissible, it is better not to stop at this sign.

Example:

وَمَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَعْلَمُهُ اللَّهُ ۖ وَتَزَوَّدُوا فَإِنَّ خَيْرَ الزَّادِ التَّقْوَىٰ ۖ وَاتَّقُونِ يَا أُولِيَ الْأَلْبَابِ ۝

*wamā taf'alū min khairiñyā'lam hullāhu wa tazawwadū fa inna khairazzādittaqwā wattaqūni yā ulil albāb*

And whatever good you do, Allāh knows it. And furnish yourselves with *necessary* provisions, and surely, the best provision is righteousness. And fear Me *alone*, O men of understanding. (2:198)

## ص (Ṣād):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the word مُرَخَّصٌ (*murakhkhas*) This sign appears somewhere in the middle of a verse. It is better to combine the previous part of the verse with the next part. But if one cannot do so because of shortness of breath, then one may stop.

Example:

أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ اشْتَرُوا الضَّلَالَةَ بِالْهُدَىٰ مِمَّا رَبَّحْتَ تِجَارَتُهُمْ  
وَمَا كَانُوا مُهْتَدِينَ۝

*uḷā'ikalladhī nashtara wuḍḍaḷalata bil hudā famā rabihattijāratu hum  
wamā kānū muhtadīn*

These are they who have taken error in exchange for guidance; but their traffic has brought them no gain, nor are they rightly guided. (2:17)

## قلے (Qāf, Lām, Yā'):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the words أَلْوَقْفُ أُولَىٰ (*al-waḳfu aulā*). It means to stop at this sign is better. However, one can continue without stopping.

## صلے (Ṣād, Lām, Yā'):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the words أَلْوَصْلُ أُولَىٰ (*al-waṣlu aulā*). It means to read without stopping is better. However, stop is also permissible. When this sign appears, combine the first part with the next part of the verse.

Example:

وَإِذَا لَقُوا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا قَالُوا آمَنَّا ۖ وَإِذَا خَلَوْا إِلَىٰ شُيَاطِينِهِمْ ۖ  
 قَالُوا إِنَّا مَعَكُمْ إِنَّمَا نَحْنُ مُسْتَهْزِءُونَ ٥

*wa idhā laqulladhīna āmanū qālū āmannā wa idhā khalau ilā shayāṭīnihim  
 qālū innā ma‘akum innamā nahnu mustahzi’ūn*

And when they meet those who believe, they say: 'We believe'; but when they are alone with their ringleaders they say: We are certainly with you; we are only mocking.' (2:15)

## قف (Qif):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the words **يَقِفُ عَلَيْهِ الْوَاقِفُ** (*yaqifu ‘alaihil wāqifu*; the one who stops here). The reader must stop at this sign. It is written at those places where there is a chance that the reader may combine with the next part of the verse.

Example:

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا تَأْكُلُوا أَمْوَالَكُم بَيْنَكُم بِالْبَاطِلِ إِلَّا أَنْ  
 تَكُونَ تِجَارَةً عَنْ تَرَاضٍ مِّنْكُمْ ۚ وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا أَنْفُسَكُمْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ  
 كَانَ بِكُمْ رَحِيمًا ٥

*yā ayyu halladhīna āmanū la ta‘kukū amwālakum bainakum  
 bilbāṭili illā an takūna tijāratan ‘an trāḍimminkum walā taqtulū  
 anfusakum innallāha kāna bikum raḥīmā*

O ye who believe! devour not your property among yourselves by unlawful means, except that *you earn* by trade with mutual consent. And kill not yourself, Allāh is Merciful to you. (4:30)

## س (Sīn) or سكتة (Saktah):

Without re-breathing give a short pause and then continue the recitation of the Holy Qur'ān.

Example:

قَالَ رَبُّنَا ظَلَمْنَا أَنْفُسَنَا سَكْتةً وَإِنْ لَمْ تَغْفِرْ لَنَا وَتَرْحَمْنَا لَنَكُونَنَّ  
مِنَ الْخَسِرِينَ۝

*qālā rabbanā ḡalamnā anfusana wa illam taghfirlanā wa tarḡamnā  
lanakūnanna minal khāsirīn*

They said, 'Our Lord, we have wronged ourselves; and if Thou forgive us not and have not mercy on us, we shall surely be of the lost.' (7:24)

## وقف (Waqf, Pause):

*Waqf* verbally means to stop. Conventionally it means to stop at a word for the duration normally a person takes to breath with the intention to continue the recitation. While doing *waqf* you should act upon the rules mentioned here under the title, "Ramūz-e-Auqāf". If you do *waqf* on a stop sign then you should resume recitation from the next word. However, if you do *waqf* without any sign, you should go one or two words back to resume recitation.

## وقفه (Waqfah, Pause):

This pause is longer than س or سكتة. Conditions remain the same but the reader should give a longer pause.

Example:



رَبَّنَا لَا تُؤَاخِذْنَا إِنْ نَسِينَا أَوْ أَخْطَأْنَا رَبَّنَا وَلَا تَحْمِلْ عَلَيْنَا إِكْرًا  
 كَمَا حَمَلْتَهُ عَلَى الَّذِينَ مِنْ قَبْلِنَا رَبَّنَا وَلَا تُحَمِّلْنَا مَا لَا طَاقَةَ لَنَا  
 بِهِ ۖ وَاعْفُ عَنَّا ۖ وَارْحَمْنَا ۖ أَنْتَ مَوْلَانَا فَانصُرْنَا  
 عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْكَافِرِينَ ٥

*rabbanā lā tu'akhidhnā innasīnā au akhta'na rabbanā wa lā tahmil  
 'alainā ishran kamā hamaltahū 'alalladhina min qablinā rabbanā wa  
 lā tu hammilnā mā lā ṭāqatalanā bih wa'fu 'annā, waghfirlanā,  
 warḥamnā anta maulāna fansurnā 'alal qaumil kāfirin*

Our Lord, do not punish us, if we forget or fall into error; and our Lord, lay not on us a responsibility as Thou didst lay upon those before us. Our Lord, burden us not with what we have not the strength to bear; and efface our *sins*, and grant us forgiveness and have mercy on us; Thou art our Master; so help us against the disbelieving people. (2:287)

## لا (Lā, No):

This sign is an abbreviation of the words لَا يُوقَفُ عَلَيْهِ (lā yūqaf 'alaihi). This sign means NO. For the sake of better understanding we will divide the application of this sign into following groups:

- a) If it is inside the verse then DO NOT STOP.

Example:

وَعَلَّمَ آدَمَ الْأَسْمَاءَ كُلَّهَا ثُمَّ عَرَضَهُمْ عَلَى الْمَلَائِكَةِ ۖ فَقَالَ  
 أَتُبْتُونَ بِأَسْمَاءٍ هَؤُلَاءِ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ صَادِقِينَ ٥

*wa 'allama ādamal asmā'a kullahā thumma 'aradahum 'alal  
 malā'ikati faqāla ambi 'ūnī bi asmāi' hā'ulāi' in kuntum ṣādiqin*

And He taught Adam all the names, then He put *the objects of these names* before the angels and said: 'Tell Me the names of these, if you are right.' (2:32)

- b) If it is at the completion of the verse i.e., over the sign 0 then you may or may not stop. Either way, it is right. e.g.

If stopped at 0̣

سَبِّحْ اسْمَ رَبِّكَ الْأَعْلَى ۚ الَّذِي خَلَقَ فَسَوَّى ۚ

will be recited as:

سَبِّحْ اسْمَ رَبِّكَ الْأَعْلَى ۚ الَّذِي خَلَقَ فَسَوَّى ۚ

*sabbi hisma rabbikal a'la, alladhī khalaqa fasawwā*

Glorify the name of thy Lord, the Most High, Who creates and perfects. (87:2-3)

**NOT STOPPING AT 0̣:** In this case, the sign is regarded to be just ۞, which means do not stop. One has to proceed on to the next word without pause, connecting the next word if need be.

**STOPPING AT 0̣:** In this case, the sign is regarded to be just 0, which is the sign of 'Āyat' meant for stopping. But the stop is observed following the stop rules given earlier.

## Beginning the next word after 0̣

There are three different situations:

1. If the word next to 0̣ begins with *shadda* ّ, the *shadda* ّ is replaced with

*fathah*    or *kasrah*    (depending upon the sign on the letter after the stop sign) when stopping on ٱ sign.

With stopping read as

Without stopping read as

غَفُورًا رَحِيمًا ٱ وَ الْمُخَصَّنَاتُ : غَفُورًا رَحِيمًا ٱ وَ الْمُخَصَّنَاتُ - غَفُورًا رَحِيمًا وَ الْمُخَصَّنَاتُ  
ghafūrarrāḥimā walmuḥṣanātu - ghafūrarrāḥimāḥwal muḥṣanātu

كُلُّ كَفَّارٍ عِنْدِ ٱ مَنَّا عِلَّ الْخَيْرِ: كُلُّ كَفَّارٍ عِنْدِ ٱ مَنَّا عِلَّ الْخَيْرِ - كُلُّ كَفَّارٍ عِنْدِ مَنَّا عِلَّ الْخَيْرِ  
kulla kaffārin ‘anīd mannā‘illil khairi - kulla kaffārin ‘anīdimmannā ‘illil khairi

وَجُوهٌ يَوْمَئِذٍ نَّاعِمَةٌ ٱ لِّسَعْيِهَا: وَجُوهٌ يَوْمَئِذٍ نَّاعِمَةٌ لِّسَعْيِهَا وَجُوهٌ يَوْمَئِذٍ نَّاعِمَةٌ لِّسَعْيِهَا  
wujūh yauma’idhinnā‘imah li sa’yihā - wujūhuḥyauma’idhinnā ‘imatulli sa’yihā

2. If the word after ٱ begins with a blank ٱ *alif* and a ل *lām* or it begins with nūn quṭnī and a ل *lām*, the start is made with a fathah, and without nūn quṭnī:

changes to

عَالَمِينَ ٱ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ٱ

‘ālamīnarrahīmānirrahīm

عَالَمِينَ ٱ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ٱ

‘ālamīn arrahīmānirrahīm

3. If the word after ٱ begins with a blank ٱ *alif* or with a nūn quṭnī, but there is no ل *lām* after it, the word is then started with a sign, same as that of the third letter after ٱ .

هَرُونَ أَخِي ٱ أَشَدُّ بِهِ أَزْرَى changes to هَرُونَ أَخِي ٱ أَشَدُّ بِهِ أَزْرَى

hārūna akhishdud bihī azrī

hārūna akhī ushdud bihī azrī

الْأَنْفُورَا ٱ اسْتِكْبَارًا فِي الْأَرْضِ changes to الْأَنْفُورَا ٱ اسْتِكْبَارًا فِي الْأَرْضِ

illā nufūrastikbāran fil arḍi

illā nufūra istikbāran fil arḍi

## ق (Qāf):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the words قِيلَ عَلَيْهِ الْوَقْفُ (*qīla ‘alaihil waqfu*).  
Do not stop at this sign.

Example:

فَوَيْلٌ لِلَّذِينَ يَكْتُبُونَ الْكِتَابَ بِأَيْدِيهِمْ ۖ ثُمَّ يَقُولُونَ هَذَا مِنْ عِنْدِ  
اللَّهِ لِيَشْتَرُوا بِهِ ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا

*fā wailulliladhīna yaktubūnal kitāba bi aidi him thumma yaqūlūna  
hādha min ‘indillahi li yashtarū bihi thamanan qalīla*

Woe, therefore, to those who write the Book with their own hands and then say:  
'This is from Allāh,' that they may take for it a paltry price. (2:80)



## (Mu‘āniqa - Three Dots):

This sign will never be found alone. Seeing a three-dot sign, the reader should look for another three-dot sign in the next part of the verse or even in the next verse. There are two possibilities.

- a) If the three-dot sign appears either without any other sign accompanying it or as a combination of two similar signs at both places then the reader may choose either one of the places to stop, but only at ONE place.

Example:

وَ قَالَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لَوْلَا نُزِّلَ عَلَيْهِ الْقُرْآنُ جُمْلَةً وَاحِدَةً ؕ كَذَلِكَ  
لِنُثَبِّتَ بِهِ فُؤَادَكَ وَرَتَّلْنَاهُ تَرْتِيلًا ۝

*wa qālalladhīna kafarū lau lā nuzzila ‘alaihil qur’ānu  
jumlatañwwāhidah kadhālika linuthabbita bihī fu’adaka wa  
rattalnāhu tarfīla*

And those who disbelieve say, 'Why was not the Qur’ān revealed to him all at once? ' *We have revealed it* thus that We may strengthen thy heart therewith. And We have arranged it in the best form. (25:33)

- b) If the three-dot sign appears in combination of dissimilar signs at both places then decide according to the other sign that appears alongwith the three-dot sign.

Example:

ذَٰلِكَ الْكِتَابُ لَا رَيْبَ ۚ فِيهِ هُدًى لِّلْمُتَّقِينَ ۚ

*dhālikal kitābu lā raiba fih, hudallil muttaqīn*

This is a perfect Book; there is no doubt in it; *it is* a guidance for the righteous. (2:3)

م (Mīm):

This م mīm is different from this م mīm, which is a mandatory stop sign. However, م mīm is a part of the recitation.

Example:

وَأَمِنُوا بِمَا أَنزَلْتُ مُصَدِّقًا لِّمَا مَعَكُمْ وَلَا تَكُونُوا أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ ۚ  
وَلَا تَشْتَرُوا بِآيَاتِي ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا ۚ وَإِيَّايَ فَاتَّقُونِ ۚ

*wa āminū bimā anzaltu muṣaddiqallimā ma‘akum wafā takūnū  
awwala kāfirim bihī wafā tashtarū bi āyāfi thamanan qalīlan wa  
iyyāya fattaqūn*

And believe in what I have sent down which fulfils that which is with you, and be not the first to disbelieve therein, and barter not My Signs for a paltry price, and take protection in Me alone. (2:42)

## ن (Nūn):

This is similar to م. This is not a sign but is part of the recitation.

Example:

إِلَىٰ رَبِّكَ يَوْمَئِذٍ الْمُسْتَقَرُّۙ

*ilā rabbika yauma 'idhi nil mustaqar*

With thy Lord *alone* will be the place of rest that day. (75:13)

## RARE SIGNS

The following two signs are seldom used but these are important as far as their application is concerned. Therefore, it is important to know these signs.

## صل (Ṣād, Lām):

This stop sign is an abbreviation of the words قَدْ يُوصَلْ (*qad yūṣal*), it means that once a while one reads without stopping). It is better to stop at this sign but it is not mandatory.

## كء (Kāf, Hamzah):

This sign is an abbreviation of the word كَذَلِكَ (*kadhālika*), which means likewise. If you come across this sign, then look for the previous sign in the recitation. The same previous sign applies at this place as well.

## ع ء ('Ain, Rukū'):

This sign will always be over the sign of a verse, i.e., 0 or □. This tells the reader that Rukū' is going to end at the completion of this particular verse.

### RULES OF MAKING A STOP OR PAUSE

1. If the last letter has *sukūn* over it, no change takes place on stopping. e.g.,

*kuwwirat* كُورِتْ = *kuwwirat* كُورِتْ ط

2. If the last letter is *Hamzah* with double *fathah*, one of the *fathah* changes to an *alif*. e.g.

*nisā'a* نِسَاءْ = نِسَاءْ ط

3. All *signs* on the last letter always change to a *sukūn*, e.g.

*malak* مَلِكْ = مَلِكْ ط • *shuhadā* شُهَدَاءْ = شُهَدَاءْ ط • *fiḥ* فِيْهْ = فِيْهْ ط

4. Round *tā'* is always changed to *hā'* with *sukūn*, e.g.

*quwwah* قُوَّةْ = قُوَّةْ ط

5. If the last letter is blank *alif* but the letter before it has double *fathah*, one *fathah* is dropped and *alif* becomes active. e.g.

*raqībā* رَقِيبَا = رَقِيبَا ط

6. If *alif* in the end is blank but the letter before it does not have a *fathah*, then this *alif* will be silent. e.g.

تَهْتَدُوا ط = تَهْتَدُوا tahtadū

7. If the last letter is blank *ya* and the letter before it has a double *fathah*, *yā'* will become silent and the *double fathah* changes to vertical *fathah*. e.g.

ضَحَى ط = ضَحَى duḥā

8. If the last letter is blank *yā'* but the letter before it does not have a double *fathah*, there will be no change on making stop. e.g.

أَبَى ط = أَبَى abā

9. If there is *nūn quṭnī* between two verses, one may or may not stop reciting such verses. e.g.

- a) If a stop is not made, *nūn quṭnī* will give its sound and the blank *alif* becomes silent.

إِنَّ أَبَانَا لَفِي ضَلَالٍ مُّبِينٍ ۖ اِقْتُلُوا يُوسُفَ

*inna abānā lafi ḍaḥalimmubīni niqtulū yūsufā*

- b) If a stop is made, *nūn quṭnī* will drop but the blank *alif* over it becomes effective and *i'rāb* of the next active letter is given to this *alif*.

إِنَّ أَبَانَا لَفِي ضَلَالٍ مُّبِينٍ ۖ اُقْتُلُوا يُوسُفَ

*inna abānā lafi ḍaḥalimmubīn uqtulū yūsufā*



## PRACTICE OF THE STOP SIGNS

رُسُلِ 0 وَالِدَتِكَ غَيْرِهِ 0 لَهَبٍ 0 دَلَوَهُ 0 حَافِظُ 0 هُوَ فَتَسِي 0 صَدِيقَيْنِ 0 عَظِيمُ 0

رُسُلُ وَالِدَتِكَ غَيْرُهُ لَهَبُ دَلَوَهُ حَافِظُ هُوَ فَتَسِي صَدِيقَيْنِ عَظِيمُ

‘azīm ṣādiqin fanasī hū ḥāfiẓ dalwah lahab ghairih wālidatik rusul

فِيهِ شَيْءٌ يُنْفِقُونَ 0 تَعْلَمُونَ 0 شَكُورٍ 0 أُمُورٍ 0 أَلْبَابٍ 0 ضَلَّ 0 زَوْجِنِ 0

فِيهِ شَيْءٌ يُنْفِقُونَ تَعْلَمُونَ شَكُورٌ أُمُورٌ أَلْبَابٌ ضَلَّ زَوْجِنِ

zaujān ḍalāl albāb umūr shakūr ta‘lamūn yunfiqūn shai’ fih

شُهَدَاءُ عِبَادِهِ الْعُلَمَاءُ رَقِيبًا 0 ضَحَى 0 مُصَلَّى 0 أَبِي 0 قُوَّةٌ ثَمَنِيَّةٌ 0 كُورَتْ 0

شُهَدَاءُ عِبَادِهِ الْعُلَمَاءُ رَقِيبًا ضَحَا مُصَلَّا أَبٌ قُوَّةٌ ثَمَنِيَّةٌ كُورَتْ

kuwwirat thamāniyah quwwah abā muṣallā ḍuḥā raqībā ‘ibādihi ‘ulamā’ shuhadā’

تَنْهَزُ 0 فَحَدِّثْ 0 ذِكْرِي 0 زَكْرِيَّا 0 قَوَارِيرًا 0 تَهْتَدُوا بِزُقٍ 0 مُلْكٌ 0 لَهْوٌ 0

تَنْهَزُ فَحَدِّثْ ذِكْرِي زَكْرِيَّا قَوَارِيرًا تَهْتَدُوا بِزُقٍ مُلْكٌ لَهْوٌ

lahw mulk barq tahtadū qawārirā dhakariyyā dhikrī faḥaddith tanhar

شَانِ 0 قَسَطٍ 0 إِبَّائِي 0 مَثْوَايَ 0 فِيهِنَّ 0 جَانٌّ 0 نِسَاءٌ 0 نِدَاءٌ 0 جُزْءٌ 0 تُقَاةٌ 0

شَانِ قَسَطٍ إِبَّائِي مَثْوَايَ فِيهِنَّ جَانٌّ نِسَاءٌ نِدَاءٌ جُزْءٌ تُقَاةٌ

tuqāh juz’ā nidā’ā nisā’ā jānn fihin mathwā iyyā qisṭ shā’n

# MAKHĀRIJ

The place where the sound of the letter originates is called Makhārij. There are seventeen Makharij which are as follows:

1. جَوْفِ فَمٍ (Jauf-e-Fam) Emptiness of the Mouth.

The following three *letters of madd* are pronounced from this Makhraj: ا و ی

These letters are called *Hurūf-e-Maddah*.

2. أَقْصَى حَلْقٍ (Aqṣā Ḥalq) The Part of the Throat Nearest to the Chest.

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: ه and ء

3. وَسْطِ حَلْقٍ (Waṣṭ-e-Ḥalq) The Center of the Throat.

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: ح and ع

4. أَدْنَى حَلْقٍ (Adnā Ḥalq) The Part of the Throat Nearest to the Mouth.

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: خ and غ

The above letters ا و ی ه ء ح ع خ غ are known as *Hurūf-e-Ḥalqī*.

5. The Extreme Back of the Tounge When Touching the Palate.

The following letter is pronounced from this Makhraj: ق

6. The Back of the Tounge (Not as far back as that for qāf) When Touching the Palate.

The following letter is pronounced from this Makhraj: ك

7. The Center of the Tongue When Touching the Palate.

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: **ی ش ج**

The letters **ی ش ج** are known as *Hurūf-e-Shajriyya* because they are pronounced from the center of the mouth.

8. **The Back Edge of the Tongue Upturned When Touching the Roots of the Molars and the Pre-molars.**

The following letter is pronounced from this Makhraj: **ض**

The letter **ض** is known as *Harf-e-‘Āfiyah* because it is pronounced from the upturned sides of the tongue.

There are three ways of pronouncing the letter: **ض**

- i. From the right side
- ii. From the left side
- iii. From both sides at the same time

However, it is commonly easier to pronounce it from the left side.

9. **The Edge of the Tongue, When Touching the Gums of the Teeth, Which Extend from the Pre-molar on One Side to the Pre-molar on the Other Side.**

The following letter is pronounced from this Makhraj: **ل**

10. **The Edge of the Tongue, When Touching the Gums of the Teeth, Which Extend From the Canine on One Side to the Canine on the Other Side.**

The following letter is pronounced from this Makhraj: **ن**

11. **The Edge of the Tongue Including the Immediate Top, When touching the Gums of the Central Incisors and the Lateral Incisors.**

The following letter is pronounced from this Makhraj: **ر**

The letters **ل ن ر** are known as *Hurūf-e-Tarfiyyah* and *Hurūf-e-Dhalqiyya* because they are pronounced from the edge of the tongue.

12. **The Tip of the Tongue When Touching the Roots of the Central Incisors.**

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: ت د ط

The letters ت د ط are known as *Hurūf-e-Nat‘iyyah* because they are pronounced from the cavity of the roots of the Central Incisors.

13. **The Tip of the Tongue When Touching the Edge of the Central Incisors.**

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: ث ن ظ

The letters ث ن ظ are pronounced as *Hurūf-e-Lathwiyya* because they are pronounced from the teeth which are attached to the gums.

14. **The Tip of the Tongue When Touching the Edge of the Lower Central Incisor including the Upper Central Incisors.**

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: ز س ص

The letters ز س ص are known as *Hurūf-e-Asaliyya* because they are pronounced from the sharp tip of the tongue.

15. **The Inner Center of the Bottom Lip When touching the Edge of the Upper Central Incisors.**

The following letter is pronounced from this Makhraj: ف

16. **Both the Lips (When Meeting).**

The following letters are pronounced from this Makhraj: و م ب

The letters و م ب are known as *Hurūf-e-Shafawiyya* because they are pronounced from the lips.

17. **خَيْشُوم (Khaishum):** From this Makhraj the *ghunna* is pronounced.

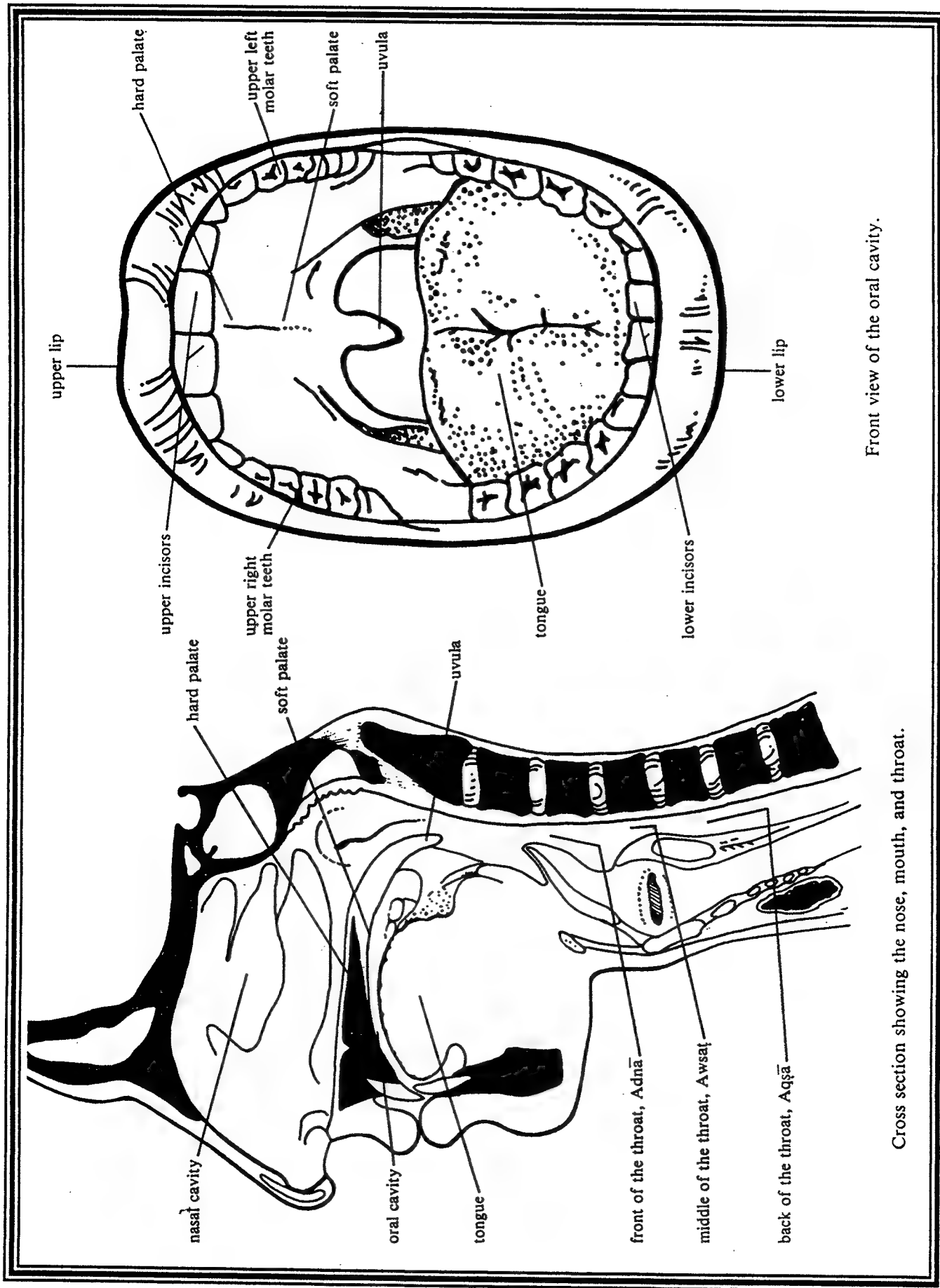
# مَخَارِجُ الْحُرُوفِ

## MAKHARIJUL HURUF

(Correct Pronunciation of the Alphabets)

It is very important to recite/pronounce words correctly as the meanings change drastically. Some examples are given below.

Alphabet	Meanings	Transliteration	Similar Words
ع	All Knowing	‘alimun	عَلِيمٌ
ا	Painful	alimun	أَلِيمٌ
ط	Morning star	ṭāriqun	طَارِقٌ
ت	Abandoned	tāriqun	تَارِكٌ
ق	Heart	qalbun	قَلْبٌ
ك	Dog	kalbun	كَلْبٌ
ق	You say	qul	قُلْ
ك	You eat	kul	كُلْ
ض	Gone astray	ḍalla	ضَلَّ
ذ	Disgraced	dhalla	ذَلَّ
ظ	Shade	ẓalla	ظَلَّ
ز	Slipped	zalla	زَلَّ



Front view of the oral cavity.

Cross section showing the nose, mouth, and throat.

# CORRECT COMBINATIONS

## JAZM/SUKŪN

In Arabic marks   ^   and   •   are called **sukūn** or **jazm**. Sukūn literally means calm or quiescence and the letter bearing quiescence mark is called **sākin** that is quiescent. So when we join a letter having a ḥarakat (a fathah, kasrah or dammah) on it with a letter having a jazm/sukūn the letter with a ḥarakat will join directly in accordance with the phonetic sound of the stroke on or below the letter.

EXAMPLES:

بَبْ بَبْ بُبْ الْحَمْدُ عَلِمْتُمْ أَلَمْ نَشْرَحْ لَكَ صَدْرَكَ

*alam nashrah laka sadraka - 'alimtum - al-ḥamdu - bubb - bibb - babb*

If a letter with a stroke is followed by an *alif*, *hamzah* or *'ain* with sukūn, they join with a little stroke:

EXAMPLES:

بَا بَ بْ بُعْ

*bu' - bi' - ba'*

So while joining a letter with a quiescent one, one should settle the voice on the quiescent, then it will be pronounced correctly. For example in the word نَبْدُ na'budu if you settle نَ (na) on the quiescent عَ ('ain) it will be read correctly as نَبْدُ na'budu, otherwise 'ain would be converted to 'alif and the word would be read as نَابْدُ (nābudu), which is wrong. So to read a sākin (quiescent) letter correctly, one must settle the voice on it.

## SHAKY QUIESCENT LETTERS

The important thing to know about the quiescent letters is that the voice should be settled on them and shaking should be avoided while uttering these letters. However, there are five

letters **ق ط ب ج د** (قُطِبُ جِدِّ) when they are sākin (quiescent), are slightly shaken so that they can be uttered correctly and softly. For instance to read the word **هَبْ** (habb) when one utters **ب** lips remain closed. If lips are opened just before ending of the voice, it will shake the utterance. These letters are called, **حُرُوفُ قَلْقَالَةٍ** 'Hurūf-e-Qalqalah'.

## WORDS HAVING TWO LETTERS WITH SUKŪN

In Arabic, one seldom sees two letters with sukūn (quiescent letters) written together in one word. End letter of the last word of a sentence is usually written with a ḥarkat on it. However, as far as reading is concerned, one often has to read the end letter of the last word in a sentence as if it has sukūn on it. Thus, it may make one to read two letters in a word with sukūn. The examples of such words along with the words with one letter with ḥarkat joining another letter with a sukūn on it are as follows:

صِدْق	كَرَم	صَبْر	مَلِك	مِلْك	مَلَك	مُلْك
ṣidq	karam	ṣabr	malik	milk	malak	mulk
مِثْل	بَلَد	حَمْد	سَفَر	أَجَز	قَلَم	عِلْم
قَمَر	بَحْر	مَرَض	لَهُو	أَمَم	مَكْر	عَجَب
حَجَز	عَرْض	نَفْس	يُسْر	غَضَب	عُسْر	ضَرْب
أَمَر	كُفْر	ذِكْر	رِزْق	بَصْر	مِضْر	فَجَز
ذَوْق	إِصْر	شَمْس	فَوْز	كَبَر	حِجَز	قَوْم
صَخْر	عَوْن	قَبْل	صَوْم	بَرَق	يَوْم	فُلْك
	حَمْدَة	بَعْدَة	شَأْن	حَسَنَة	مَثْوَى	فِيْه



## REVISION OF THE RULES IN THE PREVIOUS LESSONS

In this lesson Arabic words have been arranged in a particular order. Practicing by repeating these words repeatedly one can get accuracy and fluency in pronouncing these words. While practicing these words one should try to pronounce the Arabic letters carefully. Letters with short vowels, fathah, dammah and kasrah should be pronounced clear but short in sound. The quiescent letters (letters bearing sukūn) should be read clearly taking into consideration shaky and unshaky character of the quiescent letters. The words should be read continuously without breaking the sound.

يَقُولُ	غُرُورُ	أَعُوذُ	أُمُورُ	نَسُوهُ	مُلُوكُ
yaqūlu	ghurūru	a'ūdhu	umūru	nasūhu	mulūku
أُمْلِي	تَقُورُ	وَجُوهُ	تُخْفِي	أَوْتِي	يُؤَسِّفُ
مِثْلَاقِ	يَدَيْهِ	يَكُونُ	مَكَانَ	يَبْنِي	تُجُومُ
إِلَيْكَ	أَوْحَى	أَيْدِيكُمْ	تَهْوِي	أَيْمَانُ	صُدُورِ
نُوحِيهِ	أَبْوَنِي	لِيُضَيِّعَ	عَلَيْهِمْ	بَيْنَكُمْ	تُبْنِي
تَدْعُونَ	مَوْعِدِ	يَلُوفُونَ	نُورُهُمْ	تَبْعِي	زَوْجِينَ
رَازِقِينَ	صَالِحُونَ	فِرْعَوْنُ	سَمِعْنَا	مَغْضُوبِ	تَخَيُّونَ
يَهْجَعُونَ	حُسْنَيْنِ	لِلْخُرُوجِ	تَرَوْنَهُمْ	يُفْسِدُونَ	يَسْتَوْفُونَ
يَسْتَمُونَ	تَسْتَلُ	أَقِمْنَ	أُودَيْنَا	قُلْنَ	أَفْعَيْنَا
يَسْؤُمُونَكُمْ	يَسْتَعْجِلُونَكَ	لَا تَرْتَابُوا	مُسْتَهْزِئُونَ	يَقُودُ	رُفُوسِ
وَضَعْنَا	يَأْتِيهِ	يَبْنِنَا	سَتَجِدُنِي	أَطْعْنَا	سَمِعْنَا
يَأْذَنُ	إِزْحَمْنَا	لَا طَاقَةَ لَنَا	لَا تُؤَاخِذْنَا	لَا تُخَاطِبْنِي	إِعْزَلْنَا
جِنَانَا	وَلْيَضْرِبَنَّ	تَأْوِيلُ	لَا تَخْضَعَنَّ	تَأْتُونِي	قَرَنَ
لَا يَغْصِبُنَاكَ	بِئْسَ	لَا يَأْتِينَ	أَخَذْنَا	أَطْعَنَ	بَارِكُكُمْ
وَأَمْرُ	يَأْفِكُونَ	ءَ أَقْرَزْتُمْ	إِمْتَلَأْتِ	أَبَيْنَ	قَرَأَتْ
مُهْطِعِينَ	مَاكِثِينَ	تَزْدَادُونَ	يَأْمُرُ	وَأَتُونِي	رُءْيَاكَ
إِذْ تَدْعُونَ	هَلْ يَسْمَعُونَكُمْ	وَلَمْ يُولَدْ	لَمْ يَلِدْ	رُءُوسِهِمْ	مُقْبِعِي

## TANWĪN (Nūnation or suffix 'n' in a Noun)

Sometimes Arabic words have double marks such as      ,      ,      , in the end letter. A double *fathah*, a double *kasrah* or a double *dammah* is called a **تَنْوِين** (*tanwīn*). One of these double marks is a short vowel and the other one represents nūn sākin نُنْ; it gives the sound of a nūn with *sukūn*. For example the word **بَقَرَاتُنْ** is **بَقَرَةٌ** (baqaratan), **مَرَضُنْ** is **مَرَضٌ** (maradun) and **سَفَرُنْ** is **سَفَرٌ** (safarin). The sākin nūn is called "*nūn of nūnation*". Thus, suffix "n" in the words **بَقَرَةٌ** , **مَرَضٌ** , **سَفَرٌ** , is "*nūn of nūnation*".

In each of the pairs given below, one of the stroke remains while the second one gives the sound of a nūn with *sukūn*.

بُ = بُ + نْ      بٍ = بٍ + نْ      بَ = بَ + نْ

*bu + n = bunn*

*bi + n = binn*

*ba + n = bann*

EXAMPLES:

جَهْرَةٌ    جَهْرَةٌ    جَهْرَةٌ    جَهْرَةٌ    جَهْرَةٌ    جَهْرَةٌ    جَهْرَةٌ  
jahratan    jahratan    jahratan    jahratan    jahratan    jahratan    jahratan  
غَشَاوَةٌ    غَشَاوَةٌ    غَشَاوَةٌ    غَشَاوَةٌ    غَشَاوَةٌ    غَشَاوَةٌ    غَشَاوَةٌ  
ghishawatun    ghishawatun    ghishawatun    ghishawatun    ghishawatun    ghishawatun    ghishawatun  
فَضْلٌ    فاضلٌ    فاضلٌ    فاضلٌ    فاضلٌ    فاضلٌ    فاضلٌ  
fadlin    fadlin    fadlin    fadlin    fadlin    fadlin    fadlin

### EXERCISE

جَهْرَةٌ	عُمَى	رُءُوسٌ	رَعُوفٌ	أُمُورٌ	عَادٍ	أُلُوفٌ
jahratan	'umyun	ru'usun	ra'ufun	umurun	'ādin	ulufun
غَشَاوَةٌ	فَاكِهَةٌ	رُجُومٌ	نَاعِمَةٌ	كُتُبٌ	بَاسِرَةٌ	نَافِلَةٌ
نَاصِرَةٌ	ضَامِرٌ	مَغْلُومَةٌ	ظَالِمَةٌ	لَكَبِيرَةٌ	خَاوِيَةٌ	

سَلَالَةٍ - عَقَلَةٍ - لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ عَظِيمٌ - مَتَاعٌ إِلَى حِينٍ - لَا يُقْبَلُ مِنْهَا شَفَاعَةٌ - وَلَا يُؤْخَذُ مِنْهَا عَذْلٌ

إِصْفَحْ عَنْهُمْ وَقُلْ سَلَامٌ - لَا يُصِيبُهُمْ ظَلَمٌ - وَلَا نَصَبٌ

## PRONUNCIATION OF QUIESCENT NŪN AND NŪN OF NŪNATION

### a) Clarity in utterance of quiescent nūn ن and nūn of nūnation

Quiescent nūn ن and nūn of nūnation ـ , ـ , ـ , (suffix n) are read in several ways. The letter following the quiescent nūn ن specifies the way a word is to be read. Thus, the letters can be classified into different groups with respect to their pronunciation of quiescent nūn ن. One of these groups includes letters ع , ه , ع , ح , غ , خ. These six letters are uttered from gullet, i.e., حَلَق (ḥalq). Therefore, these letters are called حُرُوفِ حَلَقِي (ḥurūf-e-ḥalqī) or letters of gullet. If any of these letters comes after quiescent nūn ن or nūn of nūnation, the nūn will be pronounced as overt and its sound will be apparent. This way of pronouncing quiescent nūn ن and nūn of nūnation is called اِظْهَار izhār. i.e., There is clarity of the sound of quiescent nūn ن , when the word is pronounced.

To pronounce quiescent nūn ن or nūn of nūnation clearly, voice should be settled very briefly on the nūn and nūn should not be shaken. However, there are some exceptions to the above rule which are as follows:

#### EXCEPTIONS:

قِنْوَانُ qinwānun, سِنْوَانُ sinwānun, بُنْيَانُ bunyānun, دُنْيَا duniyā

Although in these words, quiescent nūn ن is followed by و (wāw) and ي (yā') which are not letters of gullet, yet quiescent nūn ن will be read clearly in these words.

#### EXERCISE

أَنْعَمْتَ	مِنْ عِلْمٍ	إِنْ خِفْتُمْ	ذَكَرِ أَوْ	إِنْ حَسَابُهُمْ	فِي حَدِيثٍ غَيْرِهِ
an'amta	min 'ilmin	in khiftum	dhakar in au	in ḥisābuhum	fi ḥadīthin ghairihī
عَذَابُ الْيَمِّ	أَجْرٌ عَظِيمٌ	قَتَلَ مُؤْمِنًا خَطَاءً	يَنْتَوْنَ عَنْهُ	وَأَنْ أَسَأْتُمْ	لَئِنْ أَخْرَجْتُمْ

مَنْ أَمِنَ مِنْهُمْ - ذَلِكَ مِنْ آيَاتِ - وَلَمَلِئْتُ مِنْهُمْ - مَنْ أَمِنَ وَعَمِلَ - لَهُ مِنْ أَمْرِنَا -  
مَنْ أَعْرَضَ عَنْهُ - فَمَنْ أَظْلَمُ - مِنْ عَذَابِ غُلِيظٍ - فَسَتَعْلَمُونَ مَنْ هُوَ -

**b) Suppression in utterance of quiescent nūn ن and nūn of nūnation**

Besides اِظْهَار (izhār) described above, the other method of pronouncing quiescent ن nūn and nūn of nūnation is called اِخْفَاء (ikhfā') that is suppression of the sound of nūn.

**i. When is nūn pronounced with the method of suppression?**

Exclude the six gullet letters stated above (ع, ه, ء, ح, خ, غ) and the letters in the word يَزْمَلُونَ 'yarmalūna' (م, ن, ر, ل, و, ي) from 28 Arabic letters and consider the following situation with the remaining 16 letters. If the sākin nūn or nūn of nūnation is followed by any of these 16 letters, the nūn will be read with *ikhfā'*.

**ii. What is the method of uttering nūn with ikhfā'?**

To read the quiescence nūn ن and nūn of nūnation with the method of اِخْفَاء ikhfā' (suppression) one should settle the voice on the nūn and prolong it. Thus, the nūn will be read softly and in prolonged voice. This process is called اِخْفَاء ikhfā' or suppression in nūn.

Out of the above mentioned sixteen letters which are pronounced with the method of ikhfā', the letter ب bā' is a special case. Some of the linguists read the nūn with ikhfā' when it is followed by ب bā'. For example they read the word ذَنْبٌ (dhanbun), in which ن nūn is followed by ب bā', as ذَنْبٌ (dhanbun). That is they read without any change in the ن nūn. However, most of the linguists convert the ن nūn when it is followed by ب bā' to م mīm. That is the reason when nūn and nūnation is followed by ب bā', a small mīm م is written over nūn and nūnation.

So the word ذَنْبٌ (dhanbun) is written and read as دَنْبٌ (dhambun). Similarly, شِقَاقٍ بَعِيدٍ shiqāqin ba'id is written as شِقَاقٍ بَعِيدٍ shiqāqim ba'id. When نُن nūn is changed to م mīm the voice on م mīm will be prolonged. In the Holy Qur'ān, if نُن nūn is followed by ب bā', there is always a small م mīm over the nūn.  
e.g. مِنْ بَعْدِ mim ba'di.

### EXERCISE

إِنْ كُنْتُمْ - قَوْمًا صَالِحِينَ - إِنْ كُنْتُمْ قَوْمًا صَالِحِينَ - إِنْ تَعَجَبْ - فَعَجَبٌ قَوْلُهُمْ				
fa'ajabun qauluhum	in ta'jab	in kuntum qauman ṣāliḥīna	qauman ṣāliḥīna	in kuntum
إِنْ تَعَجَبْ فَعَجَبٌ قَوْلُهُمْ - إِذْهَبْ أَنْتَ وَأَخُوكَ - بِأَيَّتِي - وَلَا تَنِيَا فِي ذِكْرِي				
إِذْهَبْ أَنْتَ وَأَخُوكَ بِأَيَّتِي وَلَا تَنِيَا فِي ذِكْرِي - قَدْ خَلَتْ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ - سُنَنٌ فَسِيرُوا				
قَدْ خَلَتْ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ سُنَنٌ فَسِيرُوا - ءَ أَنْذَرْتَهُمْ أَمْ لَمْ تُنذِرْهُمْ لَا يُؤْمِنُونَ				

### PRACTICE OF THE RULES LEARNT UP TILL NOW

While practicing this lesson letters in a word should be continuously uttered with their distinct sound and the following rules should be observed:

- Letters with ḥarkāt (signs) َ , ُ , ِ , should be clear in utterance but short in voice.
- In the case of quiescent letters, shaky and unshaken letters should be observed.
- Letters of prolongation, i.e. ḥurūf-e-madd ا + َ , و + ُ , ي + ِ , and their representatives (Letters with the following signs: ْ , ْ , ْ ) should be equally prolonged in voice.
- Pliable letters, i.e. ḥurūfullin should be stretched softly and with rounding voice as ب + و = بَو "bau" and ب + ي = بَي "bai".
- In quiescent nūn and nūn of nūnation clarity and suppression should be observed.

Practice by reading the following to acquire fluency in recitation:

### EXERCISE

ذَلِكَ أَزْكَى لَكُمْ - ذَلِكَ أَزْكَى لَكُمْ - لِمَ تَقُولُونَ - مَا لَا تَفْعَلُونَ - لِمَ تَقُولُونَ مَا لَا تَفْعَلُونَ
lima taqūlūna mā lā taf'alūna mā lā taf'alūna lima taqūlūna dhālika azkā lakum azkā lakum dhālika
قَدْ أُوتِيتَ - سُؤْلَكَ يَمْوَسَى - قَدْ أُوتِيتَ سُؤْلَكَ يَمْوَسَى - الْيَوْمَ أَكْمَلْتُ لَكُمْ دِينَكُمْ -
وَأَتَمَمْتُ عَلَيْكُمْ نِعْمَتِي - الْيَوْمَ أَكْمَلْتُ لَكُمْ دِينَكُمْ وَأَتَمَمْتُ عَلَيْكُمْ نِعْمَتِي -
فَأَكَلَا مِنْهَا - فَبَدَتْ لَهُمَا سَوْآتُهُمَا - فَأَكَلَا مِنْهَا فَبَدَتْ لَهُمَا سَوْآتُهُمَا - يَغْلَمُ -
مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ - وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ - يَغْلَمُ مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ - لِمَ تَعْبُدُ -
مَا لَا يَسْمَعُ - وَلَا يُبْصِرُ - لِمَ تَعْبُدُ مَا لَا يَسْمَعُ وَلَا يُبْصِرُ - وَإِذَا مَرِضْتُ -
فَهُوَ يَشْفِينِ - وَإِذَا مَرِضْتُ فَهُوَ يَشْفِينِ - إِنْ أَحْسَنْتُمْ - أَحْسَنْتُمْ لِأَنْفُسِكُمْ -
وَإِنْ أَسَأْتُمْ فَلَهَا - إِنْ أَحْسَنْتُمْ أَحْسَنْتُمْ لِأَنْفُسِكُمْ وَإِنْ أَسَأْتُمْ فَلَهَا -
مُهْطِعِينَ - مُقْبِعِي رُءُوسِهِمْ - مُهْطِعِينَ مُقْبِعِي رُءُوسِهِمْ - ءَأَنْذَرْتَهُمْ -
أَمْ لَمْ تُنْذِرْهُمْ - ءَأَنْذَرْتَهُمْ أَمْ لَمْ تُنْذِرْهُمْ - إِذْ هَبْ أَنْتَ - وَأَخُوكَ بِآيَتِي -
وَلَا تَنِيَا فِي ذِكْرِي - إِذْ هَبْ أَنْتَ وَأَخُوكَ بِآيَتِي وَلَا تَنِيَا فِي ذِكْرِي - بَلْعَا مَجْمَع -
بَيْنَهُمَا - نَسِيًا حُوتَهُمَا - بَلْعَا مَجْمَعَ بَيْنَهُمَا نَسِيًا حُوتَهُمَا - مِنْهَا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ -
وَفِيهَا نُعِيدُكُمْ - وَمِنْهَا نُخْرِجُكُمْ - تَارَةً أُخْرَى - مِنْهَا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ وَفِيهَا نُعِيدُكُمْ -
وَمِنْهَا نُخْرِجُكُمْ تَارَةً أُخْرَى - مِنْهَا خَلَقْنَاكُمْ وَفِيهَا نُعِيدُكُمْ - وَمِنْهَا نُخْرِجُكُمْ
تَارَةً أُخْرَى - مَنْ عَفَى لَهُ - مِنْ أَخِيهِ شَيْءٌ - مَنْ عَفَى لَهُ - مَنْ أَخِيهِ شَيْءٌ ۚ -
لَا تُزِغْ قُلُوبَنَا - بَعْدَ إِذْ هَدَيْتَنَا - لَا تُزِغْ قُلُوبَنَا بَعْدَ إِذْ هَدَيْتَنَا - قُلْ ءَأَنْتُمْ أَعْلَمُ -
مَنْ عِنْدَ أَنْفُسِهِمْ - وَآرِنَا مَنَاسِكَنَا - وَتُبْ عَلَيْنَا - وَآرِنَا مَنَاسِكَنَا وَتُبْ عَلَيْنَا -

## SUPERFLUOUS LETTERS AND PHONETIC STYLE OF WORDS

In Arabic calligraphy some letters are occasionally not pronounced. Such letters are called "Superfluous Letters". They do not carry any diacritical sign. They are blank. In such cases a letter preceding the superfluous letter is joined to the following quiescent or tashdīd letter. Superfluous letters often occur between two words, at the ending of the first word and at the beginning of the next word.

In the word فَادُعُ fad'u the letter ا alif after ف fā' is a superfluous letter. The superfluous letter should be ignored and the word should be read as فَدُعُ fad'u. In the word كَالِدِهَانِ kaddihāni the letters ا alif and ل lām after ك kā' are superfluous letters and should be ignored. The word should be read as كَدِهَانِ kaddihāni. In the word عَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ 'amiluṣṣāliḥāti the letters و ا ا ل (wāw, two alifs and lām) are superfluous letters. These should be ignored and the word should be read as عَمِلُصَّالِحَاتِ 'amiluṣṣāliḥāti.

### EXERCISE

فَادُعُ لَنَا كَالِدِهَانِ بِالْآخِرَةِ مَرَضًا لِشَايٍ مِائَةً أَوْ تُؤَا الْكِتَابَ
fad'ulanā kaddi hāni bilākhirati maraḍan lishai-in mi'ata ūtul kitāba
أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ - لِيَعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ - ثُمَّ اسْتَوَى - عَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ - كَمَثَلِ الذِّئْبِ اسْتَوْقَدَ -
هَذَا الْبَلَدِ الْأَمِينِ - وَيُقِيمُوا الصَّلَاةَ - فَاتَّقُوا النَّارَ الَّتِي - وَيُؤْتُوا الزُّكَاةَ - لِبِالْمَرْصَادِ -
وَتَوَاصَوْا بِالصَّبْرِ وَتَوَاصَوْا بِالْمَرْحَمَةِ - أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ اعْبُدُوا رَبَّكُمُ - اتِمُّوا الْحَجَّ وَالْعُمْرَةَ لِلَّهِ -
أَقَامُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَآتَوُا الزُّكَاةَ - فَلْيُؤَدِّ الذِّئْبُ - أَوْثَمِينَ - فَلْيُؤَدِّ الذِّئْبُ أَوْثَمِينَ أَمَانَتَهُ -

*Note:* Like superfluous letters, sometimes, blank tips are also put in Arabic for certain purpose. These are also disregarded while reading the words. Following are some of the examples:

مِثْلُ	نَزَلَ	نَجْوَاهُمْ	هَدَيْنِ	أَتَقِيكُمْ	هَوَاهُ	تَقْوَاهَا
mīkāl	narāka	najwāhum	hadānī	atqākum	hawāhu	taqwāhā

بَلَّيْهَا - فَسَوَّيْنَهُنَّ - ضُهِبَهَا - إِبْتَلَاهُ - طَغَوِيَهَا - قَدْ أَفْلَحَ مَنْ رَكَّبَهَا - وَقَدْ خَابَ مَنْ دَسَّسَهَا -

## PRACTICE OF THE RULES LEARNT PREVIOUSLY

While practicing this lesson, letters in the words should be uttered cautiously with their distinct sound. Letters with short vowels should be pronounced clearly but in short voice. In case of quiescent letters, shaky and unshaken letters should be observed. Letters of prolongation ي + ـ, ا + ـ, و + ـ, ق + ـ, ف + ـ, ي + ـ and their representatives (Letters with the following signs: ـ, ـ, ـ, ـ, ـ, ـ) should be equally prolonged. Pliable letters ي + ـ, ق + ـ should be read softly and with rounding voice so they will take as much time to utter as long vowels.

In nūn and nūnation clarity (to read it in clear and short voice) and suppression (to read it softly, suppressed and long) should be observed. Letters without any mark (ḥarkat) are not read, so join their preceding letters direct to their following quiescent or tashdid bearing letters. Read the tashdid bearing letters firmly. *The voice will take time on letters mīm and nūn bearing tashdid before reading them with their short vowels. To indicate this such letters are underlined in the 'Exercise'.* To acquire fluency in reading, please practice to read a word or words given together without breaking.

*Note:* Reading of the words اللَّهُ allāh, اللَّهُمَّ allāhumma requires special attention. If in these words ل lām is preceded by kasrah, it will be read light as is the case of words: قُلِ اللَّهُمَّ qulillāhumma أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ a‘ūdhubillāh. However, if ل lām in these two words is preceded by fathah or ḍammah, it is read heavy as is the case in these words: عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ ‘alaihullāh, اللَّهُمَّ allāhumma, هُوَ اللَّهُ huwallāhu.



## EXERCISE

اَللّٰهُ	فَسَوِّبُهُنَّ	بَلِ الدَّرَكِ	سَمِعُوْنَ	قُلِ اللّٰهُ	بَلِ اللّٰهِ
allāhu	fasawwāhunna	baliddāraka	sammā'ūna	qulillāhu	ballillāhi
قُلِ اللّٰهُمَّ - عَلَّمْتَنَا - سَخَّرَ الشَّمْسَ - فَاطَّهَّرُوا - أَفَاضَ النَّاسُ - لَنَصَّدَّقَنَّ -					
وَلِىِّ الدِّينِ - يَذْكُرُونَ - يَصُدُّكَ - وَالزَّيْتُونَ - ثُمَّ رَدَدْنَاهُ - يُعْطِيكَ رَبُّكَ -					
فَسَنُيَسِّرُهُ - صُحُفًا مُّطَهَّرَةً - حُبًّا جَمًّا - يَتَيْنِمَا ذَا مَقَرَّةٍ - رَاضِيَةً مُّرْضِيَّةً -					
صَفًّا صَفًّا - فِى يَوْمٍ ذِى مَسْغَبَةٍ - ثُمَّ يُمِيتُكُمْ - ثُمَّ يُحْيِيكُمْ - وَحَدَّهُ اشْمَازُثْ -					
وَإِنَّ لَهُ عِنْدَنَا - لَزُلْفَى وَحُسْنَ مَآبٍ - رَبِّلِ الْقُرْآنِ تَزَيْنًا - يَدَاوُدُ إِنَّا جَعَلْنَاكَ -					
يَدَاوُدُ إِنَّا جَعَلْنَاكَ خَلِيفَةً - يَدَاوُدُ إِنَّا جَعَلْنَاكَ خَلِيفَةً فِى الْأَرْضِ - قَعُوهَا لَهُ سَجْدِينَ -					
لَتَعْلَمَنَّ نَبَاهُ بَعْدَ حِينٍ - كُونُوا رَبَّانِينَ - وَلَقَدْ يَسَّرْنَا الْقُرْآنَ لِلذِّكْرِ -					

## MERGENCE OF A LETTER INTO THE LETTER WHICH FOLLOWS

### 1. MERGENCE OF NŪN OR NŪN OF NŪNATION WITH OTHER LETTERS

Quiescent nūn or nūn of nūnation followed by any of the following six letters is inserted into these letters: **و ن ر ل ي م** This insertion is called in Arabic as **إِذْغَام** idghām and it is of three kinds:

- a) **إِذْغَام نَاقِصٍ** idghām nāqis (Imperfect insertion). Insertion of nūn into **و** wāw and **ي** yā'.
- b) **إِذْغَام تَامٍ** idghām tāmm (Perfect insertion). Insertion of nūn into **ر** rā' and **ل** lām.
- c) insertion of nūn into **م** mīm and **ن** nūn.

- a) اِدْغَام نَاقِصٍ idghām nāqis (Imperfect insertion). Insertion of nūn into و wāw and ي yā'.

Quiescent nūn or nūnation followed by و wāw and ي yā' is inserted into و wāw and ي yā'. Consequently, و wāw and ي yā' become double. The doubled form of these letters is shown by putting ؓ tashdīd on the letters. Thus نَفْسٍ nafsīn followed by وَمَا wamā becomes نَفْسٍ وَمَا nafsīñwwamā. Similarly, مَنْ mann followed by يَقُولُ yaqūlu becomes مَنْ يَقُولُ mañyyaqaūlu. Thus ن nūn is inserted into the following و wāw and ي yā', but its nasal sound is not omitted. It exists and uttered rather long. This is indicated by underlining the words in the exercise. Underline means one has to prolong the voice as nasal sound.

*Note:* Quiescent nūn or nūnation followed by و wāw and ي yā' is inserted in these letters. However, quiescent nūn or nūnation somewhat exists in the form of its nasal sound. That is why it is called imperfect insertion.

### EXERCISE

مِنْ وَ	قِوْ	مِنْ يْ	قِئْ	سِوْ	مِنْ وَلِيْ	مِنْ وَلِيْ وَلَا نَصِيْرٍ
miñww	tiñww	mañyyu	tiñww	siñww	miñwwaliyyin	miñwwaliñyyiñwwa lā naṣīrin
مَنْ يُفْسِدُ فِيْهَا -	أَنْ يُضْرَبُ -	لِقَوْمٍ يُؤْفِكُوْنَ -	وَنَفْسٍ وَمَا سَوَّاهَا -	إِنْ يَدْعُوْنَ		
إِلَّا شَيْطَانًا -	خَيْرٌ مِّنْ صَدَقَةٍ يُتْبَعُهَا -	أُمَّةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ -	لَجَعَلَكُمْ أُمَّةً وَاحِدَةً وَلَكِنْ -			
مُسْتَقَرٌّ وَمَتَاعٌ -	لَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ وَمَتَاعٌ -	مُنَادِيًا يُنَادِي لِلْإِيمَانِ -				
سَمِعْنَا مُنَادِيًا يُنَادِي لِلْإِيمَانِ -						

- b) اِدْغَامٌ تَامٌّ idghām tāmm (Perfect insertion). Insertion of nūn into ر rā' and ل lām.

Quiescent nūn or nūnation when followed by ر (rā') or ل (lām) is inserted into these letters. Consequently, the letters become double and the doubled form is represented by putting tashdīd on these letters. Thus, 'يَكُنْ لَهُ' yakun-lahū becomes 'يَكُلْهُ' yakullahū. Similarly, مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولٌ muḥammadun-rasūl becomes مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولٌ muhammadurrasūl. In writing nūn or nūnation does exist, but in reading it is not pronounced. Therefore, it is called اِدْغَامٌ تَامٌّ idghām tāmm (Perfect insertion).

### EXERCISE

كُنْ لَ	مِرْ طَلِّ	دُرْ	أَنْ لَ	مِنْ رَبِّ	يَكُنْ لَهُنَّ	مِنْ لَدُنْكَ
kulla	mirra	ṭalli	durra	'alla	mirrabbin	yakullahunna
مِنْ لَدُنْكَ	مِنْ رَبِّ	يَكُنْ لَهُنَّ	مِنْ لَدُنْكَ	مِنْ رَبِّ	يَكُنْ لَهُنَّ	مِنْ لَدُنْكَ
مِنْ رَبِّ	يَكُنْ لَهُنَّ	مِنْ لَدُنْكَ	مِنْ رَبِّ	يَكُنْ لَهُنَّ	مِنْ لَدُنْكَ	مِنْ رَبِّ

- c) Insertion of nūn into the following: م mīm and ن nūn.

Quiescent nūn or nūnation followed by م mīm and ن nūn is inserted into letters following these letters. Consequently, the following letter becomes double and the doubled form gets a ّ tashdīd. Thus, مَنْ نَكَثَ man nakatha becomes مَنْ نَكَثَ mannakatha and نَصْرُ مِنَ اللَّهِ naṣrun minallāhi becomes نَصْرُ مِنَ اللَّهِ naṣrummi nallāhi. After insertion of ن nūn and ّ nūnation they exist in writing, but in reading they are ignored and the letter following these letters is read with ّ tashdīd.

In reading nūn and mīm bearing tashdīd, voice is settled on them and prolonged. To indicate this the words have been underlined.

## EXERCISE

مِنْ نُورِكُمْ	أَنْظُرُونَا نَقْتَبِسْ مِنْ نُورِكُمْ	أَلَمْ نَكُنْ مَعَكُمْ
minnūrikum	unzurūnā naqtabis minnūrikum	alam nakumma'akum
يُنَادُونَهُمْ أَلَمْ نَكُنْ مَعَكُمْ - وَإِنَّهُمْ لَفِي شَكٍّ مِنْهُ - لَوْ يُطِيعُكُمْ فِي كَثِيرٍ مِنَ الْأَمْرِ -		
عَنْ مَنْ تَوَلَّى - فَأَعْرِضْ عَنْ مَنْ تَوَلَّى عَنْ ذِكْرِنَا - لَئِنْ نَصْرُوهُمْ -		
لَئِنْ نَصْرُوهُمْ لَيُولَيَنَّ الْأَذْبَارُ - مَغْفِرَةً مِنَ اللَّهِ - مَغْفِرَةً مِنَ اللَّهِ وَرِضْوَانٌ -		

## 2. MERGENCE OF TWO IDENTICAL LETTERS

There are three situations:

- A quiescent letter followed by any homogeneous (Consonants)
- A quiescent letter followed by any harmonious (Consonants)
- A letter of same root by utterance occurring after the quiescent one.

### a) A quiescent letter followed by any homogeneous (Consonants)

A homogeneous letter occurring after a quiescent letter: يُوجِّهُهُ yuwajjih-hu after mergence will become يُوجِّهُهُ yuwajjihhu . Similarly, أَوْوَا وَنَصْرُو āawau-wa-naṣarū will become أَوْوُوا نَصْرُو āawawwa naṣarū.

### b) A quiescent letter followed by any harmonious (Consonants)

A harmonious letter occurring after a quiescent letter: نَخْلُقُكُمْ nakhlūq-kum will become نَخْلُقُكُمْ nakhlukkum. Similarly, فَرَطْتُمْ farrat-tum will become فَرَطْتُمْ farrattum.

### c) A letter of same root by utterance is inserted into its following letter.

A letter of same root by utterance occurring after the quiescent one: قَدْ تَبَيَّنَ qad tabayyana

will become after merger قَدَتَّبَيْنَ qattabayyana. Similarly, اِرْكَبْ مَعَنَا irkab ma'anā after mergence will become اِرْكَبْ مَعَنَا irkamma'anā .

*Note:* In the exercise below, before س , if there is a letter with • sukūn, the letter is omitted in reading (*Idgham*). The letter that occurs before sukūn is then combined with shadda. .

### EXERCISE

حَطَّطْتُ	وَدْتُ	مَنْ نَ	قَدْتُ	إِنْ مَ	وَوُ	قُلْ رَ	كَبْ مَ
ḥattu	wattu	manna	qatta	'imma	wawwu	qurra	kamma
لَهُمْ مَشُوقٌ فِيهِ -	إِنْ تُظُنْ -	أَرَدْتُمْ -	أَحَطْتُ -	رَاوَدْتُهُ -	هَلْ لَنَا -	إِذْظَلَمُوا -	
مَنْ نُكِّتَ -	قَدَتَّبَيْنَ الرُّشْدَ -	عَفَوَا وَقَالُوا -	تَسْتَطِيعُ عَلَيْهِ -	إِنْ مَسَّهُ الشَّرُّ -			
أَوْوُوا نَصَرُوا -	عَنْ مَوَا ضِعِهِ -	يَا بَنِي اِرْكَبْ مَعَنَا -	قُلْ رَبِّ زِدْنِي عِلْمًا -				
مِمَّنْ مَعَكَ -	أُمَمٍ مِمَّنْ مَعَكَ -	قُلْ رَبِّ اِرْكَبْ مَعَنَا -	قُلْ رَبِّ اِرْكَبْ مَعَنَا -				

### BLANK LETTERS

A letter without any *i'rāb* (sign) is called a blank letter, and is always silent. However, when an *alif* without an *i'rāb* follows a letter with *fāṭḥah*, the alif is not silent but is pronounced (with certain exceptions given below).

فَادَ بَالُ شَائِ جَائِ مُوَا

*mū - jī - shai - bill - fadd*

EXCEPTIONS:

بَا كَا لَا نَا

*nā - lā - kā - bā*

## A BLANK BEND

A blank bend in a word is also silent. It is so, when there is no sign or dot over it. e.g.

نَرَاكَ أَرَبِنِي مِيكَالَ بِأَيْدٍ *narāka arānī mīkāla bi-aidin*

However, there is only one exception in whole of the Holy Qur'ān where a blank bend is after a letter with a vertical *kasrah* below it. Here, the sound of the vertical *kasrah* is modified and is read as *majray-hā*, instead of *majrī-ha*: مَجْرِبَهَا. Please see page # 170 for explanation.

### Exceptions when a blank *alif* after a *fathah* remains silent

1. If a blank *alif* is in between a letter with *fathah* and a letter with *sukūn*.

فَازَ وَالْ لَافَ فَانَ *fann laff wall fadd*

2. Blank *alif* is between a letter with *fathah* and a letter with *shadda*:

وَالْ نَالَسُ هَا النَّ نَالِرِ وَالَّذِينَ

*walladhīna - narri - hanna - nassu - walla*

3. Nūn Quṭnī (a small nūn below blank *alif* and having a *kasrah*) is present after the blank *alif*:

خَيْرًا الْوَصِيَّةِ - شَيْئًا اتَّخَذَ

*shai-'a nittakhadha - khaira nil waṣiyyati*

4. Blank *alif* has either a small circle or a cross over it; this type of *alif* is known as *alif zā'idah* e.g.:

أَفَائِنُ مَاتَ - مَلَأْتُهُ

*mala'ihī - afa'immāta*

## USE OF SHADDA

The sign ـ is called **تَشْدِيد** tashdīd and the letter bearing tashdīd is called **مُشَدَّد** mushaddad. Tashdīd means fastening or strengthening. The sign ـ over a letter denotes that the letter is doubled. A letter with tashdīd contains a quiescent and a vowel-bearing letter. For example **رَبُّ** rabbun is in fact **رَبُّ** rab-bun.

So to pronounce a letter with tashdīd, first the voice will be settled on it then it will be read with its short vowel. Consequently the letter will be strengthened and will be pronounced firmly.

In the case of letters nūn and mīm (ن) bearing tashdīd (نّ) while setting the voice on them it will take a little more time, in other words the voice will be prolonged on them before reading them with their short vowel. In the exercise, ن nūn and م mīm with tashdīd are underlined indicating that the voice should be prolonged on these letters.

A letter with *shadda* always joins forcefully to a letter with i‘rāb/sign before it and the letter with *shadda* gives its sound twice:

أَبْ + أَبْ = أَبْبُ ، ظِلْ + لٍ = زِلْلٍ ، رَبْ + بٌ = رَبْبُ

*rab + bu = rabbu , zil+ li = zilli , ab + ba = abba*

If a nūn (ن) or tanwīn joins with wāw having *shadda* (وّ) or a yā’ having *shadda* (يّ), (i.e. with vowels) they will produce half the sound of nūn (i.e. a nasal sound) on joining:

<i>mi(n)wwa</i>	مِنْ وَّ	<i>ma(n)yyu</i>	مَا يّ
	<i>miñwwa</i>		<i>mañyyu</i>

## EXERCISE

شَبَّ	شَبِّ	دِبِّ	دُبِّ	دَبِّ	سُبِّ	سَبِّ
shabba	shabbi	dibbi	dubbu	dabba	subbu	sabba
قُوْ	اِنَّ	جَسْ	ذَمِّ	اِئْ	اِئْ	اَوْ
يَمْ	حَقِّ	كَمِّ	طَلْ	مِنْ	جَرْ	هِنْ
صِرْ	صَوِّ	كُوْ	حِئْ	مِمْ	هِنْ	سَيِّ
حِئْ	تَلِّ	كُوْ	صُمِّ	وِئْ	طَلْ	دُوْ

*Note:* If a letter with tashdid occurs in the middle of a word, to read the word in an Arabic accent, one should read its quiescent part with the preceding and its short vowel with the following letter. So عَلَّمَ 'allama should be read as عَلَ لَمَّا 'al lama without pausing between 'al and lama.

عَلَّمَ	لَعَلَّ	فَصَلِّ	اِنَّمَا	سُعِرَتْ	مِمَّا	رَبَّنَا
'allama	la'alla	faṣalli	innamā	su'irat	mimmā	rabbānā
اِنَّا - تَكُوْنُ - اَلْمُرْمِلُ - لُجِي - دَرِي - اِطْهَر - وَ لَاغُوِيْلَهُمْ - مُبَيِّنَات - يَتَخَيَّرُوْنَ - اِنَّ لَهُمْ						
جَنَّتْ - فَلَنُحْيِيَنَّهُ - يَتَخَبَّطُ - اِلْمَجْحَم - اَلْمُصَدِّقِيْنَ - اَلْمُصَدِّقَاتِ - اَلْمُطَوِّعِيْنَ - اَجَلُهُنَّ -						
اَشْهُرُ مَعْلُوْمَتٍ - فَلَا تَعْضُلُوْهُنَّ - بِسُوْرَةٍ مِّنْ مِّثْلِهِ - فَفِدْيَةٌ مِّنْ صِيَامٍ -						

## MORE THAN ONE SHADDA

When more than one *shadda* are involved, many letters are joined together forcefully, causing a combination of two, three, four, five or six letters:

i. Two letters: اِنَّ كُلَّ اِلَّ صَوِّ نَزَلَ حُجَّةً رَبِّهِمْ

*rabbihim - hujjatun - nuzzila - sawwi - illa - kulla - inna*

ii. Three letters: عَلَّمْنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا وَحَدَّهُ اَشْمَارُتْ



*wahdahush mazzat - 'allamtanā fiddunyā*

iii. Four letters: قَالُوا الطُّيُونَا - إِنَّ السَّمْعَ - أَمِيُونُ

*ummiyyūna - innassam'a - qāluttayyarnā*

iv. Five letters: دُرِّيُّ يُوْقَدُ *durriyyuñyyūqadu*

v. Six letters: فِي بَحْرِ لُجِّي يَغْشُهُ - أَتَحَاجُّونِي

*atuhā-ajjū-annī - fi bahrillujjiñyyiñyyagh shā-hu*

## RULES FOR LETTERS WITH SUKŪN BEFORE LETTERS WITH SHADDA

i. A letter with *jazm* before a letter with *shadda* becomes silent. This is known as اِذْغَامٌ 'idghām.

قَدْتُ = قَتُّ قَدْتُبَيْنَ الرُّشْدُ

*qatta bayya narrushdu - qad-tta = qatta*

ii. A letter with *jazm* before a letter with *shadda* is a nūn or is a *tanwīn* while the letter with *shadd* is either *wāw* or *yā* (i.e. vowel), then the nūn with *sukūn* or the *tanwīn* does not become silent but rather produces the nasal sound of nūn.

مَنْ يُّهَاجِرُ - شَرُّ اِيْرَهْ - فِرَاشَاوُ السَّمَاءِ

*firāshañwwassamā'a - sharrañyyarah - mañyyuhājiru*

iii. If the letter with *shadd* has a vertical *fathah*, a vertical *kasrah* or an inverted *damma*, the effect of prolongation of sound will also be considered:

مِنَ الظَّالِمِينَ - نَبِيْن - اَللّٰهُ - يُحَادُّونَ اللّٰهَ - تَأْمُرُوْنِي

*ta'murū-annī yuhā-addūnallāh allāhu nabiyyīna minazzālimīna*

# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

وَقُرْآنَ الْفَجْرِ ۝ إِنَّ قُرْآنَ الْفَجْرِ كَانَ  
مَشْهُودًا ۝

*wa qur'ān al fajr inna qur'ān al fajri kāna mash-hūdā*

And recitation *of the Qur'ān in Prayer* at dawn. Verily, the  
recitation of the *Qur'ān* at dawn is *especially* acceptable  
to God. (17:79)

# RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

## CORRECTION OF SOME COMMON MISTAKES

Every Muslim who wishes to recite the Holy Qur'ān, must take care of rules of Arabic Grammar. If you follow the instructions in the following pages, you will be able to recite the Holy Qur'ān correctly, both in normal as well as rhymic mode.

In the forthcoming pages, we will learn **إِعْرَاب** (i'rāb), or 'Sound-letters' of Arabic like

ـِ (ḍammah/paish), ـَ (fatḥah/zabbar), ـِ (kasrah/zair) a ْ (sukūn/jazm). We will also learn about ~ (madd), ء (hamzah) and various positions effecting و (wāw), ا (alif), and ي (yā').

### PART 1

1. Please note one must distinguish properly the sounds of و (wāw) and ـِ (paish/ḍammah). A و (wāw) is an extended pronouncement of ـِ (paish). Similarly, a ـِ (paish) is half the phonetic sound of a و (wāw).

The following is correct and wrong usage of a (paish): ـِ

WRONG: اَلْحَمْدُو (al-ḥamdū) – CORRECT: اَلْحَمْدُ (al-ḥamdu)

2. A ـِ (kasrah) is half the phonetic of a ي (yā'). Or ي (yā') is double in phonetic expression of a ـِ (kasrah). It will be wrong to read اِلِلّٰهِي (lillāhi) as اِلِلّٰهَي (lillāhay).

3. Same is the case with ا (alif) and َ (fathah). An ا (alif) is double the pronouncement of a َ (fathah), whereas a َ (fathah) is half in phonetic sound of an ا (alif).

**MANY A RECITERS OF THE HOLY QUR'AN MAKE MISTAKES IN RECITING THESE WORDS. SO PLEASE LEARN THIS PART VERY CAREFULLY:**

CORRECT	WRONG
an'amta 'alaihim أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ	an'amtā 'alaihim أَنْعَمْنَا عَلَيْهِمْ
ṣirāṭalladhīna صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ	ṣirāṭalladhīna صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ
razaqnāhum رَزَقْنَاهُمْ	razaqnāhum رَزَقْنَاهُمْ
إِنَّا لِلَّهِ وَإِنَّا إِلَيْهِ رَاجِعُونَ innā lillāhi wa innā ilaihi rāj'ūn	إِنَّ لِلَّهِ وَإِنَّ إِلَيْهِ رَاجِعُونَ inna lillāhi wa inna ilaihi rāj'ūn

4. Please Do NOT fail to distinguish between ء (hamzah) and an ا (alif). ا (alif) as mentioned earlier is double in phonetic of a َ (fathah).

BUT when an ا (alif) is written with an اِعْرَابَ (i'rāb) as اُ , اِ , اِ , or has a sukūn اِ, then it will no longer be considered as an ا (alif) but will be known as ء

(hamzah). However, in some cases a ء (hamzah) is called an ا (alif) as in the case of the abbreviated word اَلَمْ we read it as 'alif lām mīm'.

5. LONGER PHONETICS OF ُ , ِ , ٍ

When ُ (ḍammah/paish) is before و (wāw) or

ـَ (fathah) is before an ا (alif) or

ـِ (kasrah) is before a ي (yā')

then the letters و (wāw), ا (alif), and ي (yā') acquire a longer or extended phonetic sound. At these three occasions, the vowels are further extended in sound and this expanded sound is known as ~ (madd).

If this ء (hamzah) is within the sentence itself, it is written in the Holy Qur'ān with a

THICK 'madd' as ~

#### EXAMPLES:

أُولَئِكَ عَلَىٰ هُدًى مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ *ulā'ika 'alā hudammirrabbiḥim*  
لِيَغْفِرَ لِي خَطِيئَتِي يَوْمَ الدِّينِ *li-yaghfiralī khaṭī'atī yaumaddīni*

But if ء (hamzah) is the first letter of the next word, it is written in the Holy

Qur'ān with a LIGHT 'madd' as ~

قُورَآ أَنفُسَكُم وَأَهْلِيكُمْ نَارًا *qū anfusakum wa ahlīkum nāran*  
وَمَا أُنزِلَ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ ء *wamā unzila min qablik*

YOUNG QARĪS AND OTHER RECITERS OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN SHOULD KEEP IN MIND THAT:

The following are the three positions where ~ (madd) is created and they have to prolong the voice:

- 1) When there is a ء (hamzah) after ا, آ, اِى

Examples shown above are applicable here.

2) When after the vowels of اُ, آ, or اِ

a) A شَدّ (shadd - meaning double letter) appears.

EXAMPLES:

غَيْرَ مُضَارٍّ - لَمْ يَطْمِثْنَهُنَّ إِنْسٌ قَبْلَهُمْ وَلَا جَانٌّ 0

*lam yatmith hunna insun qablahum wala jā-an - ghaira mudā arrin*

or b) A ْ (sukūn or silent word) appears as in

الآنَ وَقَدْ عَصَيْتَ قَبْلُ ْ

الآنَ (āl-āna) in original form was أْ الآنَ (ā al-āna). It went through several changes of Arabic Grammar. Details are being skipped here.

Please note that rule 2 is applicable when the letter ا (alif) is active and requires a sound of its own. In Arabic, sometimes, an ا (alif) is inactive and 'silent' and does not have a sound. In such cases a ~ (madd) will NOT take place.

EXAMPLES:

وَمَالَهُ بِغَافِلٍ - وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ 0

*wa laddā allin - wa mallāhu bi ghāfilin*

In the above cases ا (alif) is silent and the preceding letter has been merged with the next active letter by creating شَدّ (shadd: a double-word sign).

3) A ~ (*madd*) will also function after the vowels اِئْ آ أُؤ , when the end letter of a word is active but due to choice available, one wishes to opt for a 'Pause', and does not wish to combine the end of one verse with the beginning of the next.

In the verses and examples below, the letters underlined offer the option of either to merge with the next verse or to opt for a pause.

أَلْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ۝ الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝ مَلِكِ يَوْمِ الدِّينِ ۝

In case of opting for a 'pause' the end letter would sound like a ◦ / ʾ (sukūn) and therefore sound will be prolonged, by creating a ~ (*madd*) in sound. Therefore, in case of the above verses, letters مِينَ (mīn), حِيمِ (hīm) and دِينَ (dīn) will be read with ~ (*madd*).

The only difference is that in writing ~ (*madd*) is NOT written in the Holy Qur'ān, as in the case of not opting for a 'pause', the continuation is permissible.

## PART 2

In this part, we will discuss the Arabic alphabet ء (hamzah).

If ء (hamzah) is the first letter of a word, this will carry a sound i.e. it will be in an active position.

If a ء (hamzah) falls between two other letters, then this will be treated as 'silent' or ساكن (sākin), as if it does not exist as far as its sound is concerned.

Here are described various positions of a ء (hamzah).

**Column 1:** Shows the sentences in their original and individual format of writing i.e. when you do not read these words by joining them together.

**Column 2:** Shows the words in their written format. Here one is required to read them as a whole sentence and not in their individual format.

**Column 3:** Shows the correct pronunciation of words and the sentence.

The sentences are numbered and at the end their translation is given:

COLUMN 3	COLUMN 2	COLUMN 1	
أَمَرْتُهُ أَنْ مُتَحِنْ amartuhū animtaḥin	أَمَرْتُهُ أَنْ أَمْتَحِنْ amartuhū animtaḥin	أَمَرْتُهُ أَنْ إِمْتَحِنْ amartuhū an imtaḥin	1
عِنْدَ مُتِحَانٍ 'indamtiḥānin	عِنْدَ أَمْتِحَانٍ 'indamtiḥānin	عِنْدَ إِمْتِحَانٍ 'inda imtiḥānin	2
إِلَى لُقَمَرٍ ilalqamari	إِلَى أَلْقَمَرٍ ilalqamari	إِلَى أَلْقَمَرٍ ila alqamari	3
مِنْ لَا هِ minallāhi	مِنْ أَلَلِه minallāhi	مِنْ أَلَلِه min allāhi	4

#### TRANSLATION:

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I bade him to give a test. | 2. At the occasion of a test. |
| 3. Towards the moon.          | 4. From Allāh.                |

A ء hamzah will be considered active and will not be dropped from speech, when a gender will be in the format of اِفْعَال (if'āl) or any of the changed positions according to changes in tenses or places.

#### EXAMPLES:

مِنْ الْإِكْرَامِ مِنْ الْإِكْرَامِ مِنْ لَإِكْرَامِ  
إِهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ إِهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ إِهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ



On the contrary the sound over a ء (hamzah) will drop, if the hamzah happens to be between two letters. For example in اَللّٰهُمَّ اِهْدِ قَوْمِي it will be wrong to say here

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِهْدِ قَوْمِي (allāhumma ihdi qaumī). Correct is اَللّٰهُمَّ اهْدِ قَوْمِي (allāhummahdi qaumī)

## PART 3

Here are some additional rules for the recitation of the Holy Qur'ān.

1. You will observe that some letters in the Holy Qur'ān are without any اِعْرَاب (i'rāb), i.e. without any اَ , اِ , اِ. These letters are used in writing but are silent for the purpose of speech. Out of these ا (alif) is always silent. As it is in مَائَةٌ (mi'ata) Some other letters are also silent as و (wāw) in صَلَوة (ṣalā), زَكَاة (zakā), and اُولٰٓئِكَ (ulā'ika). The ي (yā') is silent in the following:

اِنْتَايِ ذِي الْقُرْبَىٰ *īta'ī dhil qurbā*

2. ت (tā') in Arabic is written in two ways: as ت and as ة When ة (tā') is the last letter of a word, and one wishes to 'pause' at the end in reading, then ة (tā') remains no more a ة (tā'), but is considered a ه (hā').

### EXAMPLES:

As تَقَاة (toqāh) in اِنْ تَتَّقُوا مِنْهُمْ تُقَاة

As صَلَوة (ṣalāh) in قَدْ قَامَتِ الصَّلَاةُ

3. In Arabic, there is a sign known as **تنوين** (tanwīn). This is written as **ـِ**, **ـَ**, or **ـُ**, that is two **ـِ** (ḍammah), or two **ـَ** (faṭḥah), or two **ـُ** (kasrah). If a **شَدَّ** (*shadd*) falls after a letter having a **تنوين** (tanvīn), then instead of two **ـِ**, **ـَ**, or **ـُ** only one **ـِ**, **ـَ**, or **ـُ** should be read as in

غَفُورٌ رَّحِيمٌ

*ghafūrraḥīm*

مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ

*Muḥammadurrasū lullāh*

However, if the **شَدَّ** (*shadd*) is either on a **و** (wāw) or on a **ي** (yā') i.e., on vowels, we should pronounce it with a **ن** (nūn ghunna).

#### EXAMPLES:

ذَكَرُوا أَنْتَى

*dhakariñwwa unthā*

خَيْرًا يَرَهُ (pronounced yarah, if at an end).

*khairañyyarah*

4. If a **شَدَّ** (double letter) falls after a **ساكن** (silent) letter, the silent letter will be dropped in speech and the preceding active letter will be combined with that **شَدَّ** (double) letter.

#### EXAMPLES:

SILENT LETTER TO BE DROPPED	WORDS WITH SILENT LETTER
د	قَدْ تَبَيَّنَ الرُّشْدُ qattabayya narrushdu
د	وَلَوْ تَوَاعَدْتُمْ walau tawā'attum
ط	أَحْطُتْ aḥattu
و	أَوْوَا وَنَصَرُوا āwawwa naṣarū

5. If the **شَدِّ** (shadd) happens to be on vowels, on **و** (wāw) or on **ي** (yā') and a **نون ساكن** (nūn sākin) precedes these letters then the sound of **نون غنة** (nūn ghunnah) will be required and NOT that of **ن** (nūn) itself.

#### EXAMPLES:

لَنْ يُجْعَلَ اللَّهُ - مِنْ وَجِدِ كُمْ

*miñwwujdikum*

*lañyyaj'alallāhu*

6. One might sometimes come across in the Holy Qur'ān with a separate but small **ن** (called Nūn Quṭnī) before certain words. Actually this is a **ن** of **تنوين** (Nūn of Tanwīn) **ن**. If there is an **أ** (alif) before this **ن** (nūn) then the **أ** (alif) will be treated as silent and non-existing. As a matter of fact it will be wrong thing to prolong this **أ** (alif) in speech.

#### EXAMPLES:

خَيْرًا الْوَصِيَّةُ - شَيْئًا اتَّخَذَ

You cannot say: **خَيْرًا** (khairā) or **شَيْئًا** (shai-an).

This situation will change when you 'pause' over a word preceded by a **ن** (nūn quṭnī). In this case *nūn quṭnī* will have to be considered as non-existent. So **عَرَضًا ۚ الَّذِينَ** (arḍā nilladhīna) will be read (if one does not stop) as **عَرَضِلَّذِينَ** (arḍā nilladhīna) and **خَبِيرًا ۚ الَّذِينَ** (khabīrā nilladhī) will be read as **خَبِيرِلَّذِينَ** (khabīra nilladhī). However, if stopped these will be read as **عَرَضًا ۚ الَّذِينَ** (arḍā alladhīna) and **خَبِيرًا ۚ الَّذِينَ** (khabīra alladhī).

## PART 4

In this part we will briefly go through various formats of وقف (pause). The readers of the Holy Qur'ān are supposed to be familiar with the رموز قرآن (signs of the Qur'ān). One of the signs is 'Pause'. This sign can be of 4 types.

- i. 0 (sign of end of verse)
- ii. م (sign of compulsory pause)
- iii. ج (sign of optional pause)
- iv. ط (sign of necessary pause)

- a) In case of pause, any إعراب (i'rāb) over the last letter such as ُ, َ, ِ and ِْ will be considered as non-existent phonetically, and it will be considered as silent.

In the case, the preceding letter is already silent and inactive, then there will be no change involved. The following are various examples of 'pause'.

rusul	رُسُلْ	رُسُلِ 0	wālidatik	وَالِدَتِكَ	وَالِدَتِكَ م
fih	فِيهِ	فِيهِ ط	lahab	لَهَبْ	لَهَبْ 0
ṣādiqīn	صِدِّيقِينَ	صِدِّيقِينَ 0	hū	هُوَ	هُوَ ط
shai	شَيْئِ	شَيْئِ ط	dalwah	دَلْوَةٍ	دَلْوَةٍ ط
fanasī	فَنَسِي	فَنَسِي 0	jānn	جَانْ	جَانْ 0
quwwah	قُوَّة	قُوَّة ط	ghairih	غَيْرِهِ	غَيْرِهِ 0

A ة (tā') is changed into a ه (hā') in case of a pause.

- b) In case of 'pause' if the end-letter is an ا (alif) and is preceded by َ (two fathah) the َ (two fathah) will be considered as one fathah and ا (allif) will be pronounced. But if the end-letter ا (alif) is preceded by a 'fathah' no change will take place.

#### EXAMPLES:

raqībā رَقِيبًا	رَقِيبًا	nisā-'ā نِسَاءًا	نِسَاءًا
nidā-'ā نِدَاءًا	نِدَاءًا	juz-'ā جُزْءًا	جُزْءًا

- c) In case of pause, a silent ي (yā') will change into an ا (alif) if it is preceded by a َ (double fathah).

#### EXAMPLES:

duḥā ضَحَا = ضَحَّى muṣallā مُصَلَّأ = مُصَلَّى

- d) In the Holy Qur'ān (Chapter *Al-Dahr*) there is a verse that reads as قَوَّا رِيزًا ٥

This sentence is unchangeable. In case of 'pause' the end-alif will be considered as active, i.e. we will read 'Kawarīrā' and not 'Kawarīr'.

Similarly, in case of pause on second verse of Chapter *Al-Nisā'*, نِسَاءًا we will read

(nisā'ā) نِسَاءًا and not (nisā') نِسَاءَ

- e) In case of a 'pause' at the end of a verse, if we find the first letter of the next verse is

either an 'alif-lām' or a 'nūn quṭnī' then we will read a fathah over the ا (alif) and consider 'nūn quṭnī' along with its 'kasrah' as non-existent.

#### EXAMPLES:

عَرَضَا ۙ الَّذِينَ will be read as عَرَضَا ۙ الَّذِينَ (*arda alladhīna*)

- f) In case of a 'pause', if we find that the first letter in the next verse is an 'alif' followed by a silent letter then we will look at the 3rd letter. If it has a ى (ḍammah), we will read the first letter as 'alif' with a ى (ḍammah). But if the third letter has a َ (fathah) or ِ (kasrah) or a ن (nūn quṭnī) then we will treat the 'alif' or 'nūn quṭnī' along with its kasrah as non-existent.

Examples show two positions of a verse i.e., with pause and without a pause.

VERSE	NO PAUSE	PAUSE
أَخِي ۙ أَشْدُدْ	أَخِشْدُدْ akhishdud	أَخِي ۙ أَشْدُدْ akhī ushdud
الْمُطَمِّنَّةُ ۙ إِزْجِعِي	مُطْمِئِنَّتَرْجِعِي muṭma'innaturji'ī	مُطَمِّنَّةُ ۙ إِزْجِعِي muṭma'innah irji'ī

## PART 5 (OTHER MATTERS)

A nūn will be pronounced as م (mīm) and a small mīm is written over the letter, when a ب (bā') is preceded by either a ن (nūn with sukūn) or a نون تنوين (nūn with a tanwīn). Any other active nūn prior to silent or 'munawwan nūn' will not be affected.

## EXAMPLES:

يَنْبُوءًا - نَفْسٌ بِمَا - خَبِيرًا بِصِيرًا - رَجَعُ بَعِيدُ

*raj'um ba'id khabīram baṣīran nafsum bimā yambū'an*

3. The following is the pronunciation of some of the abbreviated letters:

(الْر) أَلِفْ لَامَ رَا (الْم) أَلِفْ لَامَ مِمْ

*alif lām mīm*

*alif lām rā*

4. Part 3 (Chapter 3) 'Āl-Imrān' has a verse as:

الْم ۝ اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ

If we opt for a 'pause' over the 'mīm', then the ا (alif) of الله will carry a َ (fathah).

So the reading will be, in case of a 'pause': أَلِفْ لَامَ مِمْ اللَّهُ In case of continuation we will read

أَلِفْ لَامَ مِمْ اللَّهُ

5. An ا (alif) in Qur'ān is sometimes treated as non-existent and silent. This is indicated by a sign of 'x' or ۞. In modern Arabic this is dropped from writing. But in Qur'ān the system has been preserved.

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ <i>la ilallāhi</i>	أَفَايْنِ مَاتَ <i>afa 'immāta</i>
لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا الْجَحِيمِ <i>la ilal jahīmi</i>	سَلْسِلًا <i>slāsila</i>
أَنْ تَبُوءَ <i>an tabū'a</i>	قَوَارِيرًا مِنْ فِضَّةٍ <i>qawārīra min fiḍḍatin</i>

# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

إِنَّهٗ لَقَوْلٌ فَصْلٌ ۚ

*innahū laqaulun faṣl*

It is surely a decisive word. (56:14)



# BASIC ARABIC LESSONS

## GRAMMAR

### The Types of Speech

**كلمه** (*Kalimah*) A single word which conveys some meaning. The **كلمه** *Kalimah* is of five types:

**اسم** (*Ism*; Noun) Name of a thing; it is independent in its meaning, e.g. **رَجُلٌ** (*rajulun*) Man, **نيويورك** (*New York*).

**فعل** (*Fi'l*; Verb) It is a word which explains an action done in present, past or future, e.g. **فَعَلَ** (*fā'ala*) He did.

**حرف** (*Harf*, plural: *Hurūf*, Particles) There are four kinds of particles: **حُرُوفُ** *al-jar* (*Hurūful Jarr*, The Preposition) A word without meaning but becomes meaningful when used in combination with a noun or a verb, e.g. **إِلَى** (*ilā*) on **عَلَى** (*'alā*); **حُرُوفُ الظَّرْفِ** (*Hurūfuz Zarf*, The Adverbs); **حُرُوفُ** *al-'atf* (*Hurūful 'Atf*, Conjunction) and **حُرُوفُ النِّدَاءِ** (*Hurūfun Nidā'* Interjections)

**ضمير** (*Damīr*, Pronoun) A word which is used in place of a noun is called **ضمير** (*damīr*), e.g. **هُوَ** (*howa*) He, **هِيَ** (*hiya*) She.

**صفت** (*Shift*, Adjective) A word that defines or qualifies a noun, e.g. **رَجُلٌ كَرِيمٌ** (*rajulun karīmun*) Noble man.

## BASIC LETTERS OF THE ROOT OF A WORD

In Arabic, the basic three letters of the root of a word are known as (fā', 'ain, lām) ف ' ع ' ل .  
For example, the word نَصَرَ (naṣara) corresponds to the word (fa'ala) فَعَلَ -

Since ن (nūn) in (naṣara) نَصَرَ corresponds to (fā') فَاء and ص (ṣād) corresponds to ('ain ع and ر (rā') corresponds to (lām) ل , therefore, (nūn) ن is called (f ā' kalimah) فَاء كَلِمَة , (ṣād) ص is called ('ain kalimah) عَيْن كَلِمَة , and (rā') ر is called (lām kalimah) لَام كَلِمَة .  
Likewise all other verbs are scaled on (fa'ala) فَعَلَ .

### EXERCISE

1. In عَلِمَ ('alima) what is the sign on (fā' kalimah) فَاء كَلِمَة
2. In عَلِمَ ('alima) which is the ('ain kalimah) عَيْن كَلِمَة
3. In كَرَّمَ (karuma) what is the sign on (lām kalimah) لَام كَلِمَة
4. In نَصَرْتُنَّ (naṣartunna) which is the (lām kalimah) لَام كَلِمَة
5. In فَتَحْتُ (fataḥtu) which is the (fā' kalimah) فَاء كَلِمَة
6. In فَتَحْتَ (fataḥti) what is the status of the first (tā') تَاء and the second (tā') تَاء
7. In حَسِبْتُمْ (ḥasibtum) which is the (lām kalimah) لَام كَلِمَة
8. In ضَرَبْنَا (ḍarabna) what is the (bā' kalimah) بَاء كَلِمَة
9. In خَتَمَ (khatama) what is the (tā' kalimah) تَاء كَلِمَة
10. In تَرَكْتُ (tarakat) what is the status of the first (tā') تَاء and the second (tā') تَاء

### ANSWERS:

1. Fathah 2. lām 3. fathah 4. rā' 5. fā' 6. The first tā' is 'ain kalimah and the second tā' denotes *mu'annath* (female) *wāḥid ḥādīr* 7. bā' 8. lām 9. 'ain 10. The first tā' is fā' kalimah and the second tā' denotes *mu'annath* (female) *wāḥid ghā'ib*.

## SOME QUR'ĀNIC WORDS

### إِسْم (ISM; NOUN)

اللَّهُ - مُحَمَّدٌ - رَسُولٌ - قَوْمٌ - عَيْنٌ - قَرْيَةٌ - نَهْرٌ - مُحْسِنٌ - إِمَامٌ - حِجَارَةٌ - صَبْرٌ -  
 مُسْلِمٌ - صَلَوةٌ - أُمَّةٌ - ثَمَرَةٌ - ثَمَرَاتٌ - قُرْآنٌ - كِتَابٌ - مُسْلِمَاتٌ - مُؤْمِنُونَ - لَيْلٌ -  
 مُحْسِنُونَ - صَابِرِينَ - مُؤْمِنٌ -

*Allāhu, Muḥammadun, Rasūlun, Qaumun, 'Ainun, Qaryatun, Naharun, Muḥsinun, Imāmun, Hijāratun, Ṣabrun, Muslimun, Ṣalātun, Ummatun, Thamaratun, Thamarātun, Qur'ānun, Kitābun, Muslimātun, Mu'minūna, Lailun, Muḥsinūna, Ṣābirīna, Mu'minun.*

Some examples from the Holy Qur'ān:

Muḥammadur Rasūlullāh	مُحَمَّدٌ رَّسُولُ اللَّهِ
tilka ummatun qad khalat	تِلْكَ أُمَّةٌ قَدْ خَلَتْ
fa qulnad khulū hādhi hil qaryata	فَقُلْنَا ادْخُلُوا هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةَ
innaṣṣalāta tanhā 'anil faḥshā'i	إِنَّ الصَّلَاةَ تَنْهَى عَنِ الْفَحْشَاءِ
kullamā ruziqū minhā min thamaratirrizqan	كُلَّمَا رُزِقُوا مِنْهَا مِنْ ثَمَرَةٍ رِزْقًا

In the above sentences, the underlined words are the examples of Noun إِسْم (ism). The Arabic nouns may be:

Singular (مُفْرَدٌ Mufradun), Dual (مُتْنِى Muthanna) or Plural (جَمْعٌ Jam'un).

## Types of Noun

There are two kind of Nouns (ism) إِسْم

1. Common Noun, The Indefinite Noun (*ism nakirah*) إِسْم نَكِرَةٌ
2. Proper Noun, The Definite Noun (*ism ma'rifah*) إِسْم مَعْرِفَةٌ

إِسْم نَكِرَةٌ (*ism nakirah*) (COMMON NOUN)

aṣṣulḥu khairun	الصُّلْحُ خَيْرٌ
fī qulūbi himmaraḍun	فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ مَّرَضٌ
kullumā jā'a kum rasūlun	كُلَّمَا جَاءَكُمْ رَسُولٌ
idhā aṣābat hummuṣibatun	إِذَا أَصَابَتْهُمْ مُصِيبَةٌ
fā'tū bi sūratin	فَاتُوا بِسُورَةٍ
awwala kāfirin bihī	أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ
hudallinnāsi	هُدَى لِلنَّاسِ
innī jā'ilun filardī khalīfatan	إِنِّي جَاعِلٌ فِي الْأَرْضِ خَلِيفَةً
istau qada nāran	إِسْتَوْ قَدْ نَارٌ
qad khalat min qablihī umamun	قَدْ خَلَتْ مِنْ قَبْلِهِ أُمَمٌ

Ism ẓāhir إِسْم ظَاهِر is the word which is a name of a thing, a place or a person.

e.g. كِتَابٌ kitābun مَدِينَةٌ madīnatun, ذَاهِدٌ dhāhidun. The underlined words are (*asmā' i nakirah*) إِسْمَاءٍ نَكِرَةٍ These words ususally have a (*tanwīn*) تَنْوِين.

## إِسْمٌ مَعْرِفَةٌ

(ism ma'rifah, PROPER NOUN)

wa mā muḥammadun illā rasūlun	وَمَا مُحَمَّدٌ إِلَّا رَسُولٌ
muḥammadurrasūlullāh	مُحَمَّدٌ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ
wa mā kāna ibrahīmu yahūdīyan	وَمَا كَانَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ يَهُودِيًّا
hādhannabiyyu	هَذَا النَّبِيُّ
rabbij'al hādhal balada	رَبِّ اجْعَلْ هَذَا الْبَلَدَ
aṣṣulḥu khairun	الصُّلْحُ خَيْرٌ
dhālikal kitābu	ذَٰلِكَ الْكِتَابُ
wattīni wazzaitūni	وَالْتَيْنِ وَالزَّيْتُونِ
wa ṭūri sīnīna	وَطُورِ سَيْنِينَ
yā ayyu hal muddaththiru	يَا أَيُّهَا الْمُدَّثِّرُ

In the above sentences the underlined words are إِسْمٌ مَعْرِفَةٌ (ism ma'rifah), e.g.

(Muḥammadun مُحَمَّدٌ. If (ism nakirah) إِسْمٌ نَكِرَةٌ by adding (al) أَلْ is changed into

(ism ma'rifah) إِسْمٌ مَعْرِفَةٌ the resulting word does not get a (tanwīn) تنوين e.g.

(al-kitābu, aṣṣulḥu, annabiyyu) النَّبِيُّ - الصُّلْحُ - الْكِتَابُ

## جُمْلَه اِسْمِيَّه (jumlah ismiyyah)

A sentence which begins with اسم (ism, noun) and its parts include مُبْتَدَأ (mubtadā') and خَبَر (khabar) is called جُمْلَه اِسْمِيَّه (jumlah ismiyyah).

allāhu qādirun	اَللّٰهُ قَادِرٌ
allāhu rabbukum	اَللّٰهُ رَبُّكُمْ
aṣṣulḥu khairun	الصُّلْحُ خَيْرٌ
allāhu rabbul 'ālamīn	اَللّٰهُ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ
allāhu baiṣrun	اَللّٰهُ بَصِيرٌ
muḥammadurraṣūlullāh	مُحَمَّدٌ رَّسُولُ اللّٰهِ
allāhu ghafūrun	اَللّٰهُ غَفُورٌ
innamal mu'minūna ikhwatun	اِنَّمَا الْمُؤْمِنُونَ اِخْوَةٌ
allāhu nūruṣṣamāwāti wal-arḍ	اَللّٰهُ نُورُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ
allāhu 'aduñwullil kāfirīn	اَللّٰهُ عَدُوٌّ لِّلْكَافِرِينَ

1. In the above sentences the underlined words are اَسْمَاء مُبْتَدَأ (asmā' mubtadā') and the rest of the sentences are اَخْبَار (akhbār)
2. The first part of the جُمْلَه اِسْمِيَّه (jumlah ismiyyah) is called مُبْتَدَأ (mubtadā') and it is usually مَعْرِفَه (ma'rifah, Proper Noun) The second part

is called **خبر** (*khavar*) and it is ususally **نكرة** (*nakirah*, Common Noun).

3. In the above examples both **مبتدأ** (*mubtada'*) and **خبر** (*khavar*) are **مرفوع** (*marfu'*) i.e., they have   .

### فعل (*Fi'l*; VERB)

ضَرَبَ - خَتَمَ - رَزَقَ - فَعَلَ - خَلَقَ - قَالَ - عَلِمَ - يَخْرُجُ - يَنْصُرُ - إِضْرِبْ - أَقَامَ -  
يَكْتُبُ - أَنْزَلَ - اسْتَكَبَرَ - يَتَكَلَّمُونَ - يُذَبِّحُونَ - يَتَسَاءَلُونَ - أَخْرَجَ - عَلَّمَ - نَزَلَ -  
أَدْخَلَ

*ḍaraba, khatama, razaqa, fa'ala, khalaqa, qāla, 'alima, yakhruju, yanṣuru, idrib, aqāma, yaktubu, anzala, istakbara, yatakallamūna, yudhabbiḥūna, yatasā'alūna, akhraja, 'allama, nazzala, adkhala*

Some examples from the Holy Qur'ān: The underlined words are the examples of **فعل** (*Fi'l*)

ḍaraballāhu mathalan	ضَرَبَ اللَّهُ مَثَلًا
khatamallāhu 'alā qulūbihim	خَتَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَى قُلُوبِهِمْ
anzala mi-nassamā'i	أَنْزَلَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ
yudhabbiḥūna abnā'a kum	يُذَبِّحُونَ أَبْنَاءَكُمْ
idribbi 'aṣākal ḥajar	إِضْرِبْ بِعَصَاكَ الْحَجَرَ

## جُمْلَه فِعْلِيَّه (jumlah fi'liyyah)

The sentence which starts with فعل (fi'1) and then the فعل (fi'1) is followed by نائب فاعل (nā'ib fā'il) or فاعل and مفعول (ma'fūl) is called a جُمْلَه فِعْلِيَّه (jumlah fi'liyyah)

1. aqimussalāta	أَقِمْوَا الصَّلَاةَ
2. wa ātuzzakāta	وَاتُوا الزَّكَاةَ
3. bashshi riṣṣābirīna	بَشِّرِ الصَّابِرِينَ
4. dhahaballāhu bi nūrihim	ذَهَبَ اللَّهُ بِنُورِهِمْ
5. khatamallāhu 'alā qulūbihim	خَتَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَى قُلُوبِهِمْ
6. 'afallāhu 'anhum	عَفَا اللَّهُ عَنْهُمْ
7. yurīdullāhu bikumul yusra	يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ بِكُمْ الْيُسْرَ
8. yaḍribullāhul amthāla	يَضْرِبُ اللَّهُ الْأَمْثَالَ
9. wa idh yarfa'u ibrahīmūl qawā'ida	وَإِذْ يَرْفَعُ إِبْرَاهِيمُ الْقَوَاعِدَ
10. ud'u lanā rabbaka	ادْعُ لَنَا رَبَّكَ

The examples 1 to 3 and 10 in the above جُمْلَه فِعْلِيَّه (jumlah fi'liyyah) include رَبِّ - الصَّابِرِينَ - الزَّكَاةَ - الصَّلَاةَ فعل (fi'1) and فاعل (fāi'1) and the words



(aṣṣafāta, azzakāta, aṣṣabirīna and rabba) are مفعول (maf'ul).

In the examples 4 to 6 there is فعل ماضى (fi'l māḍī, past tense) and الله is فاعل (fa'il).

In example 9 إِبْرَاهِيمُ (ibrahīmu) is فاعل and in 7 to 9 الْيُسْرَ - الْأَمْثَالَ - الْقَوَاعِدَ (al-yusra, al-amthāla and al-qawā'ida) are مفعول (maf'ul).

In examples 7 to 9 there is فعل مضارع (fi'l muḍārī', past tense).

### The Verb (fi'l) (فعل) is of Three Kind

فعل ماضى: (fi'l māḍī, past tense) فَعَلَ (fa'ala, He did)

فعل مضارع: (fi'l muḍārī', present and future tense) يَفْعَلُ (yaf'alu, He does or he will do)

فعل امر: (fi'l amr, imperative tense) اِفْعَلْ (if'al, Do)

All simple verbs have three persons:

The first person: "I", "We" (مُتَكَلِّمٌ Mutakallim);

The second person: "you" (حَاضِرٌ Ḥāḍir) and

The third person: "He", "She" "They", غَائِبٌ Ghā'ib). Each

of these can be مذكر (masculine) or مؤنث (feminine) genders.

## MAKE PAST TENSE USING THESE ROOTS AND PRONOUNS

ح ف ت To Open Fā', Ta', Ḥā'	ن ف ع To Benefit Nūn, Fā', 'Ayn	ف ع ل To Do Fā', 'Ayn, Lām	PRONOUNS
		fa'ala <b>فَعَلَ</b> He did	huwa <b>هُوَ</b> (He)
		fa'alā <b>فَعَلَا</b> They two (male) did	humā <b>هُمَا</b> (They two, male)
		fa'alū <b>فَعَلُوا</b> They all (male) did	hum <b>هُمْ</b> (They all, male)
		fa'alat <b>فَعَلَتْ</b> She did	hiya <b>هِيَ</b> (She)
		fa'alatā <b>فَعَلَتَا</b> They two (female) did	humā <b>هُمَا</b> (They two, female)
		fa'alna <b>فَعَلْنَ</b> They all (female) did	hunna <b>هُنَّ</b> (They all, female)
		fa'alta <b>فَعَلْتَ</b> You (male) did	anta <b>أَنْتَ</b> (You one, male)
		fa'altumā <b>فَعَلْتُمَا</b> You two (male) did	antumā <b>أَنْتُمَا</b> (You two, male)
		fa'altum <b>فَعَلْتُمْ</b> You all (male) did	antum <b>أَنْتُمْ</b> (You all, male)
		fa'alti <b>فَعَلْتِ</b> You (female) did	anti <b>أَنْتِ</b> (You one, female)
		fa'altumā <b>فَعَلْتُمَا</b> You two (female) did	antumā <b>أَنْتُمَا</b> (You two, female)
		fa'altunna <b>فَعَلْتُنَّ</b> You all (female) did	antunna <b>أَنْتُنَّ</b> (You all, female)
fatahtu <b>فَتَحْتُ</b>	nafa'tu <b>نَفَعْتُ</b>	fa'altu <b>فَعَلْتُ</b> I, male or female did	anā <b>أَنَا</b> (I, male or female)
		fa'alnā <b>فَعَلْنَا</b> We (male or female) did	nahnu <b>نَحْنُ</b> (We two or all, male or female)

## EXCERCISE

### Revision of the past tense verb

٦(6)	٥(5)	٤(4)	٣(3)	٢(2)	١(1)	
حَسِبَ ḥasiba	كَرَّمَ karuma	فَتَحَ fataḥa	عَلِمَ 'alima	نَصَرَ naṣara	ضَرَبَ ḍaraba	PRONOUNS
						هُوَ huwa
						هُمَا humā
						هُمْ hum
						هِيَ hiya
						هُمَا humā
						هُنَّ hunna
						أَنْتَ anta
						أَنْتُمَا antumā
						أَنْتُمْ antum
						أَنْتِ anti
						أَنْتُمَا antumā
						أَنْتُنَّ antunna
						أَنَا anā
						نَحْنُ naḥnu

## EXERCISE

Make past tenses according to the personal pronouns (ḍamā'ir) taught above using the following Arabic root letters. While doing so, try to grasp the meaning underlying the lesson.

ح ك م  
He decided

ن ق ض  
He broke

ك ت ب  
He wrote

He wrote (kataba) كَتَبَ

أَنَا .....	أَنْتَ .....	أَنْتُمَا .....	أَنْتُمْ .....
هُوَ .....	هُمَا .....	هُنَّ .....	هُنَّ .....

He broke (naqada) نَقَضَ

أَنَا .....	أَنْتَ .....	أَنْتُمَا .....	أَنْتُمْ .....
هُوَ .....	هُمَا .....	هُنَّ .....	هُنَّ .....

He decided (ḥakama) حَكَمَ

أَنَا .....	أَنْتَ .....	أَنْتُمَا .....	أَنْتُمْ .....
هُوَ .....	هُمَا .....	هُنَّ .....	هُنَّ .....

ism ḍamīr اسم ضمير

Ism ḍamīr اسم ضمير is the word which is spoken instead of a متكلم mutakallam, مخاطب mukhāṭab or غائب ghā'ib. e.g. أَنَا anā, أَنْتَ anta, هُوَ huwa. Plural of ḍamīr is ḍamā'ir.

## (الْمَاضِي الْقَرِيبَ Mādī Qarīb)

### THE NEAR PERFECT

Addition of the word *Qad* قَدْ before any *ṣīghah* (category) of the perfect tense changes it into a Mādī Qarīb. e.g. qad fa‘ala قَدْ فَعَلَ (He has done) and qad fa‘alā قَدْ فَعَلَا [These two (male) have done].

The word *Qad* قَدْ or *Laqad* لَقَدْ when added before a *ṣīghah* of the perfect tense also gives an emphasis to the meaning of the verb.

e.g.

qad fa‘ala karīmūn قَدْ فَعَلَ كَرِيمٌ (Indeed Karīm has done).

In the Holy Qur‘ān it is stated: qad aflahā mu‘minūna قَدْ أَفْلَحَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ (Surely, success does come to the believers, 23:2), walaqad khalaqnā fauqakum sab‘a ṭarā‘iqā وَلَقَدْ خَلَقْنَا فَوْقَكُمْ سَبْعَ طَرَائِقَ (And surely, We have created above you seven heavens lying one above the other, 23:18). Thus, *Qad* قَدْ and *Laqad* لَقَدْ have twofold role in changing the meaning:

- They convert Mādī into Mādī Qarīb and
- They give an emphasis to the meaning of the verb.

### THE NEAR PERFECT (الْمَاضِي الْقَرِيبَ Mādī Qarīb)

1st Person (Male & Female)	2nd Person (Female)	2nd Person (Male)	3rd Person (Female)	3rd Person (Male)	
قَدْ فَعَلْتُ	قَدْ فَعَلْتِ	قَدْ فَعَلْتَ	قَدْ فَعَلَتْ	قَدْ فَعَلَ	Singular
	قَدْ فَعَلْتُمَا	قَدْ فَعَلْتُمَا	قَدْ فَعَلْتَا	قَدْ فَعَلَا	Dual
قَدْ فَعَلْنَا	قَدْ فَعَلْتُنَّ	قَدْ فَعَلْتُمْ	قَدْ فَعَلْنَ	قَدْ فَعَلُوا	Plural

## الْمَاضِي الْبَعِيدُ (Mādī ba‘īd)

### THE DISTANT PERFECT

كَانَ *kāna*: he/it was/to be

كَانَ *kāna* is the most commonly used verb in Arabic. The Arabic verb has two tenses, the perfect and the imperfect. The perfect is used to narrate completed events (past tense or present perfect), while the imperfect describes events which have not been completed. Verbs in the perfect tense consist of a stem indicating the basic meaning and a pronoun suffix indicating the person, gender and number of the subject. The verb has two perfect stems, كَانِ *kān-* and كُنْ *kun-*, to which the suffixes are added. in the case of the third person (male and female) the stem *kān-* is used and the suffixes *a* and *at* are added to indicate the person. Consequently, كَانِ *kāna* does not actually mean the infinitive 'to be', but it means 'he was'. The pronoun subjects, "I, you, he and she" are all included in the verb and are indicated by the verb forms and ending. The gender of the verb must match that of the subject. e.g.

هُوَ فِي الْبَيْتِ *huwa fil baiti*, He is in the house.

كَانَ فِي الْبَيْتِ *kāna fil baiti*, He was in the house.

صَالِحَةٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ *Ṣāliḥatu fil baiti*, Ṣāliḥa is in the house

كَانَتْ صَالِحَةٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ *kānat Ṣāliḥatu fil baiti*, Ṣāliḥa was in the house.

The verb is always singular, regardless of the subject, as long as the subject follows the verb. e.g.

كَانَ كِنْيَا *kānatinnisā' u min kīniyā*, The women were from Kenya. When

*kāna* is prefixed to مضارع *Muḍāri'*, it converts it into the past continuous.

Example:

كَانَ يَذْهَبُ *kāna yaḍhabu* (He used to go).

## الْمَاضِي الْبَعِيدُ

### Madī Ba‘īd

He was or had	كَانَ kāna
They (two male) were or had	كَانَا kānā
They (male) were or had	كَانُوا kānū
She was or had	كَانَتْ kānat
They (two female) were or had	كَانَتَا kānatā
They (female) were or had	كُنَّ kunna
You (male) were or had	كُنْتَ kunta
You (two male) were or had	كُنْتُمَا kuntumā
You (male) were or had	كُنْتُمْ kuntum
You (female) were or had	كُنْتِ kunti
You (two female) were or had	كُنْتُمَا kuntumā
You (female) were or had	كُنْتُنَّ kuntunna
I was or had	كُنْتُ kuntu
We were or had	كُنَّا kunnā

## لَيْسَ *fi'li nāqis* (A Defective Verb): Laisa

The verb *لَيْسَ* *laisa* means, is not, are not, or am not according to the subject. It is called *فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ* *fi'li nāqis* (a defective verb) and only exists in the perfect tense form.

He is not	لَيْسَ <i>laisa</i>
They (two male) are not	لَيْسَا <i>laisā</i>
They (male) are not	لَيْسُوا <i>laisū</i>
She is not	لَيْسَتْ <i>laisat</i>
They (two female) are not	لَيْسَتَا <i>laisatā</i>
They (female) are not	لَيْسْنَ <i>lasna</i>
You (male) are not	لَيْسْتَ <i>lasta</i>
You (two male) are not	لَيْسُمَا <i>lastumā</i>
You (male) are not	لَيْسْتُمْ <i>lastum</i>
You (female) are not	لَيْسْتِ <i>lasti</i>
You (two female) are not	لَيْسُمَا <i>lastumā</i>
You (female) are not	لَيْسْتُنَّ <i>lastunna</i>
I am not	لَيْسْتُ <i>lastu</i>
We are not	لَيْسْنَا <i>lasnā</i>

The verb *لَيْسَ* *laisa* acts on a nominal sentence in exactly the same way as *كَانَ* *kāna* does.

كَانَ خَالِدٌ طَالِبًا فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ (*khālidun ṭālibun fī hādhi hīl madrasati*) Khālid is a student in this school.

كَانَ خَالِدٌ طَالِبًا فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ *kāna khālidun ṭāliban fī hādhi hīl madrasati* Khālid was a student in this school.  
لَيْسَ خَالِدٌ طَالِبًا فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ *laisa khālidun ṭāliban fī hādhi hīl madrasati* Khālid is not a student in this school.



## Muḍāri‘ (Imperfect Active)

Muḍāri‘ is derived from Māḍī. The patterns of Muḍāri‘ in comparison with Māḍī can be one of the following:

	Māḍī	Muḍāri‘	Māḍī	Muḍāri‘
1.	ضَرَبَ	يَضْرِبُ	ـَ	ـَ
2.	سَمِعَ	يَسْمَعُ	ـَ	ـَ
3.	فَتَحَ	يَفْتَحُ	ـَ	ـَ
4.	نَصَرَ	يَنْصُرُ	ـَ	ـُ
5.	كَرَّمَ	يَكْرُمُ	ـُ	ـُ
6.	حَسِبَ	يَحْسِبُ	ـَ	ـَ

The following four letters which are prefixed to Muḍāri‘ are called ‘*afāmātul muḍāri‘*’

ن ي ت ا : (عَلَامَاتُ الْمُضَارِعِ)

## فعل مضارع : فعل حال + مستقبل (مذكر كيلي)

Fi'l mudāri' is: A Verb indicating Present or Future Tense

جمع Plural	ثنائي Dual	واحد Singular	مذكر (مذكر) Mudhakkar
أَنْتُمْ تَنْصُرُونَ antum tanşurūna	أَنْتُمَا تَنْصُرَانِ antumā tanşurāni	أَنْتَ تَنْصُرُ anta tanşuru	مذكر حاضر Present, Male
هُمْ يَنْصُرُونَ hum yanşurūna	هُمَا يَنْصُرَانِ humā yanşurāni	هُوَ يَنْصُرُ huwa yanşuru	مذكر غائب Past, Male

### EXERCISE

Please make preset and future tenses using the 'Pronouns' given in the right column.

يَحْكُمُ yahkumu He decides or will decide	يَنْقُضُ yanquḍu He breaks or will break	يَكْتُبُ yaktubu He writes or will write	PRONOUN
		يَكْتُبُ yaktubu	هُوَ huwa
		يَكْتُبَانِ yaktubāni	هُمَا humā
		يَكْتُبُونَ yaktubūna	هُمْ hum
		تَكْتُبُ taktubu	أَنْتَ anta
		تَكْتُبَانِ taktubāni	أَنْتُمَا antumā
		تَكْتُبُونَ taktubūna	أَنْتُمْ antum
		أَكْتُبُ aktubu	أَنَا anā
		نَكْتُبُ naktubu	نَحْنُ naḥnu

In the Past Tense Verb, the first singular Past Tense for Male (howa, هُوَ) is naşara نَصَرَ and

it has three basic letters, ن nūn, ص ṣād and ر rā'. To change the Past tense into Present/Future tense, one needs to add Yā' ي with fathāh ( يَ ) before the first letter of the Past Tense Verb and the first letter of the tense is given a sukūn. e.g. naṣara نَصَرَ will become yaṣuru يَنْصُرُ (He helps or will help) and kataba كَتَبَ will change into yaktubu يَكْتُبُ (He writes or will write). The letters added before the Past Tense Verb which change with the change in the Pronouns are called *Present/Future Tense Letters*. e.g. In aṣuru أَنْصُرُ, taṣuru تَنْصُرُ and yaṣuru يَنْصُرُ, alif ا, tā' ت and yā' ي are the *Present and Future Tense Letters* (Hurūf-e-Muḍāri', حُرُوفِ مضارع).

### فعل مضارع : فعل حال + مستقبل (مؤنث کیلئے)

Fi'l muḍāri' is: A Verb indicating Present or Future Tense

جمع Plural	ثنیہ Dual	واحد Singular	(مؤنث) Mu'annath
أَنْتُنَّ تَنْصُرْنَ antunna taṣurna	أَنْتُمَا تَنْصُرَانِ antumā taṣurāni	أَنْتِ تَنْصُرِينَ anti taṣurīna	مؤنث حاضر Present, Female
هُنَّ يَنْصُرْنَ hunna yaṣurna	هُمَا تَنْصُرَانِ humā taṣurāni	هِيَ تَنْصُرُ hiya taṣuru	مؤنث غائب Past, Female

### EXERCISE

Please make preset and future tenses using the 'Pronouns' given in the right column.

yaftaḥu يَفْتَحُ He opens or will open	yanfa'u يَنْفَعُ He benefits or will benefit	yaf'alu يَفْعَلُ He does or will do	PRONOUN
		taf'alu تَفْعَلُ	هِيَ hiya
		taf'alāni تَفْعَلَانِ	هُمَا humā
		yaf'alna يَفْعَلْنَ	هُنَّ hunna
		taf'alina تَفْعَلِينَ	أَنْتِ anti
		taf'alāni تَفْعَلَانِ	أَنْتُمَا antumā
		taf'alna تَفْعَلْنَ	أَنْتُنَّ antunna

In the above lesson, please note carefully the method used to make different "*fi'l muḍā'irī*" (Present and Future Tense) with respect to various "*ḍamā'ir*" (Pronouns).

When the Past tense is changed to Present/Future tense, the ḥarkat (movement) on the middle letter ( 'ain, ع ) of the basic three letter unit found in the case of the first tense will remain the same in the rest of the tenses. For example, when naṣara نَصَرَ is changed to yaṣuru يَنْصُرُ, the ḥarkat on the 'ain ع letter (i.e., ṣād ص) changes to ḍammah. In the case of all the remaining *fi'l muḍā'irī* (present and future tenses) the ḥarkat will remain ḍammah. However, the ḥarkat on the lām ل letter i.e. the third letter of the basic unit of the word will change with change in the *ḍamā'ir* (Pronouns), e.g.

tanṣurīna تَنْصُرِينَ, tanṣurāni تَنْصُرَانِ, tanṣurna تَنْصُرْنَ  
and  
yaftaḥu يَفْتَحُ, yaftaḥāni يَفْتَحَانِ, yaftaḥūn يَفْتَحُونَ

Please note: The 'ain ع letter in the case of both *fi'l māḍī* (past tense) and *fi'l muḍā'irī* (present and future tense) can get anyone of the following ḥarkāt (movements), i.e. fathah, kasrah, ḍammah. What ḥarkat (movement) 'ain ع letter of a particular *māḍah* (root of the word) will get depends upon its use by the Arabic language.

# Fi'1 Mādī + Fi'1 Muḍāri'

## EXCERCISE

يَكْبُرُ	كَبُرَ	يَجْهَدُ	جَهِدَ	يَشْهَدُ	شَهِدَ	يَغْفِرُ	غَفَرَ	يَحْضَرُ	حَاضَرَ	PRONOUNNS
yakburu	kabura	yajḥadu	jaḥada	yashhadu	shahida	yaghfiru	ghafara	yaḥḍaru	ḥaḍara	
								يَحْضَرُ		هُوَ huwa
								يَحْضَرَانِ		هُمَا humā
								يَحْضَرُونَ		هُمْ hum
								تَحْضَرُ		هِيَ hiya
								تَحْضَرَانِ		هُمَا humā
								يَحْضَرْنَ		هُنَّ hunna
								تَحْضَرُ		أَنْتَ anta
								تَحْضَرَانِ		أَنْتُمَا antumā
								تَحْضَرُونَ		أَنْتُمْ antum
								تَحْضَرِينَ		أَنْتِ anti
								تَحْضَرَانِ		أَنْتُمَا antumā
								تَحْضَرْنَ		أَنْتُنَّ antunna
								أَحْضَرُ		أَنَا anā
								نَحْضَرُ		نَحْنُ naḥnu

## فعل نهى Fi'l Nahī and فعل جحد Fi'l Jahad

### فعل جحد Fi'l Jahad

Literally *Jahad* جحد means to refuse. When *lamm* لَمْ is added to *Fi'l Muḍāri'* فعل مضارع it becomes *Fi'l Jahad* فعل جحد and the word becomes *Majzūm* مَجْزُوم i.e., the last letter of the word gets *Jazm* جَزَم. Thus, *Fi'l Muḍāri'* فعل مضارع changes to *Fi'l Māḍi* فعل ماضى, e.g. *aḥkumu* أَحْكُم (I decide) with the addition of *lamm* لَمْ will become *lamm aḥkum* لَمْ أَحْكُم (I did not decide). Similarly, *yahkumu* يَحْكُم (He decides), and *yakfuru* يَكْفُر (He rejects or disbelieves), with the addition of *lamm* لَمْ will become *lamm yahkkum* لَمْ يَحْكُم (He did not decide) and *lamm yakfur* لَمْ يَكْفُر (He did not reject). Furthermore, *nūn i'rābi* نُونِ اِعْرَابِي (nūn i'rābi) disappears or is elided, eg. *لَمْ يُؤْمِنُوا* (lam yu'minū) instead of *لَمْ يُؤْمِنُون* (lam yu'minūna).

### فعل نهى Fi'l Nahī

It is indicative of prohibition or ordering not to do something. In Arabic مَا (mā) and لَا (lā) mean "no" or "not". If one wants to tell a person not to do something, for that one should add *lā* لَا before *Fi'l Muḍāri'* فعل مضارع. This *lā* لَا is called, "*lā-e-nahī*" لَاءِ نَهْي and addition of *lā-e-nahī* لَاءِ نَهْي gives *jazm* جَزَم to *Fi'al Muḍāri'*. e.g. *yakfuru* يَكْفُر (He rejects) with the addition of *lā* لَا becomes *lā yakfur* لَا يَكْفُر (Do not reject).

## Fi'1 Nahī فعل نهى and Fi'1 Jahad فعل جحد

	Fi'l Nahī فعل نهى			Fi'l Jahad فعل جحد	Fi'l Muḍāri'ī فعل مضارع	PRONOUNS
	لَا يَكْفُرُ lā yakfur	يَكْفُرُ yakfuru		لَمْ يَحْكُمْ lam yaḥkum	يَحْكُمُ yaḥkumu	هُوَ huwa
	لَا يَكْفُرَا lā yakfurā	يَكْفُرَانِ yakfurāni		لَمْ يَحْكُمَا lam yaḥkumā	يَحْكُمَانِ yaḥkumāni	هُمَا humā
	لَا يَكْفُرُوا lā yakfurū	يَكْفُرُونَ yakfurūna		لَمْ يَحْكُمُوا lam yaḥkumū	يَحْكُمُونَ yaḥkumūna	هُمْ hum
	لَا تَكْفُرُ lā takfur	تَكْفُرُ takfuru		لَمْ تَحْكُمْ lam taḥkum	تَحْكُمُ taḥkumu	هِيَ hiya
	لَا تَكْفُرَا lā takfurā	تَكْفُرَانِ takfurāni		لَمْ تَحْكُمَا lam taḥkumā	تَحْكُمَانِ taḥkumāni	هُمَا humā
	لَا يَكْفُرْنَ lā yakfurna	يَكْفُرْنَ yakfurna		لَمْ يَحْكُمْنَ lam yaḥkumna	يَحْكُمْنَ yaḥkumūna	هُنَّ hunna
	لَا تَكْفُرُ lā takfur	تَكْفُرُ takfuru		لَمْ تَحْكُمْ lam taḥkum	تَحْكُمُ taḥkumu	أَنْتَ anta
	لَا تَكْفُرَا lā takfurā	تَكْفُرَانِ takfurāni		لَمْ تَحْكُمَا lam taḥkumā	تَحْكُمَانِ taḥkumāni	أَنْتُمَا antumā
	لَا تَكْفُرُوا lā takfurū	تَكْفُرُونَ takfurūna		لَمْ تَحْكُمُوا lam taḥkumū	تَحْكُمُونَ taḥkumūna	أَنْتُمْ antum
	لَا تَكْفُرِي lā takfurī	تَكْفُرِينَ takfurīna		لَمْ تَحْكُمِي lam taḥkumī	تَحْكُمِينَ taḥkumīna	أَنْتِ anti
	لَا تَكْفُرَا lā takfurā	تَكْفُرَانِ takfurāni		لَمْ تَحْكُمَا lam taḥkumā	تَحْكُمَانِ taḥkumāni	أَنْتُمَا antumā
	لَا تَكْفُرْنَ lā takfurna	تَكْفُرْنَ takfurna		لَمْ تَحْكُمْنَ lam taḥkumna	تَحْكُمْنَ taḥkumna	أَنْتُنَّ antunna
لَا أَفْرَحُ lā aḫṣ	لَا أَكْفُرُ lā akfur	أَكْفُرُ akfuru	لَمْ أَعْلَمْ lam a'lum	لَمْ أَحْكَمْ lam aḥkum	أَحْكُمُ aḥkumu	أَنَا anā
	لَا تَكْفُرُ lā nakfur	تَكْفُرُ nakfuru		لَمْ تَحْكُمْ lam naḥkum	تَحْكُمُ naḥkumu	نَحْنُ nahnu

## فعل امر حاضر Fi'l Amr Hādir

Fi'l Amr Hādir فعل امر حاضر is formed from the Sīghas (Categories) of Fi'l Muḍāri' Mukhātib حرف مخاطب . To make Fi'l Amr Hādir فعل امر حاضر, Harf Muḍāri' حرف Muḍāri' is removed from Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع and Sukūn/Jazm is added to the last letter. e.g., tanṣuru تَنْصُرُ changes to nṣur نَصُرُ. If the letter next to the Harf Muḍāri' حرف مضارع carries a Jazm جزم as is the case in the above example then an *alif* is added in the beginning of the word. This *alif* is called *Hamzatul waṣl* همزة الوصل (i.e. joining hamzah). To give a *ḥarkat* to this *hamzah* one has to look at the 'ain letter of the Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع. If *ḥarkat* on the 'ain letter is a *ḍammah* as is the case of tanṣuru تَنْصُرُ then the *Hamzatul waṣl* gets *ḍammah ḥarkat*, e.g. nṣur نَصُرُ will become unṣur أَنْصُرُ. However, if the 'ain letter has either *fathah* or *kasrah* then in both cases the *Hamzatul waṣl* will get *kasrah*, e.g. tadribu تَضْرِبُ changes into idrib اِضْرِبْ and tash-hadu تَشْهَدُ changes into ish-had اِشْهَدْ.

Fi'l Amr فعل امر	Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع	Fi'l Amr فعل امر	Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع	Fi'l Amr فعل امر	Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع
اِشْهَدْ ish-had	تَشْهَدُ tash-hadu	اِغْفِرْ ighfir	تَغْفِرُ taghfiru	اُنْصُرْ unṣur	تَنْصُرُ tanṣuru
	تَشْهَدَانِ tash-hadāni		تَغْفِرَانِ taghfirāni	اُنْصُرَا unṣurā	تَنْصُرَانِ tanṣurāni
	تَشْهَدُونَ tash-hadūna		تَغْفِرُونَ taghfirūna	اُنْصُرُوا tanṣurū	تَنْصُرُونَ tanṣurūna
	تَشْهَدِينَ tash-hadīna		تَغْفِرِينَ taghfirīna	اُنْصُرِيْ unṣurī	تَنْصُرِينَ tanṣurīna
	تَشْهَدَانِ tash-hadāni		تَغْفِرَانِ taghfirāni	اُنْصُرَا unṣurā	تَنْصُرَانِ tanṣurāni
	تَشْهَدْنَ tash-hadna		تَغْفِرْنَ taghfirna	اُنْصُرْنَ unṣurna	تَنْصُرْنَ tanṣurna



Make *Fi'l Amr* فعل امر from the following words: *tahkumu* تَحْكُمُ .....?

*tashrabūna* تَشْرَبُونَ .....? *taslukīna* تَسْلُكِينَ .....?

Note: In the case of wāhid mudhakkar ṣīgha واحد مذكر صيغة , sukūn سكون comes at the end. If the end letter of the word is a Nūn I'rābī نون اعرابي, the Nūn I'rābī becomes silent.

## Fi'l Amr Gha'ib wa Mutakallam فعل امر غائب و متكلم

To make *Fi'l Amr* فعل امر from *Ghā'ib* غائب and *Mutakallam* متكلم Ṣīghas صيغة (Categories) of *Fi'l Muḍāri'* فعل مضارع one needs to add *lām maksūr* لام مكسور (i.e., *lām* with *kasrah* ل) in the beginning of the *Fi'l* فعل. e.g. *yanṣuru* يَنْصُرُ He helps changes to *li-yanṣur* لِيَنْصُرْ. He should help; *yash-hadu* يَشْهَدُ He bears witness changes to *li-yash-had* لِيَشْهَدْ He should bear witness.

Fi'l Amr فعل امر	Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع	Fi'l Amr فعل امر	Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع	Fi'l Amr فعل امر	Fi'l Muḍāri' فعل مضارع
لِيَشْهَدْ liyash-had	يَشْهَدُ yash-hadu	لِيَغْفِرَ liyaghfir	يَغْفِرُ yaghfiru	لِيَنْصُرَ liyanṣur	يَنْصُرُ yanṣuru
	يَشْهَدَانِ yash-hadāni		يَغْفِرَانِ yaghfirāni	لِيَنْصُرَا liyanṣurā	يَنْصُرَانِ yanṣurāni
	يَشْهَدُونَ yash-hadūna		يَغْفِرُونَ yaghfirūna	لِيَنْصُرُوا liyanṣurū	يَنْصُرُونَ yanṣurūna
	تَشْهَدُ tash-hadu		تَغْفِرُ taghfirū	لَتَنْصُرَ litanṣur	تَنْصُرُ tanṣuru
	تَشْهَدَانِ tash-hadāni		تَغْفِرَانِ taghfirāni	لَتَنْصُرَا litanṣurā	تَنْصُرَانِ tanṣurāni
	يَشْهَدْنَ yash-hadna		يَغْفِرْنَ yaghfirna	لِيَنْصُرْنَ liyanṣurna	يَنْصُرْنَ yanṣurna
	أَشْهَدُ ash-hadu		أَغْفِرُ aghfiru	لَاَنْصُرَ lianṣur	أَنْصُرُ anṣuru
	نَشْهَدُ nash-hadu		نَغْفِرُ naghfiru	لَنَنْصُرَ linanṣur	نَنْصُرُ nanṣuru

## حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ (Hurūful Jarr, THE PREPOSITIONS)

إِلَى - ب - ت - حَتَّى - عَلَى - عَنْ - فِي - مَعَ - ك - ل - مِنْ - وَ - مُنْذُ - مُذْ - خَلَا -  
رُبَّ - حَاشَا - عَدَا - مِنْ عِنْدِ - مِنْ لَدُنْ -

*ilā (for), bā' (by, with), tā', ḥattā (until), 'alā (on), 'an (away from; about), fī (in), ma'a, kāf (like), lam (for), min (from), wāw, mundhu (since), mudh, khaḥā, rubba, hāshā, 'adā, min 'indi and milladun* are called حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ (*hurūful jarr*, i.e., The prepositions).

In the Table, the underlined words are حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ (*hurūful Jarr*).

bismillāh	بِسْمِ اللَّهِ
alḥamdu lillāh	الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ
khatamallāhu 'alā qulūbihim	خَتَمَ اللَّهُ عَلَى قُلُوبِهِمْ
wa ayyadnāhu bi rūḥil quds	وَأَيْدِيَهُ بِرُوحِ الْقُدُسِ
bil ithmi wal 'udwān	بِالْإِثْمِ وَالْعُدْوَانِ
mathaluhum ka mathalilladhī	مَثَلُهُمْ كَمَثَلِ الذِّئِ
u 'iddat lil kāfirīna	أَعِدَّتْ لِلْكَافِرِينَ
ilā shayāṭini him	إِلَى شَيْطَانِهِمْ
ulā'ika 'alā hudammirrabbiḥim	أُولَئِكَ عَلَى هُدًى مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ
wa lā tus'alu 'an aṣḥābiljahīm	وَلَا تُسْأَلُ عَنْ أَصْحَابِ الْجَحِيمِ

## فِي fī: in

The preposition **فِي** fī is the most frequently used word in Arabic. Its common English meaning is the word: "in". However, its meaning also include the following English words or statements: with; about; concerning; regarding; at; during; among; on; near; by; within; according to; in the company of; according to; for the sake of; on behalf of; in proportion to.

When the preposition **فِي** fī precedes a noun, it causes the noun to be in the 'Genitive case' (**مَجْرُور** *Majrūr*) which is indicated by the changing of the final vowel from a *ḍammah* to a *kasrah*. In the case of indefinite noun, the double *ḍammah* changes to double *kasrah*.

## مِنْ min: from

The preposition, "Min" **مِنْ** , is also one of the frequently used words in Arabic. Its most commonly used English meanings are: some; some of; away from; of; pertaining to; belonging to; out of; from the direction of; away from.

When the preposition "Min" **مِنْ** is combined with a noun the nūn of *Min* gets *fathah*, whereas, in most other cases it gets a *kasrah*.

The preposition "Min" **مِنْ** is commonly used to identify the place of origin in reference to countries and cities.

The preposition "Min" **مِنْ** may be used in combination with the interrogative pronouns, such as **أَيْنَ** *aina* and **مَنْ** *man* to make another interrogative. The preposition "Min" **مِنْ** always precedes the interrogative pronoun. e.g. **مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟** *min 'aina anta* (Where are you from?); **مِنْ مَنْ** *min* in combination with **مَنْ** *man* becomes **مِمَّنِ** *mimman*. **مِمَّنِ الْقَلَمُ؟** *mimmanil qalamu* (Who is the pen from?)

## عَلَى ‘alā: on

In the preposition **عَلَى** ‘alā: the yā is called *alif maqṣūrah* and is pronounced as an *alif*. Its English meanings include: on; upon; above; on top of; by; at.

# ADVERBS

## حُرُوفُ الظَّرْفِ (Hurūfuzẓarf)

In Arabic, adverbs are of two kinds:

- i. Adverbs of place (ẓarfū makānin) ظَرْفُ مَكَانٍ
- ii. Adverbs of time (ẓarfū zamānin) ظَرْفُ زَمَانٍ

Adverbs of time (ẓarfū zamānin) ظَرْفُ زَمَانٍ	Adverbs of place (ẓarfū makānin) ظَرْفُ مَكَانٍ
قَبْلَ (qabla) before	فَوْقَ (fauqa) above, on
بَعْدَ (ba'da) after	تَحْتَ (tahta) below
الْيَوْمَ (al-yauma) today	عِنْدَ ('inda) near, beside, with, has/have
أَمْسٍ / بِأَمْسٍ (amsi/bil-amsi) yesterday	مَعَ (ma'a) with, has/have
أَوَّلَ أَمْسٍ (awwala amsi) the day before yesterday	أَمَامَ (amāma) in front of
غَدًا (ghadan) tomorrow	وَرَاءَ / خَلْفَ (khalfa/varā') behind
الآنَ (al-āna) now	بَيْنَ (baina) between

الْمَكْتَبَةُ أَمَامَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ al-maktabatu amāmal madrasati: The library is in front of the school.

الْمَكْتَبَةُ خَلْفَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ al-maktabatu khalfal madrasati: The library is at the back of the school.

الْيَوْمَ اكْمَلْتُ دِينَكُمْ al-yauma akmaltu dīnakum: Today I have perfected your religion

## INTERJECTIONS

### حُرُوفُ النِّدَاءِ (Hurūfun Nidā')

Far from it	haihāta هَيْهَاتَ	O!	yā ayyuhā يَا أَيُّهَا and yā يَا
Come here, Bring here	halumma هَلُمَّ	Come here	haita هَيْتَ
Woe!	vailun وَيْلُ	Lo, See, There	hā هَا
O Allāh!	allāhumma اَللّٰهُمَّ	Come	hayya حَيَّ

### إِنَّ inna: Certainly

The particle إِنَّ inna, which emphasizes a statement is generally translated into English as, definitely, certainly, surely, and without a doubt. e.g. إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ *innal baita kabīrun*. Certainly the house is large.

Predicate	Subject	Particle
كَبِيرٌ	الْبَيْتَ	إِنَّ
<i>kabīrun</i>	<i>al-baita</i>	<i>inna</i>
(is) large	the house	Certainly

When إِنَّ inna is placed before a nominal sentence, it causes the subject to enter the accusative case (مَنْصُوب *manṣūb*) and dammah on the subject changes to fathah, e.g. الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ *al-baitu kabīrun* changes to إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ *innal baita kabīrun* (Certainly the house is large). To put more emphasis to إِنَّ inna, lam is added to the predicate. e.g. إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ لَكَبِيرٌ *innal baita lakabīrun* (Most certainly the house is large). When the subject is a pronoun, the pronoun is written in an attached form. e.g. أَنْتَ إِنَّ inna *anta* becomes إِنَّكَ *innaka* and هُوَ إِنَّ inna *huwa* becomes إِنَّهُ *innahu*.

## THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS BASIC DIVISIONS

English Cases	The Pronoun	Meaning	Examples	The Pronoun	Arabic Cases
NOMINATIVE	I	I am a professor  I wrote the lesson yesterday  (I) write the lesson now	أَنَا أَسْتَاذٌ anā ustādhun  كَتَبْتُ الدَّرْسَ أَمْسَ katabtuddarsa amsi  اَكْتُبُ الدَّرْسَ الْآنَ aktubuddarsal āna	أَنَا anā  تُ tu  Implied	NOMINATIVE
ACCUSATIVE	Me	Khālīd helped me  Me alone Khālīd helped	نَصَرَني خَالِدٌ naṣarani khālidun  إِيَّايَ نَصَرَ خَالِدٌ iyyāya naṣara khālidun	ي yā'  إِيَّايَ iyyāya	ACCUSATIVE
GENETIVE	My	For me (there is) a small table  My table is small	لِي طَاوِلَةٌ صَغِيرَةٌ lī ṭāvilatun ṣaghīratun  طَاوِلَتِي صَغِيرَةٌ ṭāvilatī ṣaghīratun	ي  ي	GENETIVE

Pronoun (ضَمِيرٌ ḍamīr) is a word which is used instead of a noun. The pronouns are of two kinds:

1. ضَمَائِرُ مُنْفَصِلَةٌ (ḍamā'ir munfaṣilah, Detached Pronouns)
2. ضَمَائِرُ مُتَّصِلَةٌ (ḍamā'ir muttaṣilah, Attached Pronouns)

## THE NOMINATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Attached			Detached		PERSON
MEANING	PRONOUN		MEANING	PRONOUN	
I wrote	katabtu	كَتَبْتُ	I	أَنَا	FIRST
We wrote	katabna	كَتَبْنَا	We	نَحْنُ	
You (boy) wrote	katabta	كَتَبْتَ	You (boy)	أَنْتَ	SECOND
You (two boys) wrote	katabtumā	كَتَبْتُمَا	You (two boys)	أَنْتُمَا	
You (men) wrote	katabtum	كَتَبْتُمْ	You (boys)	أَنْتُمْ	
You (girl) wrote	katabti	كَتَبْتِ	You (girl)	أَنْتِ	
You (two girls) wrote	katabtumā	كَتَبْتُمَا	You (two girls)	أَنْتُمَا	
You (girls) wrote	katabtunna	كَتَبْتُنَّ	You (girls)	أَنْتُنَّ	
(He) wrote	kataba	كَتَبَ	He	هُوَ	THIRD
They (two boys) wrote	katabā	كَتَبَا	They (two boys)	هُمَا	
They (boys) wrote	katabū	كَتَبُوا	They (boys)	هُمْ	
(She) wrote	kabat	كَتَبَتْ	She	هِيَ	
They (two girls) wrote	kabatā	كَتَبَتَا	They (two girls)	هُمَا	
They (girls) wrote	kabna	كَتَبْنَ	They (girls)	هُنَّ	

1. Terms for the First Person, **الْمُتَكَلِّمُ** (al-mutakallim): "The Person who is speaking or writing referring to himself or herself."
2. Terms for the Second Person, **الْمُخَاطَبُ** (al-mukhāṭab): "The person or persons spoken to", or "The audience."
3. Terms for the Third Person, **الْغَائِبُ** (al-ghā'ib): "The absent person or persons or things spoken about."

The First and Second Persons together, **الْمُتَكَلِّمُ** (al-mutakallim) and **الْمُخَاطَبُ**

(al-mukhāṭab) are referred to as **الْحَاضِرُ** (al-ḥāḍir), i.e., The person or persons who is or are Present; in contrast to **الْغَائِبُ** (al-ghā'ib) which means an absent person or thing. The terms for the First Person **أَنَا** (anā) and **نَحْنُ** (naḥnu) represent exactly, "I" and "We". They are used both for the Masculine, and the Feminine. **نَحْنُ** (naḥnu) denotes two persons or more.

## THE GENETIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Object of Preposition الْمَجْرُورُ بِالْحَرْفِ (al-majrūru bil-ḥarf)		The Second Part in the Construct Phrase الْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ (al-mudāfu ilaih)		PERSON
MEANING	PRONOUN	MEANING	PRONOUN	
For me	lī	لِي	My book kitābī	FIRST
For us	lanā	لَنَا	Our book Kitābunā	
For You	laka	لَكَ	Your book kitābuka	SECOND
For You	laki	لَكَ	Your book kitābuki	
For You	lakumā	لَكُمَا	Your book kitābukumā	
For You	lakum	لَكُمْ	Your book kitābukum	
For You	lakunna	لَكُنَّ	Your book kitābukunna	
For him	lahu	لَهُ	His book kitābuhu	THIRD
For her	lahā	لَهَا	Her book kitābuhā	
For them	lahumā	لَهُمَا	Their book kitābuhumā	
For them	lahum	لَهُمْ	Their book kitābuhum	
For them	lahunna	لَهُنَّ	Their book kitābuhunna	



## THE ACCUSATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

ATTACHED		DETACHED		PERSON
MEANING	PRONOUN	MEANING	PRONOUN	
You helped me	نَصَرْتَنِي naṣartanī	Me alone you helped	إِيَّايَ نَصَرْتَ iyyāya naṣarta	FIRST
You helped us	نَصَرْتَنَا naṣartanā	Us alone you helped	إِيَّانَا نَصَرْتَ iyyānā naṣarta	
I helped you	نَصَرْتُكَ naṣartuka	You alone I helped	إِيَّاكَ نَصَرْتُ iyyāka naṣartu	SECOND
I helped you	نَصَرْتُكِ naṣartuki	You alone I helped	إِيَّاكِ نَصَرْتُ iyyāki naṣartu	
I helped you (both)	نَصَرْتُكُمَا naṣartukumā	You alone I helped	إِيَّاكُمَا نَصَرْتُ iyyākumā naṣartu	
I helped you (all)	نَصَرْتُكُمْ naṣartukum	You alone I helped	إِيَّاكُمْ نَصَرْتُ iyyākum naṣartu	
I helped you (all)	نَصَرْتُكُمْ naṣartukunna	You alone I helped	إِيَّاكُمْ نَصَرْتُ iyyākunna naṣartu	
I helped him	نَصَرْتُهُ naṣartuhu	Him I helped	إِيَّاهُ نَصَرْتُ iyyāhu naṣartu	THIRD
I helped her	نَصَرْتُهَا naṣartuhā	Her I helped	إِيَّاهَا نَصَرْتُ iyyāhā naṣartu	
I helped them (Both)	نَصَرْتُهُمَا naṣartuhumā	They alone I helped	إِيَّاهُمَا نَصَرْتُ iyyāhumā naṣartu	
I helped them (all)	نَصَرْتُهُمْ naṣartuhum	They alone I helped	إِيَّاهُمْ نَصَرْتُ iyyāhum naṣartu	
I helped them (all)	نَصَرْتُهُنَّ naṣartuhunna	They alone I helped	إِيَّاهُنَّ نَصَرْتُ iyyāhunna naṣartu	

## INTEROGATIVE PRONOUNS اِسْمُ الْاِسْتِفْهَامِ

Why? For What?	لِمَاذَا؟ limādhā	When?	مَتَى؟ matā	Who?	مَنْ؟ mann
From what?	مِمَّ؟ mimma	How much? How many?	كَمْ؟ kamm	What?	مَا؟ mā
What?	مَاذَا؟ mādhā	Which?	أَيُّ؟ ayyu	Where?	أَيْنَ؟ 'aina
Do you? Did you? Will you?	هَلْ؟ hall	Why?	لِمَ؟ (lima)	How?	كَيْفَ؟ kaifa
a) Same as هَلْ b) Which (of two things)	أُ؟ 'ā	Where?	حَيْثُ؟ ḥaithu	To Whom? Whose?	لِمَنْ؟ limann

Whatever	مَهْمَا mahmā	When or Whenever	كُلَّمَا kullamā	However	كَيْفَمَا kaifamā
Wherever	أَيْنَمَا ainamā	Wherever	حَيْثُمَا ḥaithumā	Whoever	كُلَّمَنْ kullamann

## RELATIVE PRONOUN اِسْمُ الْمَوْصُولِ

The word اَلَّذِي *alladhī* (who, which, that) is a relative pronoun. It reflects gender and number of the noun or pronoun which precedes it. The female form of اَلَّذِي *alladhī* is اَلَّتِي *allatī*. Since it begins with the definite article اَلْ *al*, the noun which it qualifies must also be definite. e.g.

اَلنِّسَاءُ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ *annisā' u fil madrasati* (The woman is in the school) becomes

اَلنِّسَاءُ اَلَّتِي فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ *annisā' ullatī fil madrasati* (The woman who is in the school).

## THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND PAST TENSE VERB FOR FEMININE GENDER

ضمائر (Mu'annath, Female) (مؤنث) (Ḍamā'ir)

(anā) (أنا) and (naḥnu) (نحن) are used for both male and female)

Plural جمع	Dual تثنیه	Singular واحد	
<p>أَنْتُنَّ حَمِيدَةٌ وَ حَامِدَةٌ وَ عَائِشَةٌ</p> <p>antunna ḥamīdatun wa ḥāmidatun wa ā'ishatun</p>	<p>أَنْتُمَا حَمِيدَةٌ وَ حَامِدَةٌ</p> <p>antumā ḥamīdatun wa ḥāmidatun</p>	<p>أَنْتِ حَمِيدَةٌ</p> <p>anti ḥamīdatun</p>	<p>مؤنث حاضر</p> <p>Present Female</p>
<p>هُنَّ حَمَادَةٌ وَ مَحْمُودَةٌ وَ عَائِشَةٌ</p> <p>hunna ḥammādatun wa mahmūdātun wa ā'ishatun</p>	<p>هُمَا حَمَادَةٌ وَ مَحْمُودَةٌ</p> <p>huma ḥammādatun wa mahmūdātun</p>	<p>هِيَ حَمَادَةٌ</p> <p>hiya ḥmmādatun</p>	<p>مؤنث غائب</p> <p>Past Female</p>

(These three letters are a root. When these are arranged in a particular way, they make different words.)

ضمائر (Fi'l Madhī) (مؤنث) + فعل ماضی (Ḍamā'ir)

(anā) (أنا) and (naḥnu) (نحن) are used for both male and female)

واحد متكلم (Wāḥid mutakallam) أنا نصرتُ I helped

تثنیه و جمع متكلم (Tathniyya wa jam'a mutakallam) نحن نصرتنا We helped

Plural جمع	Dual تثنیه	Singular واحد	
<p>أَنْتُنَّ نَصْرْتُنَّ</p> <p>antunna naṣartunna</p>	<p>أَنْتُمَا نَصْرْتُمَا</p> <p>antumā naṣartumā</p>	<p>أَنْتِ نَصْرْتِ</p> <p>anti naṣarti</p>	<p>مؤنث حاضر</p> <p>Present, Female</p>
<p>هُنَّ نَصَرْنَ</p> <p>hunna naṣarna</p>	<p>هُمَا نَصَرَتَا</p> <p>humā naṣaratā</p>	<p>هِيَ نَصَرَتْ</p> <p>hiya naṣarat</p>	<p>مؤنث غائب</p> <p>Past, Female</p>

# THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND PAST TENSE FOR MASCULINE GENDER

ضمائر (Damā'ir) + فعل ماضى (مذكر) (Fi'l Māḍī, Masculine)

Personal Pronouns plus Past Tense (Male)

أَنَا (anā) and نَحْنُ (nahnu) are used for both masculine and feminine genders

Plural جمع	Dual ثنيه	Singular واحد	
<p>أَنْتُمْ حَمِيدٌ وَ حَامِدٌ وَ مَحْمُودٌ</p> <p>antum ḥamīdun wa ḥāmidun wa maḥmūdun</p>	<p>أَنْتُمَا حَمِيدٌ وَ حَامِدٌ</p> <p>antumā ḥamīdun wa ḥāmidun</p>	<p>أَنْتَ حَمِيدٌ</p> <p>anta ḥamīdun</p>	<p>مذكر حاضر</p> <p>Present, Male</p>
<p>هُمْ حَمَادٌ وَ مَحْمُودٌ وَ أَحْمَدٌ</p> <p>hum ḥammādun wa maḥmūdun wa aḥmadun</p>	<p>هُمَا حَمَادٌ وَ مَحْمُودٌ</p> <p>humā ḥammādun wa maḥmūdun</p>	<p>هُوَ حَمَادٌ</p> <p>huwa ḥammādun</p>	<p>مذكر غائب</p> <p>Past, Male</p>

Practice of the past tense (fi'l māḍī فعل ماضى) and the personal pronouns (damā'ir ضمائر) learnt above. Three letters, ن nūn , ص ṣād and ر rā' are part of a root (basic unit). By arranging these basic unit letters in a specific way, different words are made. Below past tense sentences are given which are constructed using the above three root letters and the personal pronouns (damā'ir) learnt earlier.

I helped أَنَا نَصَرْتُ (anā naṣartu)

Plural جمع	Dual ثنيه	Singular واحد	
<p>أَنْتُمْ نَصَرْتُمْ</p> <p>antum naṣartum</p>	<p>أَنْتُمَا نَصَرْتُمَا</p> <p>antumā naṣartumā</p>	<p>أَنْتَ نَصَرْتَ</p> <p>anta naṣarta</p>	<p>مذكر حاضر</p> <p>Present, Male</p>
<p>هُمْ نَصَرُوا</p> <p>hum naṣarū</p>	<p>هُمَا نَصَرَا</p> <p>humā naṣarā</p>	<p>هُوَ نَصَرَ</p> <p>huwa naṣara</p>	<p>مذكر غائب</p> <p>Past, Male</p>

# DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

## أَسْمَاءُ إِشَارَةٍ

(asmā'i ishārah,

The Pronouns which are used to demonstrate or indicate something are called "Demonstrative Pronouns". Usually these come before the Noun and are stated according to the Noun. These are of two type: Near Demonstrative Pronouns and Far Demonstrative Pronouns.

### NEAR DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

## إِشَارَةٌ قَرِيبٌ

(ishārah qarīb,

The demonstrative noun which is used to refer to a thing which is nearby is called إِشَارَةٌ قَرِيبٌ (ishārah qarīb).

Examples are as follows:

This (Female)	هَذِهِ (hādhīhī)	This (Male)	هَذَا (hādhā)	واحد (singular)
These two (Female)	هَاتَانِ (hātāni)	These two (Male)	هَذَانِ (hādhāni)	تثنیه (Dual)
All these (Female)	هَؤُلَاءِ (hā'ulā'i)	All these (Male)	هَؤُلَاءِ (hā'ulā'i)	جمع (Plural)

**The demonstrative pronoun:** When something is pointed out, it becomes definite. However, in translation the definite article is not translated.

e.g.

هَذَا الْكِتَابُ *hādhā kitābu* will be translated as "This book" and not as "This the book". However, the demonstrative pronoun may be the subject of a sentence by itself, in which case, the predicate is generally indefinite.

e.g.

هَذَا كِتَابٌ *hādhā ktābun* : This is a book.

إِشَارَةٌ بِعِيدٍ (*ishārah ba 'īd*, DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS)

That	(tilka) <u>تِلْكَ</u>	That	(dhālika) <u>ذَلِكَ</u>	واحد (singular)
Those two	(tānika) <u>تَانِكَ</u>	Those two	(dhānika) <u>ذَانِكَ</u>	ثنائي (Dual)
All those	(ulā'ika) <u>أُولَئِكَ</u>	All those	(ulā'ika) <u>أُولَئِكَ</u>	جمع (Plural)

hādhā kitābun	<u>هَذَا كِتَابٌ</u>
tilka ummatun	<u>تِلْكَ أُمَّةٌ</u>
hādhihi nāqatu	<u>هَذِهِ نَاقَةٌ</u>
hādhāni khaṣmāni	<u>هَذَانِ خَصْمَانِ</u>
banātī hā'ulā'i	<u>بَنَاتِي هَؤُلَاءِ</u>
dhālika faḍlullāhi	<u>ذَلِكَ فَضْلُ اللَّهِ</u>
fadhānika burhānāni mirrabbika	<u>فَذَانِكَ بُرْهَانَانِ مِنْ رَبِّكَ</u>
ulā'ika aṣḥābunnāri	<u>أُولَئِكَ أَصْحَابُ النَّارِ</u>
hādhā buhtānun 'azīmun	<u>هَذَا بُهْتَانٌ عَظِيمٌ</u>
hādhā min faḍli rabbī	<u>هَذَا مِنْ فَضْلِ رَبِّي</u>
hātāni 'imra'atāni	<u>هَاتَانِ امْرَأَتَانِ</u>
aulādu hā'ulā'i	<u>أَوْلَادُ هَؤُلَاءِ</u>

The underlined words are أَسْمَاءُ إِشَارَةٍ (Demonstrative Pronouns, *asmā'i ishārah*)

### THE CARDINAL NUMBERS FROM ONE TO TEN

	Male	Female		Male	Female
1	wāḥidun <b>وَاحِدٌ</b>	wāḥidatun <b>وَاحِدَةٌ</b>	6	sittun <b>سِتٌّ</b>	sittatun <b>سِتَّةٌ</b>
2	ithnāni <b>اِثْنَانِ</b>	ithnatāni <b>اِثْنَتَانِ</b>	7	sab'un <b>سَبْعٌ</b>	sab'atun <b>سَبْعَةٌ</b>
3	thalāthun <b>ثَلَاثٌ</b>	thalāthatun <b>ثَلَاثَةٌ</b>	8	thamānin <b>ثَمَانٍ</b>	thamāniyatun <b>ثَمَانِيَةٌ</b>
4	arba'un <b>أَرْبَعٌ</b>	arba'atun <b>أَرْبَعَةٌ</b>	9	tis'un <b>تِسْعٌ</b>	tis'atun <b>تِسْعَةٌ</b>
5	khamṣun <b>خَمْسٌ</b>	khamṣatun <b>خَمْسَةٌ</b>	10	'ashrun <b>عَشْرٌ</b>	'asharatun <b>عَشْرَةٌ</b>

### THE CARDINAL NUMBERS FROM ELEVEN TO NINETEEN

	Male	Female		Male	Female
11	aḥad <b>أَحَدٌ</b> aḥada 'ashara	iḥda <b>إِحْدَى</b> iḥda 'ashrata	16	sittata <b>سِتَّةٌ</b> sittata 'ashara	sitta <b>سِتٌّ</b> sitta 'ashrata
12	ithnā <b>اِثْنَا</b> ithnā 'ashara	ithnatā <b>اِثْنَتَا</b> ithnatā 'ashrata	17	sab'ata <b>سَبْعَةٌ</b> sab'ata 'ashara	sab'a <b>سَبْعٌ</b> sab'a 'ashrata
13	thalātha <b>ثَلَاثَةٌ</b> thalātha 'ashara	thalātha <b>ثَلَاثٌ</b> thalātha 'ashrata	18	thamāniyata <b>ثَمَانِيَةٌ</b> thamāniyata 'ashara	thamāniya <b>ثَمَانِيٌ</b> thamāniya 'ashrata
14	arba'ata <b>أَرْبَعَةٌ</b> arba'ata 'ashara	arba'a <b>أَرْبَعٌ</b> arba'a 'ashrata	19	tis'ata <b>تِسْعَةٌ</b> tis'ata 'ashara	tis'a <b>تِسْعٌ</b> tis'a 'ashrata
15	khamṣata <b>خَمْسَةٌ</b> khamṣata 'ashara	khamṣa <b>خَمْسٌ</b> khamṣa 'ashrata			

	Male/Female		Male/Female		Male/Female
20	'ishrūna <b>عِشْرُونَ</b>	50	khamṣūna <b>خَمْسُونَ</b>	80	thamānūna <b>ثَمَانُونَ</b>
30	thalāthūna <b>ثَلَاثُونَ</b>	60	sittūna <b>سِتُّونَ</b>	90	tis'ūna <b>تِسْعُونَ</b>
40	arba'ūna <b>أَرْبَعُونَ</b>	70	sab'ūna <b>سَبْعُونَ</b>	100	mi'atun <b>مِائَةٌ</b>

For numbers such as twenty-one the number 1 to 9 is prefixed to the tens and they are united by the conjunction, **وَ** (and). e.g. twenty-one will be pronounced as **أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ** (aḥadun wa 'ishrūna).

## THE ORDINAL NUMBERS FROM FIRST TO TENTH

Number	Male	Female	Number	Male	Female
The First	الأَوَّلُ al-awwalu	الأُولَى al-ūlā	The Sixth	السَّادِسُ assādisu	السَّادِسَةُ assādisatu
The Second	الثَّانِي aththāniyu	الثَّانِيَةُ aththāniyatu	The Seventh	السَّابِعُ assābi'u	السَّابِعَةُ assābi'atu
The Third	الثَّالِثُ aththālithu	الثَّالِثَةُ aththālithatu	The Eighth	الثَّامِنُ aththāminu	الثَّامِنَةُ aththāminatu
The Fourth	الرَّابِعُ arrābi'u	الرَّابِعَةُ arrābi'atu	The Ninth	التَّاسِعُ attāsi'u	التَّاسِعَةُ attāsi'atu
The Fifth	الخَامِسُ al-khāmisu	الخَامِسَةُ al-khāmisatu	The Tenth	العَاشِرُ al-āshiru	العَاشِرَةُ al-āshiratu

## إِمَالَة (Imālah)

Verbally it means to dispose or to make inclined. Conventionally it means to bend a sound of fathah to kasrah and the sound of long vowel alif to the sound of long vowel yā'. For example, in English we pronounce the word, 'Call' in a way that the sound of letter "C" is straight and long. However, if we pronounce the word, 'Cable', here the sound of letter "C" is a bit inclined instead of being straight. This is '*Imālah*' or inclination. In the Holy Qur'ān (11:42) there is a word, مَجْرِيهَا (majrihā). In this word ر "rā'" instead of reading as ر "ri" will be read as ر "rai" like in English word "rain". After vertical kasrah if there is a blank bend, the vertical kasrah changes to a prolonged kasrah. This is the only example of this kind in the Holy Qur'ān.

## بَاب BĀB

The fi'l (verb) or ism (Noun) derived from a maṣḍar (Infinitive). e.g. Fi'l Māḍī (Past tense), Fi'l Muḍāri' (Imperfect tense: a verb indicating Present or Future tense), Fi'l Amr (Imperative tense), Ism Fā'il (Active Participle), Ism Maḥ'ūl (Passive Participle) and their tenses which have been arranged in a special way, the combination of all these is called a Bāb.

\*\*\*\*\*



# THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

فَإِذَا قَرَأْتَ الْقُرْآنَ

فَأَسْتَعِذْ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ ٥

*fa idhā qara'tal qur'āna fasta'idh billāhi minashshaiṭānirrajim*

And when you recite the Qur'ān, seek refuge with Allāh  
from Satan the rejected. (16:99)

## RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

عَنْ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ بْنِ عَمْرٍو رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْ النَّبِيِّ صَلَّى  
اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ قَالَ لَمْ يَفْقَهُ مَنْ قَرَأَ الْقُرْآنَ فِي أَقَلِّ  
مِنْ ثَلَاثٍ -

*‘an ‘abdillāhibni ‘amr<sup>ra</sup> ‘aninnabiyya<sup>sa</sup> qāla lam yafqah man  
qaral-qur’āna fi aqalla min thalāthin*

Ḥaḍrat ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr<sup>ra</sup> relates that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said, "The one who recites the whole Holy Qur’ān in less than three days does not understand anything in the Holy Qur’ān."

*(Tirmadhī abwābul qirā’)*

## CHAPTER 1

### A L-FĀTIḤAH

(Revealed before Hijrah)

#### *Place and Time of Revelation*

As reported by many traditionists, the whole of this *Sūrah* was revealed at Mecca and from the very beginning formed part of the Muslim Prayer. The *Sūrah* has been referred to in the Qur'ānic verse, *We have indeed given thee the seven oft-repeated verses and the great Qur'ān* (15:88), which was admittedly revealed at Mecca. According to some reports, the *Sūrah* was also revealed a second time at Medīna. The time of its first revelation, however, may be placed very early in the Prophet's ministry.

#### *Names of the Sūrah and Their Significance*

The best-known title of this short *Sūrah*, i.e., *Fātiḥat al-Kitāb*. (Opening Chapter of the Book) is reported on the authority of several reliable traditionists (Tirmidhī and Muslim). The title was later abbreviated into *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah* or simply *Al-Fātiḥah*. The *Sūrah* is known by quite a number of names, the following ten are more authentic, viz, *Al-Fātiḥah*, *Al-Ṣalāt*, *Al-Ḥamd*, *Umm al-Qur'ān*, *Al-Qur'ān Al-'Aẓīm*, *Al-Sab 'al-Mathānī*, *Umm al-Kitāb*, *Al-Shifā'*, *Al-Ruqyah* and *Al-Kanz*. These names throw a flood of light upon the extensive import of the *Sūrah*.

The name *Fātiḥat al-Kitāb* (Opening Chapter of the Book) signifies that the *Sūrah* having been placed in the beginning serves as a key to the whole subject-matter of the Qur'ān. *Al-Ṣalāt* (The Prayer) signifies that it forms a complete and perfect prayer and constitutes an integral part of the institutional Prayers of Islām. *Al-Ḥamd* (The Praise) signifies that the *Sūrah* brings to light the lofty purpose of man's creation and teaches that the relation of God to man is one of grace and mercy. *Umm Al-Qur'ān* (Mother of the Qur'ān) signifies that the *Sūrah* forms an epitome of the whole of the Qur'ān, containing in a nutshell all the knowledge that has a bearing on man's moral, and spiritual development. *Al-Qur'ān Al-'Aẓīm* (The Great Qur'ān) signifies that although the *Sūrah* is known as *Umm Al-Kitāb* and *Umm al-Qur'ān*, it nevertheless forms part of the Holy Book and is not separate from it, as mistakenly considered by some. *Al-Sab 'al-Mathānī* (The Oft-repeated Seven Verses) signifies that the seven short verses of the Chapter virtually fulfil all the spiritual needs of man. It also signifies that the Chapter must be repeated in every *Rak'at* of Prayer. *Umm al-Kitāb* (Mother of the Book) signifies that the prayer contained in the Chapter was the cause of the revelation of the Qur'ānic Dispensation, *Al-Shifā'* (The Cure) signifies that it provides remedy for all the legitimate doubts and misgivings of man. *Al-Ruqyah* (The Charm) signifies that it is not only a prayer to ward off disease but also provides protection against Satan and his followers,

and strengthens the heart of man against them. *Al-Kanz* (The Treasure) signifies that the *Sūrah* is an inexhaustible storehouse of knowledge.

### *Al-Fātiḥah Referred to in a Prophecy of the New Testament*

The best-known name of the *Sūrah*, however, is *Al-Fātiḥah*. It is interesting to note that this very name occurs in a prophecy of the New Testament: "I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven ... and he had in his hand a little *book open* and he set his right foot upon the sea and his left foot on the earth" (Rev. 10: 1, 2). The Hebrew word for 'Open' is *Fatoah* which is the same as the Arabic word *Fātiḥah*. Again, "And when he (the angel) had cried, seven thunders uttered their voices" (Rev. 10:3, 4). "The seven thunders" represent the seven verses of this Chapter. Christian scholars say that the Prophecy refers to the second advent of Jesus Christ, and this has been established by actual facts. The Holy Founder of the Aḥmadiyya Movement, Ḥaḍrat Mirzā Ghulām Aḥmad in whose person the prophecy relating to the second advent of Jesus has been fulfilled, wrote commentaries on this Chapter and deduced arguments of the truth of his claim from its contents and always used it as a model prayer. He deduced from its seven short verses Divine realities and eternal verities, which were not known before. It was as if the Chapter had been a sealed book until its treasures were laid bare by Ḥaḍrat Aḥmad. Thus was fulfilled the prophecy contained in Rev 10:4. "And when the seven thunders had uttered their voices, I was about to write and I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me "Seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered and write them not:" The prophecy referred to the fact that *Fatoah* or *Al-Fātiḥah* would, for a time, remain a closed book, but that a time would come when treasures of spiritual knowledge contained in it would be laid bare. This was done by Ḥaḍrat Aḥmad.

### *Connection With the Rest of the Qur'ān*

The *Sūrah* forms, as it were, an introduction to the Qur'ān. It is, in fact, the Qur'ān in miniature: Thus at the very beginning of his study, the reader becomes familiar in broad outline with the subjects he should expect to find in the Holy Book. The Holy Prophet is reported to have said that *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah* is the most important Chapter of the Qur'ān. (Bukhārī)

### *Subject-Matter*

The *Sūrah* contains the essence of the entire Qur'ānic teaching. It comprises, in outline, all the subjects dealt with at length in the body of the Qur'ān. It starts with a description of the fundamental attributes of God, which form the pivot round which all the other Divine attributes revolve, and the basis of the working of the universe and of the relation between God and man. The four principal Divine attributes, *Rabb* (Creator, Sustainer and Developer), *Raḥmān* (Gracious), *Raḥīm* (Merciful) and *Maliki Yaum al-Dīn* (Master of the Day of Judgment) signify that after having created man, God endowed him with the best natural capabilities and provided the means and material needed for his

physical, social, moral and spiritual development. Further, He made a provision that man's strivings and endeavors should be amply rewarded. The *Sūrah* goes on to say that man has been created for '*ibādah*, i.e., the worship of God and the attainment of His nearness and that he constantly needs His help for the fulfillment of this supreme object. The mention of the four Divine attributes is followed by a comprehensive prayer in which all the urges of the human soul find full expression. The prayer teaches that man should always seek and invoke the assistance of God that He may provide him with the means required for success in this life and in the life to come. But as man is apt to derive strength and inspiration from the good example of those noble and great souls of the past, who achieved the object of their life, he is taught to pray that like them God should open up for him also avenues of unlimited moral and spiritual progress. Finally, the prayer contains a warning lest after having been led to the right path he should stray away from it, lose sight of his goal and become estranged from his Creator. He is taught to remain always on his guard and constantly to seek God's protection against any possible estrangement from Him. This is the subject, which is put in a nutshell in *Al-Fātiḥah* and this is the subject with which the Qur'ān deals fully and comprehensively, citing numerous examples for the guidance of the reader.

Believers are enjoined that before reading the Qur'ān they should solicit God's protection against Satan: *When thou recites the Qur'ān, seek refuge with Allāh from Satan, the rejected* (16:99). Now, refuge or protection implies; (1) that no evil should befall us; (2) that no good should escape us; and (3) that after we have attained goodness, we may not again relapse into evil. The prescribed words of the prayer are: "I seek refuge with Allāh from Satan, the rejected," which must precede every recitation of the Qur'ān.

A Chapter of the Qur'ān --- and there are 114 of them --- is called a *Sūrah*. This word, rendered into English as 'Chapter,' means, (1) rank and eminence; (2) a mark or sign; (3) an elevated and beautiful edifice; and (4) something full and complete ('Aqrab & Qurtubī). The Chapters of the Qur'ān are called *Sūrahs* because (a) one is exalted in rank by reading them and attains to eminence through them; (b) they serve as marks for the beginning and the end of the different subjects dealt with in the Qur'ān; (c) they are each like a noble spiritual edifice and (d) each one of them contains a complete theme. The name *Sūrah* for such a division has been used in the Qur'ān itself (2:24 and 24:2). It has been used in the Ḥadīth also. Says the Holy Prophet: "Just now a *Sūrah* has been revealed to me and it runs as follows" (Muslim). From this it is clear that the name *Sūrah* for a division of the Qur'ān has been in use from the very beginning of Islām and is not a later innovation.

## AL-FĀTIHAH

(Revealed before Hijra)

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.
2. All praise belongs to Allah, Lord of all the worlds,
3. The Gracious, the Merciful,
4. Master of the Day of Judgment.
5. Thee alone do we worship and Thee alone do we implore for help.
6. Guide us in the right path—
7. The path of those on whom Thou hast bestowed Thy blessings, those who have not incurred Thy displeasure, and those who have not gone astray.

## سُورَةُ الْفَاتِحَةِ مَكِّيَّةٌ

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ۝

(میں پڑھتا ہوں اساتھ نام اللہ کے رحیم (اللہ) رحیم ہے

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ۝ الرَّحْمَنُ

سب تعریفیں اللہ کے لیے ہیں (جو) رب ہے تمام جہانوں کا رحمن ہے

الرَّحِيمُ ۝ اَمْلِكُ يَوْمَ الدِّينِ ۝ اِيَّاكَ

رحیم ہے مالک ہے وقت جزا سزا کا تیری ہی

نَعْبُدُ وَارْتَاكَ نَسْتَعِينُ ۝ اِهْدِنَا

ہم عبادت کرتے ہیں اور تجھی سے ہم مدد چاہتے ہیں دکھا ہمیں

الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ ۝ صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ

راستہ سیدھا راستہ ان لوگوں کا کہ

اَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ ۝ غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ

انعام کیا تو نے جن پر نہ ان کا کہ غضب کیا گیا جن پر

وَالَّذِينَ ضَلَّوْا

اور نہ گمراہوں کا -

## CHAPTER 2

### AL-BAQARAH (Revealed after Hijrah)

#### *Title, Date of Revelation and Context*

This, the longest *Sūrah* of the Qur'ān, was revealed at Medīna in the first four years after the *Hijrah* and is known as Al-Baqarah. The name was used by the Holy Prophet himself. The *Sūrah* seems to have derived its title from vv. 68-72 where an important incident in the life of the Jewish nation is briefly mentioned. For a long time the Jews had lived in Egypt as serfs and slaves under the most cruel bondage of the Pharaohs who were cow-worshippers. as is generally the case with subject races, they had borrowed from, and slavishly imitated, many customs and habits of the Egyptians and consequently had come to possess a strong liking, bordering on adoration, of the cow. When Moses told them to sacrifice a particular cow which symbolized their object of worship, they made a great fuss about it. It is this incident to which vv. 68-72 refer. Besides, Al-Baqarah, the *Sūrah* possesses another name - *Al-Zahrā'*, and both this *Sūrah* and Āl 'Imrān are jointly known as *Al-Zahrwān* - The Two Bright Ones (Muslim). The Holy Prophet is reported to have said: 'Everything has its peak, and the peak of the Qur'ān is Al-Baqarah' (Tirmidhi). The *Sūrah* is placed next to Al-Fātiḥah because it embodies answers to all the important problems which at once confront the reader when he turns from Al-Fātiḥah to a study of the main book. Though generally connected with all the other *Sūrahs*, Al-Fātiḥah possesses a special relationship with Al-Baqarah which constitutes the fulfillment of the prayer, 'Guide us in the straight path... Thy displeasure.' Indeed Al-Baqarah with its discourses upon the Signs, the Book, the Wisdom and the Means of purification (2:130), constitutes an appropriate and comprehensive reply to that great prayer.

#### *Subject-Matter*

It is sometimes said that the Qur'ān starts with this *Sūrah* as its very opening verse, viz., "This is a perfect book; there is no doubt about it." shows; while Al-Fātiḥah being, as it were, the Qur'ān in miniature though forming its integral part, possesses an independent and peculiar position of its own (15:88). The subject matter of this long Chapter is epitomized in its 130th verse. This verse contains a prayer of the Patriarch Abraham in which he implores God to raise a Prophet among the Meccans who should (1) recite to them the Signs of God; (2) give the world a Scripture containing perfect laws of the *Shariyy'ah*; (3) explain the wisdom underlying them; and (4) should lay down principles and rules of conduct which should bring about complete spiritual transformation in their lives and should make them a great and powerful nation, fit to lead the whole world. The four great objects for which Abraham prayed have been dealt with in this Chapter in the same order in which he

prayed for them. The "Signs" are discussed in the first 68 verses, the "Book" and "Wisdom" in vv. 169-243 and lastly "the Means of national progress in vv. 244-287. "The recital of the Signs" refers to the arguments about the truth of the Holy Prophet; "the teaching of the Book and Wisdom" to the laws of the *Shariyy'ah* laid down in the *Sūrah* and the wisdom or philosophy which underlines them, and last of all in elucidation of the subject of the spiritual changes spoken of in Abraham's prayer it refers to the principles that lead to national awakening.

The *Sūrah* has 40 sections and 287 verses. It opens with a statement of three fundamental beliefs - belief in God, Revelation and Life after death and two practical ordinances about Prayer and *Zakāt*, the rest being an extension and explanation of these principles and ordinances. In response to the prayer for guidance, the Qur'ān claims to present a perfect code of laws which comprises all the truths that were found in earlier revealed Scriptures, with much more that they did not contain, and claims also to guide man to the highest pinnacle of spiritual glory. The second section decries and deprecates mere verbal profession of faith which has no deep roots in the heart. The third section, however, lays down standards and criteria by which the truth of the Qur'ān can be tested and verified. And for this purpose it draws pointed attention to the process of evolution working in the physical universe. This process is to be seen in the spiritual realm also. Then mention is made of the first link in this spiritual chain - of Adam, the first man, to whom God revealed His Will. In the 4th section we are told that objections are being raised against the Holy Prophet. But these objections cannot detract from his truth even as they could not detract from Adam's truth. The next twelve sections - 5th to 16th - dispose of the objections, *viz.*, where was the necessity of a new revelation when God has already revealed Himself to Adam? It is stated that in harmony with progressive evolution in the spiritual system, God has been sending down His revelation in every age, every succeeding revelation being an improvement upon the preceding one. Moses was the Founder of a new *Shariyy'ah*. He was followed by a galaxy of Divine Messengers who were opposed and persecuted by the Israelites. Persistent defiance of Divine commandments on the part of the Israelites and their inquiries made them lose their title to Divine grace. Hence Prophethood, in accordance with biblical prophecies, was transferred to the House of Ishmael and the Holy Prophet was raised in the barren and arid Valley of Mecca with the most perfect and complete Law. This filled the Israelites with rage though they had no right to fret and fume at their being deprived of Prophethood. They opposed the Holy Prophet and spared no pains to bring him to naught. But opposition to Divine purpose has never succeeded.

The next two sections dispense with the objections of the Israelites as to why the Holy Prophet has given up the *Qiblah* of all the former Prophets in favor of the *Ka'bah*. They are told that in the first place facing a certain direction in Prayers or fixing a particular place as the *Qiblah* cannot be an object to be sought after, it only serves to bring about and maintain unity among a people. Secondly, in the prayers which Abraham had offered for the sons of Ishmael, it was prophesied that Mecca would one day become a place of pilgrimage for them and *Ka'bah* their *Qiblah*. In the



19th section it is mentioned that the Holy Prophet will meet strong opposition from disbelievers in the discharge of his onerous mission, and this opposition will continue till the Fall of Mecca. The 20th section draws attention to the supreme truth that all that is stated above is not an idle guess or conjecture; the very creation of the heavens and the earth, the alteration of day and night and other natural phenomena bear incontrovertible testimony to its truth inasmuch as, on the one hand, the law of nature points to the existence of a spiritual law and to a process of progressive evolution in it and, on the other hand, the whole universe seems to be working in support of the Holy Prophet. With the 21st section begins a description of the ordinances of the *Shariyy'ah* and the wisdom underlying them; and first of all directions have been laid down for using lawful (*Ḥalāl*) and wholesome (*Ṭayyib*) food, because human actions are governed by man's mental condition and his mental condition is strongly influenced by the food he eats. In the 23rd section substance of Islāmic teaching is given which consists of belief in God, Life after death, revealed Scriptures and Divine Messengers. Doing good to others, worship and contributions to national funds are also mentioned as constituents of righteous conduct. To these, observance of patience under trials and fulfillment of solemn promises are added. Maintenance of justice, legitimate help of relatives and observance of social laws, of which the law of inheritance occupies a most important place, are also regarded as important. In the next section stress is laid on devotional exercises which purpose is fulfilled by the Islāmic Fast. Sections 24th and 25th deal with rites and laws pertaining to Pilgrimage which plays a very important role in bringing about national unity and solidarity among Muslims. In section 26th light is shed on the philosophy of ordinances of *Shariyy'ah* which should be shown due regard because outward acts have a very potent effect on inward purity. Then it is stated that the laws of *Shariyy'ah* are disregarded because men generally do not like to spend their time and money in the cause of God and they adduce lame excuses to shirk their duty in this respect. In fact, no progress is possible without sacrifice and believers are exhorted to spend their hard-earned wealth in the way of Allāh so that full religious freedom may be established. In section 27th we are told that when religious freedom is interfered with, fighting becomes obligatory and sacrifice of life and money necessary. Then it is stated that, in order to while away their time and to seek mental relief, people indulge in drinking, and in order to collect money to meet the expenses of war, they have recourse to gambling. Islām condemns these evil practices. Next, we are told that war leaves behind many orphans who should be properly looked after, and in this connection Muslims are enjoined not to contract marriage with idolatrous women because it is calculated to disturb the harmony of their domestic life. In sections 28th, 29th, 30th, and 31st, we are told not to have sexual intercourse with women in their monthly courses which is a sort of temporary separation. These instructions are followed by laws that govern divorce which is more or less a permanent separation and then by laws that concern suckling and also treatment of widows. Sections 32nd and 33rd deal with principles that have a special bearing on national wakening and by observing which alone a people can make real progress, and Muslims are told that a people who seek to occupy an honored place among the powerful nations must be prepared to face death to promote the cause of truth and righteousness. In section 34th it is mentioned that man's stay on earth is but

temporary and he should spare no effort to establish real connection with the Creator, and this is only possible by deep meditation on Divine attributes. Then in *Āyat al-Kursī* which the Holy Prophet has termed as one of the best and most exalted Qur'ānic verses a brief but very comprehensive mention is made of God's attributes and it is said that no compulsion is needed to exhort a person to establish his connection with the Possessor of such noble and sublime attributes. Then in 35th section it is stated that whereas moral righteousness takes place in an individual directly through God's own grace, moral transformation comes about among nations through the instrumentality of Divine Messengers, and hints that both these kind of reformation are decreed to take place four times among the progeny of Abraham. Next it is said that both collective effort and national cooperation are essential for moral transformation to take place on national scale; the results in this respect of the concerted and collective efforts and mutual cooperation of true believers are far in excess of their sacrifices. Then all transactions based on interest are strictly forbidden and the giving and taking of interest has been denounced as tantamount to waging war against God and His Prophet because transactions based on interest are against the spirit of mutual help and cooperation and of doing good to fellow beings. Muslims are further told that they should entertain no apprehension that no progress is possible without interest. God has decreed that eventually destruction will overtake nations which give or take interest. Next, it is stated that one way of rendering mutual help and cooperation is to advance money on loan but all transactions dealing with lending and borrowing money should be properly written down. The *Sūrah* ends on the beautiful note that whereas the above-mentioned directions are necessary for bringing about moral transformation among a people, the best, the safest and the surest means to raise their moral standard and to effect real and true righteousness and purity of character among them is that they should have firm faith in the Word of God, constantly keep in view, reflect and meditate upon His attributes and should seek Divine help by prayer sincerely offered to him.

This is, in brief, a summary of the subject-matter of this longest of the Qur'ānic *Sūrahs* and the moral is forcefully brought home directly to the disbelievers in general and to the people of the Book in particular that in the Holy Prophet is fulfilled the prayer of the Patriarch Abraham and thus if the Holy Prophet is rejected, Abraham will have to be regarded as a liar and an impostor and consequently the whole Mosaic Dispensation and Christianity also will be dubbed as tissues of lies and falsehoods. Indirectly, the truth of the Message of Islām has been made clear for the whole world to accept because the creation of man possesses a great and sublime object and that object can only be fulfilled by believing in the Message embodied in the Qur'ān which alone now contains the right *Shariyy'ah* and sheds light on the wisdom and philosophy of its ordinances and by believing in and acting upon which alone can purity of the heart and Divine Realization be attained.

## AL-BAQARAH

(Revealed after Hijra)

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.
2. Alif Lām Mīm \*.
3. This is a perfect Book; there is no doubt in it; it is a guidance for the righteous,
4. Who believe in the unseen and ob-serve Prayer, and spend out of what We have provided for them;
5. And who believe in that which has been revealed to thee, and that which was revealed before thee, and they have firm faith in what is yet to come.
6. It is they who follow the guidance of their Lord and it is they who shall prosper.

\* I am Allah, the All-Knowing.

## سورۃ البقرۃ مدنیۃ

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ ۝

(میں پڑھتا ہوں) ساقی (اللہ کے رحمان اور رحیم) کے نام سے

۝ ذٰلِكَ الْكِتٰبُ لَا رَيْبَ ۚ فِيْهِ ۝

الف۔ لام۔ میم یہ کامل کتاب ہے نہیں کوئی شک اس کی بات میں جس میں

هُدًی ۝ لِّلْمُتَّقِیْنَ ۝ ۚ الَّذِیْنَ یُؤْتُوْنَ

ہدایت ہے متقیوں کے لیے وہ جو کہ ایمان لاتے ہیں

بِالْغَیْبِ ۝ وَ یُقِیْمُوْنَ الصَّلٰوةَ ۝ وَ مِمَّا

غیب پر اور قائم کرتے ہیں نماز اور اس سے جو

دَرَقَنَّهُمْ یُنْفِقُوْنَ ۝ ۚ وَالَّذِیْنَ یُؤْتُوْنَ

دیا آنے والے ان کو خرچ کرتے ہیں اور وہ جو کہ ایمان لاتے ہیں

یَعْمٰ اَنْزَلَ اِلَیْكَ وَ مَا اَنْزَلَ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ ۝

اس پر جو آتا رہا تیری طرف اور جو آتا رہا گیا پہلے تجھ سے

وَبِالْآخِرَةِ هُمْ یُوقِنُوْنَ ۝ ۚ اَوَلَمْ یَكْ عَلٰی

اور آخرت پر وہ یقین رکھتے ہیں یہ لوگ

7. Those who have disbelieved—it being equal to them whether thou warn them or warn them not—they will not believe.

8. Allah has set a seal on their hearts and their ears, and over their eyes is a covering; and for them is a great punishment.

R. 2.

9. And of the people there are some who say, 'We believe in Allah and the Last Day;' while they are not believers at all.

10. They would deceive Allah and those who believe, and they deceive none but themselves; only they perceive it not.

11. In their hearts was a disease, and Allah has increased their disease to them; and for them is a grievous punishment because they lied.

12. And when it is said to them: 'Create not disorder on the earth,' they say: 'We are only promoters of peace.'

13. Beware! it is surely they who create disorder, but they do not perceive it.

14. And when it is said to them, 'Believe as *other* people have believed,' they say: 'Shall we believe as the foolish have believed?' Beware! it is surely they that are foolish, but they do not know.

ہدیٰ میں رہتے تھے۔ اور اُنکے ہمہ المفلحون [۱۰] اَلَّذِیْنَ دایت پر ہیں اپنے رب کی اور یہ لوگ ہی کایہ ہونے والے ہیں یقیناً جن لوگوں نے کفر و اسواء علیہم اَنْذَرْتَهُمْ اَمْ لَمْ تُنْذِرْهُمْ لَا

کفر کیا۔ بارہ ہے اُن پر خواہ ڈرایا تو نے اُن کو یا نہ ڈرایا تو نے اُن کو نہیں یومنون [۱۱] ختمہ اللہ علی قلوبہم و علی سموعہم و علی

ایمان لاتے مگر کردی الشریعہ دلوں پر ان کے اور کان پر ان کے اور

ابصارہم غشاۃ و لہم عذاب عظیم [۱۲] و من الناس اعمول پر ان کی پردہ ہے اور ان کے لیے عذاب ہے بڑا اور بعض لوگ

من یقول امنّا باللہ و یا یؤیّر الآخر و ما ہم بمؤمنین [۱۳] ایسے ہیں جو کہتے ہیں کہ ایمان لائے ہم اللہ پر اور آخری دن پر حالانکہ نہیں ہیں وہ بزرگ مومن

یخدعون اللہ و الذین امنوا و ما یخدعون الا انفسہم دھوکا دیتے ہیں اللہ کو اور ان لوگوں کو جو ایمان لائے اور نہیں دھوکا دیتے مگر اپنے آپ کو

و ما یشترون فی قلوبہم مّرض فزادہم اللہ و ما یشعرون [۱۴] فی قلوبہم مّرض، فزادہم اللہ اور نہیں محسوس کرتے دلوں میں ان کے بیماری تھی پھر بڑھا دیا ان کو اللہ نے

مّرضاً و لہم عذاب الیم [۱۵] کاٹنا کاناؤ ایکذیون [۱۶] بیماری میں اور ان کے لیے عذاب ہے دردناک بسبب اُن کے کہ تجھے وہ بھڑت ہوتے اور

اذا قیل لہم لا تُفسدوا فی الارض قالوا اتما نحن جب کہا جاتا ہے ان کو کہ نہ فساد کرو زمین میں کہتے ہیں سوائے اُن کے کہ نہیں کوہر

مضلحون [۱۷] لا اتہم ہمہ المفسدون و لکن لا اصلاح کرنے والے ہیں اگاہ ہوجاؤ یقیناً یہ ہی مفسد ہیں و لیکن نہیں

یشعرون [۱۸] و اذا قیل لہم امنوا کما امن الناس محسوس کرتے اور جب کہا جاتا ہے ان کو کہ ایمان لاؤ جیسا کہ ایمان لائے لوگ (تو)

قالوا اتؤمن کما امن السفہاء و الا نھم ہم کہتے ہیں کیا ہم ایمان لادیں جیسا کہ ایمان لائے ہیں بے وقوف اگاہ ہوجاؤ یہ ہی

15. And when they meet those who believe, they say: 'We believe;' but when they are alone with their ringleaders, they say: 'We are certainly with you; we are only mocking.'

16. Allah will punish their mockery and will let them continue in their transgression, wandering blindly.

17. These are they who have taken error in exchange for guidance; but their traffic has brought them no gain, nor are they rightly guided.

18. Their case is like the case of a person who kindled a fire, and when it lighted up all around him, Allah took away their light and left them in thick darkness; they see not.

19. *They are* deaf, dumb *and* blind; so they will not return.

20. Or it is like a heavy rain from the clouds, wherein is thick darkness and thunder and lightning; they put their fingers into their ears because of the thunder-claps for fear of death, and Allah encompasses the disbelievers.

السُّفَهَاءَ وَلَكِنْ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴿١٣﴾ وَإِذْ اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ

لے دو قوت میں و یکن نہیں جانتے اور جب یہ ملتے ہیں ان لوگوں کو جو

اُمَنُوا قَالُوا آمَنَّا بِهِ وَإِذْ آخَلُوا إِلَىٰ شَيْطَانِزِهِمْ قَالُوا إِنَّا

ایمان لائے کہتے ہیں ایمان لائے ہم اور جب ایک دوسرے میں اپنے شیطانوں کی طرف سے کہتے ہیں ہم

مَعَكُمْ إِنَّمَا نَحْنُ مُسْتَهْزَؤُونَ ﴿١٤﴾ اللَّهُ يَسْتَهْزِئُ بِسُوءِ

ساتھی ملنے ملے اس کے نہیں کہ تم ہستی کرنے والے ہیں اللہ ہنسی کی بڑا دے گا انہیں

وَيَمْدُكُمْ فِي طُغْيَانِهِمْ يَعْمَهُوْنَ ﴿١٥﴾ أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ

اور مدد دے گا ان کو اپنی سرکشی میں بھٹک رہے ہیں یہ لوگ وہ ہیں جنہوں نے

اشْتَرَوْا الضَّلَالَةَ بِالْهُدَىٰ ۖ فَمَا كَارِبَتْ تِلْكَ رَتْبًا رَّتْهُمْ وَ

خریدی گراہی مددے ہدایت کے پس نہ بچ دیا تجارت نے ان کی اور

مَا كَانُوا مُهْتَدِينَ ﴿١٦﴾ مَثَلُهُمْ كَمَثَلِ الَّذِي اسْتَوْقَدَ

نہ ہوتے وہ ہدایت پالنے والے حالت ان کی مانند حالت ہیں شخص کی ہے جس نے جلائی

نَارًا ۖ فَلَمَّا أَضَاءَتْ مَا حَوْلَهُ ذَهَبَ اللَّهُ بِنُورِهِمْ وَ

آگ ، پھر شیب روشنی کیا اس آگ نے اپنے جور اور دکھائے لے گیا اللہ نور ان کا اور

تَرَكَهُمْ فِي ظُلُمٍ لَا يَبْصُرُونَ ﴿١٧﴾ صُمُّكُمْ بَعْضُهُمْ

چھوڑ دیا ان کو اندھروں میں کہ نہیں دیکھتے وہ ہر قسم کی گونگی ہیں اور عیس ہیں پس وہ

لَا يَرْجِعُونَ ﴿١٨﴾ وَكَصَّبَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ فِيهِ ظُلُمٌ

نہیں رجوع کرتے یا مانند بارش کی بادل سے کراہیں اندھیرے ہیں

وَرَعْدٌ مِّمَّنْ يَنْجَعُونَ أَصَابَ يَعْصِمُ فِي إِذْ أَنِمْ مِّنْ

اور لوگ اور چمک ہے ڈالتے ہیں انگلیاں اپنی کانوں میں اپنے

الصَّوَاعِقِ حَذَرَ الْمَوْتِ ۚ وَاللَّهُ مُحِيطٌ بِالْكَافِرِينَ ﴿١٩﴾

بلیوں کے سبب ڈرتے موت کے اور اللہ گھیرنے والا ہے کافروں کو

يَكَادُ الْبَرْقُ يَخْطَفُ أَبْصَارَهُمْ كُلَّمَا أَضَاءَ لَهُمْ

قریب ہے چمک کراچمک لے ان کی جب کبھی وہ روشنی ہوتی ہے ان کے لیے

21. The lightning might well-nigh snatch away their sight; whenever it shines upon them, they walk therein; and when it becomes dark to them, they stand still. And if Allah willed, He could take away their hearing and their sight; surely, Allah has the power to do all that He wills.

R. 3.

22. O ye men, worship your Lord Who created you and those who were before you, that you may become righteous;

23. Who made the earth a bed for you, and the heaven a roof, and caused water to come down from the clouds and thereby brought forth fruits for your sustenance. Set not up, therefore, equals to Allah, while you know.

24. And if you are in doubt as to what We have sent down to Our servant, then produce a Chapter like it, and call upon your helpers beside Allah, if you are truthful.

25. But if you do *it* not – and never shall you do *it* – then guard against the Fire, whose fuel is men and stones, *which is* prepared for the disbelievers.

26. And give glad tidings to those who believe and do good works, that for them are Gardens beneath which flow streams.

مَسْئُورًا فِيهِ، وَلَا آَظْلَمَ عَلَيْهِ قَامُوا، وَلَوْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ  
پہل پہل نہیں اس میں اور جب اندھرا کرتی ہے ان پر غمر جلتی ہے اور اگر چاہے اللہ  
لَذَهَبَ بِسَمْعِهِمْ وَأَبْصَارِهِمْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ  
تو لے جاوے کان ان کے اور آنکھیں ان کی یقیناً اللہ ہر بات پر قدرت  
قَدِيرٌ يَرِيًّا لَهَا الثَّامِسُ عَبْدٌ وَإِرْبَكُمْ الَّتِي خَلَقَكُمْ  
رکھنے والا ہے۔ اے لوگو عبادت کرو رب اپنے کی وہ میں نے پیدا کیا تم کو  
وَالَّذِينَ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَتَّقُونَ [۱۱] لَئِنْ جَعَلْتُ لَكُمْ  
اور انہیں جو پہلے تھے تم سے [۱۱] متقی بنو وہ میں نے بنایا تمہارے لیے  
الْأَرْضَ فِرَاشًا وَالسَّمَاءَ بَنَاءً وَأَنْزَلَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً  
زمین کو بچھونا اور آسمان کو چھت اور آمارا بادل سے پانی  
فَأَخْرَجَ مِنْهَا النَّسْرَاتِ رِزْقًا لَكُمْ، فَلَا تَجْعَلُوا لِلَّهِ  
پھر نکالے اس کے ذریعہ پھلوں سے رزق تمہارے لیے، پس نہ بناؤ اللہ کے  
أَنَادَا أَأَنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ [۱۲] وَإِنْ كُنْتُمْ فِي رَيْبٍ مِمَّا  
شریک اور تم جانتے ہو اور اگر ہو تم کسی شک میں متقی اے  
نَزَّلْنَا عَلَى عَبْدِنَا فَأْتُوا بِسُورَةٍ مِثْلِهِ مَادَّعُوا  
جو آمارا تم نے بندہ پر اپنے کو لاؤ کوئی سورۃ مانند اس کی اور بلاؤ  
شَهَادَةً لَكُمْ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ ضَرِيقِينَ [۱۳] فَإِنْ  
میں دلوں کو اپنے سوا اللہ کے اگر ہو تم بچتے پھر اگر  
لَمْ تَفْعَلُوا وَلَكِنْ تَفْعَلُوا فَأْذَنُوا بِالنَّارِ الَّتِي وَقُودُهَا  
نہ کیا تم نے (ایسا) اور ہرگز نہیں کو گئے تم (ایسا) تو زود اس آگ سے ایندھن جس کا  
النَّارُ وَالْجِبَارُ أَعْدَادٌ لِلْكَافِرِينَ [۱۴] وَبَشِّرِ  
آگمی اور پتھر ہیں تیار کی گئی ہے کافروں کے لیے اور بشارت دے  
الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ أَنَّ لَهُمْ جَنَّاتٍ تَجْرِي  
ان کو گوں کو جو ایمان لائے اور کیں انہوں نے نیکیاں کہ ان کے لیے باغات ہیں بہتی

Whenever they are given a portion of fruit therefrom, they will say: 'This is what was given us before,' and gifts mutually resembling shall be brought to them. And they will have therein mates perfectly pure, and therein will they abide.

27. Allah disdains not to give an illustration as small as a gnat or even smaller. Those who believe know that it is the truth from their Lord, while those who disbelieve say: 'What does Allah mean by such an illustration?' Many does He adjudge by it to be erring and many by it does He guide, and none does He adjudge thereby to be erring except the disbeliever,

28. Who break the covenant of Allah after having established it, and cut asunder what Allah has bidden to be joined, and create disorder in the earth; it is these that are the losers.

29. How can you disbelieve in Allah? When you were without life, He gave you life, and then He will cause you to die, then restore you to life, and then to Him shall you be made to return.

مِنْ تَحْتِهَا لَا تَهْرِ كَلِمًا رَزَقُوا مِنْهَا مِنْ قَمَرٍ

نیچے جن کے نہیں جب کبھی دیئے جاویں گے ان باتوں سے کوئی بھل نظر

رَزَقًا، قَالُوا هَذَا الَّذِي رَزَقْنَا مِنْ قَبْلُ وَأَمْثُلُ بِهِ

رزق کے کہیں گے یہ وہ ہے جو دیا گیا ہے پہلے (دجی) اور ان کو دیا جاوے گا

مُتَشَابِهًا وَلَهُمْ فِيهَا أَزْوَاجٌ مُطَهَّرَةٌ وَهُمْ فِيهَا

وہ رزق (مقامات) اور ان کے لیے ان ہیں پوری ہیں پاکیزہ اور وہ ان میں

خِلْدٌ وَتَزَاوَرُ اللَّهُ لَا يَسْتَخِي أَنْ يُضْرِبَ مَثَلًا مَّا

دہرے والے ہیں۔ یقیناً اللہ نہیں رکتا کہ بیان کرے مثال کوئی سی

يَعُوْصَةً فَمَا فَوْقَهَا، فَأَمَّا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا فَيَعْلَمُون

پہچھتی رہا، پھر اس کی جو مثال ہواں سے پس جو لوگ ایمان لائے تو جانتے ہیں

أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ وَأَمَّا الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا فَيَقُولُوا

کہ وہ حق ہے ان کے رب کی طرف سے، اور جو لوگ کافر ہوئے تو کہتے ہیں

مَا آدَاءَ اللَّهُ بِهَذَا مَثَلًا يُضِلُّ بِهِ كَثِيرًا وَيَهْدِي

کیا ارادہ کیا اللہ نے اس کے ساتھ بطور مثال کے گواہ کرتا ہے ہتوں کو اور ہدایت دیتا ہے

بِهِ كَثِيرًا، وَمَا يُضِلُّ بِهِ إِلَّا الْفَاسِقِينَ الَّذِينَ

ساتھ کے ہتوں کو اور نہیں گمراہ کرتا ساتھ اس کے مکر فاسقوں کو وہ جو کہ

يَنْقُضُونَ عَهْدَ اللَّهِ مِنْ بَعْدِ مِيثَاقِهِ وَيَقْطَعُونَ

توڑتے ہیں عہد اللہ کے بعد اس کے پختہ کرنے کے اور کاٹتے ہیں اس

مَا آمَرَ اللَّهُ بِهِ أَنْ يُوْصَلَ وَيُفْسِدُونَ فِي الْأَرْضِ،

(حق) کو حکم کی طرف جسے سفارش کرتا ہے اور فساد کرتے ہیں زمین میں

أُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْخَاسِرُونَ كَيْفَ تَكْفُرُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَكُنْتُمْ

یہ لوگ ہی نقصان اٹھانے والے ہیں۔ کس طرح انکار کرتے ہو تم اللہ کا حال کا تھے تم

أَمْ أُنِيعَ قُلُوبُكُمْ ثُمَّ يُمِيشْكُمْ ثُمَّ يُغَيِّبُكُمْ ثُمَّ إِلَيْهِ

یہ جان پھر اس نے زندہ کیا تم کو پھر موت دے گا تم کو پھر زندہ کرے گا تم پھر طرف الکل



30. He it is Who created for you all that is in the earth; then He turned towards the heavens, and He perfected them as seven heavens; and He knows all things.

**R. 4.**

31. And when thy Lord said to the angels: 'I am about to place a vicegerent in the earth,' they said: 'Wilt Thou place there in such as will cause disorder in it, and shed blood?—and we glorify Thee with Thy praise and extol Thy holiness.' He answered: 'I know what you know not.'

32. And He taught Adam all the names, then He put *the objects* of these *names* before the angels and said: 'Tell Me the names of these, if you are right.'

33. They said: 'Holy art Thou! No knowledge have we except what Thou hast taught us; surely, Thou art the All-Knowing, the Wise.'

34. He said: 'O Adam, tell them their names;' and when he had told them their names, He said: 'Did I not say to you, I know the secrets of the heavens and of the earth, and I know what you reveal and what you conceal?'

تَرْجِعُوْنَ ۝ هُوَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ لَكُمْ مَآ فِي الْأَرْضِ جَمِيعًا ۚ ثُمَّ اسْتَوَىٰ إِلَى السَّمَاءِ فَسَوَّاهُنَّ سَبْعَ سَمَوَاتٍ ۚ وَهُوَ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عَلِيمٌ ۝ ١٢ ۝

پھر تفصیلاً آسمان کا پھر ٹھیک ٹھاک بنایا انہیں سات آسمان اور ہر ایک چیز کو خوب جاننے والا ہے اور جب کہا تیرے رب نے فرشتوں کو کہیں بنائے والا ہوں زمین میں ایک غیب انہوں نے کہا کیا تو بناوے گا اس میں جو بفسد و فساد و بے وفائی کا ماحول ہے و نحن نسیہم خدا کرے گا اس میں اور ہمارے کا خون اور ہم تسبیح کرتے ہیں بحمدک و نعتہ س لک، قال ربی اعلم ما لا تعلمون ۝ ۱۳ ۝

ساتھ بڑی حمد کے اور ہم تقدیس کرتے ہیں تیرے فرمایا یقیناً میں خوب جانوں جو تم جانتے و علمہ اذ لا سماء کلہا ثم عر ضہم علی الملائکۃ

اور کھلائے اس لئے آدم کو نام مسکے جب پھر پیش کیا ان کو فرشتوں پر فقال انبیؤنی یا سماء ہوا اذ لان گنتہ صر قیین ۝ ۱۴ ۝

پھر فرمایا بتاؤ مجھے نام ان کے اگر ہوتے سکتے قالوا سمیخندک لا علم لنا لا ما علمتمنا ۝ انک انت انہوں نے کہا کہ تو نہیں کوئی علم ہم کو سوائے اس کے جو سکھایا تو نے نہیں یقیناً تو ہی العلمیم الحکیم ۝ ۱۵ ۝ قال یا مانیہم یا سماء

خوب جاننے والا حکمت والا ہے فرمایا اسے آدم بتا انہیں نام ان کے فلما اتبأ ہم یا سماء لہم قال الم اقل لکم انی

پھر جب بتائے انہیں نام ان کے فرمایا کہ تمہیں نے تم کو کہیں اعلم غیب السموات و الارض و اعلم ما نبئون

جانتا ہوں غیب آسمانوں کا اور زمین کا اور میں جانتا ہوں جو ظاہر کرتے ہو تم



35. And remember the time when We said to the angels: 'Submit to Adam,' and they all submitted. But Iblis did not. He refused and was too proud; and he was of the disbelievers.

36. And We said: 'O Adam, dwell thou and thy wife in the garden, and eat therefrom plentifully wherever you will, but approach not this tree, lest you be of the wrongdoers.'

37. But Satan caused them both to slip by means of it and drove them out of the state in which they were. And We said: 'Go forth; some of you are enemies of others, and for you there is an abode in the earth and a provision for a time.'

38. Then Adam learnt from his Lord certain words of prayer. So He turned towards him with mercy. Surely, He is Oft-Returning with compassion, and is Merciful.

39. We said: 'Go forth, all of you, from here. And if there comes to you guidance from Me, then whoso shall follow My guidance, on them shall come no fear, nor shall they grieve.'

40. But they who will disbelieve and treat Our Signs as lies, these shall be the inmates of the Fire; therein shall they abide.

وَمَا كُنْتُمْ تَكْتُمُونَ ﴿٣٥﴾ وَإِذْ قُلْنَا لِلْمَلَائِكَةِ اسْجُدُوا

اور جو ہو تم : تمھانے اور جب کہا ہم نے فرشتوں کو سجدہ کرو

لَا دِفْءَ فَسَجَدُوا إِلَّا إِبْلِيسَ أَبَىٰ وَاسْتَكْبَرَ وَكَانَ

آدم کو میں سجدہ کیا انہوں نے سوائے ابلیس کے اس نے انکار کیا اور تکبر کیا اور ہو گیا

مِنَ الْكَافِرِينَ ﴿٣٦﴾ وَقُلْنَا يَا آدَمُ اسْكُنْ أَنتَ وَزَوْجُكَ

کافروں میں سے اور کہا ہم نے آدمؑ تو اور بیوی تیری

الْجَنَّةَ وَكُلَا مِنْهَا رَغَدًا حَيْثُ شِئْتُمَا وَلَا تَقْرَبَا

اس باغ میں اور کھاؤ دونوں اس میں سے بازغت جہاں چاہو تم اور قریب جانا

هَذِهِ الشَّجَرَةَ فَتَكُونَا مِنَ الظَّالِمِينَ ﴿٣٧﴾ قَالَ لَهُمَا

اس درخت کے درجہ بھاؤ گے ظالموں سے پھر پھسلا یا ان کو

الشَّيْطَانُ عَنْهَا قَاتِلَا جَهَنَّمَ وَمَا كَانَ فِيهِمَا

شیطان نے اس سے پھر نکالا ان کو اس سے کہتے وہ جہنم میں اور کہا ہم نے

أَهْبِطُوا بَعْضُكُمْ لِبَعْضٍ عَدُوٌّ وَلَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ

اترو بعض تمہارا بعض کے لیے دشمن ہے اور تمہارے لیے زمینیں نظرنا

وَمَتَاعٌ إِلَىٰ حِينٍ ﴿٣٨﴾ فَتَلَقَىٰ آدَمُ رَبَّهُ فَكَلِمَتٍ قَتَابَ

اور تادمہ تھا اسے ایک مدت تک پھر کیجیے آدمؑ نے رب اپنے سے چند کلمات پھر نقل کے ساتھ

عَلَيْهِمْ رَأْسَهُ هُوَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيمُ ﴿٣٩﴾ قُلْنَا اهْبِطُوا

ترجمہ ہوا کہ اے ابلیس! وہ ہی نقل کیا تھا ترجمہ بزوال بہت رحمت کرنے والا ہے کہا ہم نے اترو

مِنْهَا جَمِيعًا فَإِمَّا يَأْتِيَنَّكُمْ مِنِّي هُدًى فَمَنْ تَبِعَ

اس سے سب کے سب پھر اگر آئے تمہارے پاس میری طرف سے کوئی ہدایت سو جنہوں نے پیروی کی

هُدَايَ فَلَا خَوْفَ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُونَ ﴿٤٠﴾ وَالَّذِينَ

میری ہدایت کی تو نہیں خوف ان پر وہ غمگین ہوں گے اور جن لوگوں نے

كَفَرُوا وَكَانُوا يُبَيِّنُونَ بَيْنَكَ وَبَيْنَ النَّارِ هُمْ

کفر کیا اور جھگڑایا ہماری آیتوں کو یہ لوگ ایک واسطے ہیں وہ

كَفَرُوا وَكَانُوا يُبَيِّنُونَ بَيْنَكَ وَبَيْنَ النَّارِ هُمْ

کفر کیا اور جھگڑایا ہماری آیتوں کو یہ لوگ ایک واسطے ہیں وہ

كَفَرُوا وَكَانُوا يُبَيِّنُونَ بَيْنَكَ وَبَيْنَ النَّارِ هُمْ

کفر کیا اور جھگڑایا ہماری آیتوں کو یہ لوگ ایک واسطے ہیں وہ

R. 5.

41. O children of Israel! remember My favour which I bestowed upon you, and fulfil your covenant with Me, I will fulfil My covenant with you, and Me alone should you fear.

42. And believe in what I have sent down which fulfils that which is with you, and be not the first to disbelieve therein, and barter not My Signs for a paltry price, and take protection in Me alone.

43. And confound not truth with falsehood nor hide the truth, knowingly.

44. And observe Prayer and pay the Zakāt, and bow down with those who bow.

45. Do you enjoin others to do what is good and forget your own selves, while you read the Book? Will you not then understand?

46. And seek help with patience and Prayer; and this indeed is hard except for the humble in spirit,

47. Who know for certain that they will meet their Lord, and that to Him will they return.

فِيهَا خَلِيدٌ وَنُوحٌ ابْنُ نِيْلٍ إِسْرَءِيلُ إِذْ كُرُوا نَعْمَتِي

میں رہنے والے ہیں اے بنی اسرائیل یاد کرو نعمت میری

الَّتِي أَنْعَمْتُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَأَوْفُوا بِعَهْدِي أَوْفٍ بَعْدَكُمْ

وہ جو انعام کی میں نے تم پر اور پورا کرو میرے ساتھ کئے ہوئے عہد کو پورا رکھا تھا میرے ساتھ کئے

وَلَا تَأْيِسُوا قَارِئِينَ هَؤُلَاءِ وَأَوْفُوا بِعَهْدِي أَوْفٍ بَعْدَكُمْ

ہوئے جو کہ اور بھی سے ہیں دُرد اور ایمان لاؤ اس پر جو اُنہا میں نے مصدق بنا کر

لَمَّا مَعَكُمْ وَلَا تَكُونُوا أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَشْتَرُوا

اس کا جو تمہارے پاس ہے اور نہ ہو جاؤ پہلے کافر اس کے اور نہ خریدو

بِآيَاتِي ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا زَوَايَايَ فَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَلَا تَلْبِسُوا

میرے آیتوں کے محل تھوڑا اور بھیجے سے پس دُرد اور نہ ملاؤ

الْحَقَّ بِالْبَاطِلِ وَتَكُونُوا أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَكُونُوا

حق کو ساتھ باطل کے اور نہ چھپاؤ حق اور تم نہ جانتے ہو

أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَكُونُوا أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَكُونُوا

پہلے کافر اس کے اور نہ ہو جاؤ پہلے کافر اس کے اور نہ خریدو

بِآيَاتِي ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا زَوَايَايَ فَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَلَا تَلْبِسُوا

میرے آیتوں کے محل تھوڑا اور بھیجے سے پس دُرد اور نہ ملاؤ

الْحَقَّ بِالْبَاطِلِ وَتَكُونُوا أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَكُونُوا

حق کو ساتھ باطل کے اور نہ چھپاؤ حق اور تم نہ جانتے ہو

أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَكُونُوا أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَكُونُوا

پہلے کافر اس کے اور نہ ہو جاؤ پہلے کافر اس کے اور نہ خریدو

بِآيَاتِي ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا زَوَايَايَ فَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَلَا تَلْبِسُوا

میرے آیتوں کے محل تھوڑا اور بھیجے سے پس دُرد اور نہ ملاؤ

الْحَقَّ بِالْبَاطِلِ وَتَكُونُوا أَوَّلَ كَافِرٍ بِهِ وَلَا تَكُونُوا

حق کو ساتھ باطل کے اور نہ چھپاؤ حق اور تم نہ جانتے ہو

## CHAPTER 3

### ĀL ‘IMRĀN (Revealed after Hijrah)

#### *Connection with the Preceding Sūrah*

There exists such a deep and far-reaching connection between this *Sūrah* and the preceding one, Al-Baqarah, that the two are called Al-Zahrāwān (The Two Bright Ones). whereas Al-Baqarah deals with the wrong beliefs and evil practices of the Jews with whom began the Mosaic Dispensation, the present *Sūrah* deals mainly with the wrong doctrines and dogmas of Christianity which subject constitutes its culmination. The *Sūrah* is named Āl ‘Imrān (The Family of ‘Imrān). ‘Imrān or ‘Amrān was the father of Moses and Aaron, the progenitors of the family from which sprang Mary, the mother of Jesus, brief account of whose life and mission is given in this *Sūrah*. Being closely connected with Al-Baqarah, the *Sūrah* may be safely supposed to have been revealed immediately after it. A detailed mention of the Battle of Uhud places its revelation in the third year of the Hijrah.

Āl ‘Imrān has a two fold connection with Al-Baqarah. First there subsists a strong and deep link between the subject-matter of the whole of this *Sūrah* and that of the whole of *Sūrah* Al-Baqarah, and another link equally strong between the concluding portion of Al-Baqarah and the opening verses of this *Sūrah*. In fact, the order in the Qur’ān is of two kinds. Either, the topic with which one Chapter is concluded is continued in the following Chapter, or the whole of the subject-matter of the preceding Chapter is referred to in the next. This twofold connection also exists between Al-Baqarah and Āl ‘Imrān. The connection of the whole subject-matter of Āl ‘Imrān with that of Al-Baqarah mainly consists in a description of the causes that led to the transfer of Prophethood from the Mosaic to Islāmic Dispensation. This was the main theme of Al-Baqarah, and in explanation of it the degenerate condition of the Jews was dealt with at some length in that *Sūrah*. But in Al-Baqarah very little light was shed on Christianity, in which culminated the Mosaic Dispensation. This mission could have given rise to the seemingly legitimate doubt that through Judaism which constituted the beginning of the Mosaic Dispensation had become corrupt, its culmination, the Christian Faith, was still pure; and hence, apparently there was no necessity of introducing and establishing a new religion - Islām. To remove this doubt, the hollowness of the Christian dogmas has been exposed in the present *Sūrah*.

#### *Title*

The *Sūrah* is known by several names in the Ḥadith, i.e., Al-Zahrā (The Bright One), Al-Amān (The peace), Al-Kanz (The treasure), Al-Mu‘īnah (The Helper), Al-Mujādalah (The Pleading), Al-Istighfār (The Seeking of Forgiveness) and Al-Ṭayyibah (The Pure).

As the falsity of Christian doctrines is sought to be established in this Chapter it rightly opens with the hint that as Christianity had become corrupt and degenerate, it could not prove a bar to the introduction of a new and better Dispensation. On the contrary, Christianity itself constituted a strong testimony to the need for the introduction of a new Law. Consequently, the Divine attributes - the Living, the Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining have been placed in the very beginning of this *Sūrah* to repudiate the Christian basic doctrines. The other connection between the two *Sūrah*, viz., that of the concluding portion of Al-Baqarah with the opening words of this *Sūrah* is apparent from the fact that Al-Baqarah had concluded with a prayer from national regeneration and reformation of Muslims and the triumph of Islām over its enemies, and the Divine attributes - the Living, the Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining have been placed in the beginning of the present *Sūrah* to assure Muslims that God will certainly come to their aid because He being the Living, the Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining, His power knows no weakening or diminution.

### ***Subject-Matter***

The *Sūrah*, like the preceding one, opens with the abbreviated latter, Alif Lām Mīm, (I am Allāh, the All-Knowing), which are intended to draw attention to the Divine attributes of knowledge; and, mention of the attributes, the Living, the Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining is meant to point out that in this *Sūrah* the Divine attribute of knowledge has been substantiated by God's attributes, the Living, the Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining, i.e., the fact that God is Living, Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining constitutes proof of His being All-Knowing, because death and decay are the result of lack of knowledge. The *Sūrah* proceeds to say that, as Jews and Christians have strayed away from the right path, Divine punishment will overtake them, and their being the followers of Torah and the Gospels will not save them from God's punishment, because these Books have been abrogated and, therefore, are unable to satisfy human needs and requirements. After this it tells Muslims to banish all doubt or misgiving from their minds that, in view of the numerical superiority of Jews and Christians and the preponderance of the material means at their disposal, they would not prevail against the latter, because God has already granted them predominance over their more powerful enemies, the Quraish and other infidel tribes of Arabia. The same Phenomenon will be replaced now. Moreover, national victories do not result solely from the preponderance of material means but primarily and very largely from the superiority of national morals. And final victory will come to Muslims because, though they lack material means, they are in possession of ample moral and spiritual means and because also they follow a true religion.

Next, the *Sūrah* proceeds to disabuse the minds of the enemies of Islām of the fondly-held illusion that their national usage and customs are superior to those of Muslims. Further, they are told that by holding wrong beliefs and restoring to evil practices they appear to ignore the law of cause and effect which cannot be flouted with impunity. The *Sūrah* then develops the subject that the path to progress and prosperity for Muslims does not lie in imitating other peoples' ways and manners but

in strictly following Islām and the Holy Prophet. After this a clear and detailed exposition of the real subject is taken in hand with a brief reference to the beginnings of Christianity, refutation of which is one of its main themes. Then attention of the People of the Book is drawn to the fact that when Muslims also believe in the truth of the Divine origin and source of their Faith, why should they fritter away their energies and resources in fighting with them; instead both should combine to preach to infidels the doctrine of the Oneness of God, on which they agree, and should keep within proper bounds their respective doctrinal differences. The Christians, then, are particularly warned that they cannot hope to continue to be the "Chosen Ones" of God and retain His grace and love if they refuse to accept the new Faith; they are asked how, after having already subscribed to the doctrine that Truth has always been revealed by God from time to time, can they with justification defy this principle? It is further stated that matters regarding which the People of the Book dispute and quarrel with Muslims are not of much weight, because originally some of them were regarded as permissible by their own forefathers. The subject is further developed that Muslims and Jews have a meeting-point in Abraham, and since it was Abraham who laid the foundations of the *Ka'bah*, why should the Israelites quarrel with Muslims on the basis of fancied and insubstantial differences? Then a note of warning is sounded to Muslims that the People of the Book have gone so far in opposition to them that, if the latter had their way, they would certainly lead them astray. But Muslims will not go astray because they are the recipients of God's favor. They will meet strong opposition and persecution from them which they should endure with steadfastness and should try to strengthen their connection with God and establish their mutual relations on a firmer basis because they will soon need to develop a united front when confronted with a severe attack from Christians. Before that time comes they should add to their numbers by conveying the message of Islām to as many people as they possibly can. They are further warned against harboring the delusion that, in the event of their fight with Christians, the Jews would help them. On the contrary, the latter would spare no pains to harass and oppress them. In spite of this warning against the Jews the *Sūrah* does not fail to recognize the good wherever it is found and says that all the People of the Book are not bad. There are also good people among them, but only those, who entertain bad designs against Islām, will come to grief. It is these with whom the Muslims should eschew all friendly contact to avoid being influenced by the latter's undesirable morals.

Then a brief reference is made to the Battle of Badr. The muslims are told that just as in extremely adverse circumstances God protected and helped them against very heavy odds in that encounter and vouchsafed to them a clear victory over the idolaters of Mecca, the same will happen with regard to the People of the Book; God's mercy and grace will accompany them in opposition to the latter. The People of the Book depend for their power and material might on transactions based on interest. But the taking and giving of interest runs counter to the good morals. By taking interest they oppose God's servants and by subscribing to the doctrine of Atonement and the dogma of the non-acceptance of repentance they declare God to be cruel like themselves. The believers are further enjoined to do their duty, make suitable

sacrifices and employ properly the material means at their disposal, leaving the rest to God for the success of their life's mission. The *Sūrah* then enunciates a very sound principle, viz., that the Holy Prophet is but a Divine Messenger; if he should die or be killed in a battle (though in conformity with Divine promise this would never happen), Muslims should not lose heart and should entertain no doubt about the truth of Islām because Islām relies for its success and prosperity on no individual however exalted. Another rule of conduct to be observed in time of war is that the leaders of Muslims should behave with greater leniency than in ordinary times towards other Muslims and should have proper regard for their susceptibilities, so that the enemy may not get an opportunity to create discord and dissension among them. It is further enjoined that at such time all matters should be decided after mutual consultation. Then, Muslims are reminded of the great Good God has done to them in that He has raised for them a great Messenger. They should follow him and eschew the path of the disturbers of peace. The *Sūrah* lays down the principle, viz., that those, who die while fighting for the cause of Truth, are entitled to special respect. By their death they receive eternal life and inspire their community, as it were, with a new life. Again reference is made to the People of the Book saying that morally they have become so depraved that, while, on the one hand, they claim to be God's "Own Chosen People", on the other, they are commanded to give their allegiance only to that Messenger who should demand the greatest sacrifice of them. The *Sūrah* says that such Messengers did appear among them, but they refused to accept them. Next, the theme of sacrifices is developed and believers are told that it would be foolish on their part to be afraid of making sacrifices for national cause. They are then warned that their faith will be put to a severe test. They should not think that they will achieve success without passing through fire and blood. In next few verses some special qualities and characteristics of true believers are mentioned and they are taught certain prayers which are essential for national progress and prosperity. The *Sūrah* concludes with rules of conduct by observing which Muslims can achieve success and predominance in this life and pleasure of God in the next.

## AL-'IMRĀN

(Revealed after Hijra)

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.
2. Alif Lām Mīm\*.
3. Allah is He beside Whom there is no God, the Living, the Self-Subsisting and All-Sustaining.
4. He has sent down to thee the Book containing the truth *and* fulfilling that which precedes it; and He sent down the Torah and the Gospel before *this*, as a guidance to the people; and He has sent down the Discrimination.
5. Surely, those who deny the Signs of Allah shall have a severe punishment. And Allah is Mighty, Possessor of the power to requite.

\* I am Allah, the All-Knowing.

## سُورَةُ آلِ عِمْرَانَ مَدَنِيَّةٌ

### بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

(پہلے پڑھتا ہوں) ساتھ نام اللہ کے (رحمٰن اور رحیم ہے)

الْقَوْلُ اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْحَيُّ الْقَيُّومُ ۝ نَزَلَ عَلَيْكَ

الْكِتَابُ بِالْحَقِّ مُصَدِّقًا لِمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ وَأَنزَلَ

التَّوْرَةَ وَالْإِنْجِيلَ ۝ لِمَن قَبْلُ هُدًى لِّلنَّاسِ وَ

تَوْرَاتِ ۝ أَوَّلُ نَجْمٍ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

يَقِينًا ۝ جَن لَّكَ لُكُوفٌ ۝ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

يَقِينًا ۝ جَن لَّكَ لُكُوفٌ ۝ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

يَقِينًا ۝ جَن لَّكَ لُكُوفٌ ۝ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

يَقِينًا ۝ جَن لَّكَ لُكُوفٌ ۝ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

يَقِينًا ۝ جَن لَّكَ لُكُوفٌ ۝ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

يَقِينًا ۝ جَن لَّكَ لُكُوفٌ ۝ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

يَقِينًا ۝ جَن لَّكَ لُكُوفٌ ۝ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

أَنزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ۝ إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ لَهُمْ

عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ۝

6. Surely, nothing in the earth or in the heaven is hidden from Allah.

7. He it is Who fashions you in the wombs as He wills; there is no God but He, the Mighty, the Wise.

8. He it is Who has sent down to thee the Book; in it there are verses that are decisive in meaning – they are the basis of the Book – and there are others that are susceptible of different interpretations. But those in whose hearts is perversity pursue such thereof as are susceptible of different interpretations, seeking discord and seeking *wrong* interpretation of it. And none knows its *right* interpretation except Allah and those who are firmly grounded in knowledge; they say, 'We believe in it; the whole is from our Lord.' – And none heed except those gifted with understanding. –

9. 'Our Lord, let not our hearts become perverse after Thou hast guided us; and bestow on us mercy from Thyself; surely, Thou alone art the Bestower.

10. 'Our Lord, Thou wilt certainly assemble mankind together on the Day about which there is no doubt; surely, Allah breaks not *His* promise.'

عَذَابٌ شَدِيدٌ ۚ وَاللَّهُ عَزِيزٌ ذَا نِقْمٍ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا

غَدَابَ ۚ سَخِرَ اللَّهُ غَالِبًا (اور) انتقام لینے والا ہے یقیناً اللہ بڑے گنہگار

يَخْفَى عَلَيْهِ شَيْءٌ فِي الْأَرْضِ وَلَا فِي السَّمَاءِ ۚ هُوَ الَّذِي

خَفِيَ اس پر کوئی چیز زمین میں اور آسمان میں وہی ہے جو

يُصَوِّرُكُمْ فِي الْأَرْحَامِ وَيَكْفِيكَ يَشَاءُ ۚ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْعَزِيزُ

مہربان بناتا ہے تمہاری رگوں میں جس طرح چاہے نہیں کوئی خدا مگر وہی عزت والا

الْحَكِيمُ ۚ هُوَ الَّذِي أَنْزَلَ عَلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ مِنْهُ آيَاتٌ

محکمات والا ہے مہربان ہے جس نے اتاری تجھ پر وہ کتاب کہ بعض اس سے آیتیں ہیں

مُحْكَمَاتٌ هُنَّ أُمُّ الْكِتَابِ وَأَخَرُ مُتَشَابِهَاتٌ ۚ فَأَمَّا

محکم کہ وہ اصل پر کتاب کی اور کچھ اور مشتباہ ہیں پس

الَّذِينَ فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ ذَنِبٌ فَيَتَّبِعُونَ مَا تَشَابَهَ مِنْهُ

وہ لوگ کہ دلوں میں جن کے کچھ بے توبہ چوری کرتے ہیں اس کی جو مشتباہ ہے اس کی کتاب

ابْتِغَاءَ الْفِتْنَةِ وَابْتِغَاءَ تَأْوِيلِهِ ۚ وَمَا يَعْلَمُ تَأْوِيلَهُ

سے جاننے کے لیے فتنہ اور چاہتے ہیں اصل مطلب اس کا حال کو نہیں جانتا اصل مطلب اس کا

إِلَّا اللَّهُ ۚ وَالرَّاسِخُونَ فِي الْعِلْمِ يَقُولُونَ آمَنَّا بِهِ ۚ

مگر اللہ اور وہ جو پختہ ہیں علم میں کہتے ہیں ایمان لائے ہم اس پر

كُلٌّ مِنْ عِنْدِ رَبِّنَا ۚ وَمَا يَذَّكَّرُ إِلَّا أُولُو الْأَلْبَابِ ۚ إِنَّا

سب دگر دشتاہ ہیں سب سے ہمارے رب کی اور نہیں نصیحت پہنچتے مگر عقول والے (وہ کہتے ہیں) کہ لب

لَا تُزِغْ قُلُوبَنَا بَعْدَ إِذْ هَدَيْتَنَا وَهَبْ لَنَا مِنْ لَدُنْكَ

ہمارے دل کی گمراہی بعد اس کے کہ ہدایت دی تو نے ہمیں اور بخش ہمارے لیے جناب سے اپنی

نِعْمَةً ۚ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْوَكَابُ ۚ إِنَّا نَتَّبِعُكَ أَتَمًّا ۚ جَاءَ النَّاسُ

رحمت یقیناً تو ہی بہت بخشنے والا ہے اسے عرب ہمارے یقیناً تو جمع کر بھولا ہے تمام لوگوں کو

لِيَوْمٍ لَا رَيْبَ فِيهِ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُخْلِفُ الْمِيعَاتِ ۚ إِنَّ

ایک ایسے دن کوئی شک اس میں یقیناً اللہ نہیں خلاف کرتا وعدہ کا ضرور



R. 2.

11. Those who disbelieve—their possessions and their children shall not avail them at all against Allah; and it is they that are the fuel of the Fire.

12. *Their case is like the case of the people of Pharaoh and those before them; they rejected Our Signs; so Allah punished them for their sins, and Allah is severe in punishing.*

13. Say to those who disbelieve, 'You shall be overcome and gathered unto Hell; and an evil place of rest it is.'

14. Certainly there was for you a Sign in the two armies that encountered each other, one army fighting in the cause of Allah and the other disbelieving, whom they saw to be twice as many as themselves, actually with *their* eyes. *Thus* Allah strengthens with His aid whomsoever He pleases. In that surely is a lesson for those who have eyes.

15. Beautified for men is the love of desired things—women and children, and stored-up heaps of gold and silver, and pastured horses and cattle and crops. That is the provision of the present life; but it is Allah with Whom is an excellent home.

[illegible]

16. Say, 'Shall I inform you of something better than that?' For those who fear God, there are Gardens with their Lord, beneath which rivers flow; therein shall they abide; and pure spouses and Allah's pleasure. And Allah is Mindful of His servants,

17. Those who say, 'Our Lord, we do believe; forgive us, therefore, our sins and save us from the punishment of the Fire;'

18. The steadfast, and the truthful, and the humble, and those who spend in the way of God, and those who seek forgiveness in the latter part of the night.

19. Allah bears witness that there is no God but He—and *also* do the angels and those possessed of knowledge—Maintainer of justice; there is no God but He, the Mighty, the Wise.

20. Surely, the *true* religion with Allah is Islam (complete submission). And those who were given the Book did not disagree but after knowledge had come to them, out of mutual envy. And whoso denies the Signs of Allah, then surely, Allah is quick at reckoning.

21. But if they dispute with thee, say,

حُسْنُ الْمَآبِ ۝ قُلْ أُوْثِقْتُكُمْ بِخَيْرٍ مِّنْ ذٰلِكُمْ وَلَٰكِنَّ أَكْثَرَ النَّاسِ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ

تو کہہ دے کیا آگاہ کہ میں تم کو بہتر بات پر اس سے بھی ان لوگوں کے لیے اتنا اچھا نہ رہے تم جنت تجری میں تختہا لانا نہیں دیتوں نہ تعویذ کیا میں ان کے رب کے باغات میں کہ بہت ہیں نیچے سے جن کے

خلید بن ذبیحہ کا دوا جہ مطہرہ و رضوان من اللہ وہ پڑنے والے ہیں ان میں اور جو یہاں ہیں پاکیزہ اور رضا مندی ہے لطف سے اللہ کی

وَاللّٰهُ بِمُصِیْرٍ بِالْعِجَابِ ۝ الَّذِیْنَ یَقُولُونَ رَبَّنَا اِنَّا اٰتٰنَاكَ مَا غَفَرْنَا لَنَا وَرَبَّنَا عَذَابَ النَّٰرِ ۝

اور اللہ خوب دیکھنے والا ہے جہنم کو وہ لوگ جو کہتے ہیں اے رب ہمارے ایتنا اچھا نہ رہے ہمیں گناہ ہمارے اور بچا ہیں عذاب سے آگ کے

الضَّعِیْفِیْنَ وَالضَّعِیْفِیْنَ وَالْفَقِیْرِیْنَ وَالْمُنْفِیْعِیْنَ وَ

وہ جو صہر کرنے والے ہیں اور برج بوسنے والے اور فراخ باری کرنے والے اور خرچ کرنے والے اور بخش جاننے والے

الْمُسْتَغْفِرِیْنَ بِاَلْسِنَتِهِمْ ۝ اَلَمْ یَكُنْ اَللّٰهُ اَدَّ اِلَٰهَ الْاَوَّلِیْنَ

بخش جاننے والے مہجوں کو گواہی دی اللہ نے کہیں کوئی خدا مگر وہی

وَالْمَلٰٓئِکَۃُ وَاُوْلُو الْعِلْمِ قَاۤیِمًا بِالْقِسْطِ ۚ اِلَٰهَ الْاَوَّلِیْنَ

اور فرشتوں نے اور اہل علم نے کہ قائم کر رہا ہے انصاف کو نہیں کوئی خدا سوائے اس کے

الْعَزِیْزُ الْحَكِیْمُ ۝ اِنَّ السَّیِّئِیْنَ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ لَا اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ

بڑا دانے حکمت والے کے یقیناً دین نزدیک اللہ کے اسلام ہے اور

مَا اَخْتَلَفَ الَّذِیْنَ اُوْتُوا الْكِتٰبَ الْاَوَّلَیْنَ بَعْدَ مَا جَآءَهُمْ

نہیں اختلاف کیا ان لوگوں نے جو دیئے گئے کتاب مگر بعد اس کے کہ آیا ان کے پاس

الْحِلْمُ بِغَیْبِیْنِهِمْ ۚ وَمَنْ یَّكْفُرْ بِاٰیٰتِ اللّٰهِ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ

علم بے برب کرشمہ کے آپس میں اور جو شخص کفر کرے گا اللہ کی آیات کا ترتیباً اللہ

سَرِیْعُ الْحِسَابِ ۝ اِنَّ قٰنَ حَاجُوْكَ فَقُلْ اَسَلَمْتُ وَجْهَیْ

جلد ہے حساب لینے میں پھر اگر وہ جھڑپیں تجھ سے تو کہہ دے میں نے سوچ دی اپنی توجہ

'I have submitted myself to Allah, and also those who follow me.' And say to those who have been given the Book and to the unlearned, 'Have you submitted?' If they submit, then they will surely be guided; but if they turn back, then thy duty is only to convey the message. And Allah is Watchful of His servants.

R. 3

22. Surely, those who deny the Signs of Allah and seek to kill the Prophets unjustly, and seek to kill such men as enjoin equity—announce to them a painful punishment.

23. Those are they whose deeds shall come to naught in this world and in the next, and they shall have no helpers.

24. Dost thou not know of those who have been given *their* portion of the Book? They are called to the Book of Allah that it may judge between them, but a party of them turn away in aversion.

25. That is because they say, 'The Fire shall not touch us, except for a limited number of days.' And what they used to forge has deceived them regarding their religion.

يَلَهُ وَمَنِ اتَّبَعْنِ، وَقُلْ تَلْذِذِينَ أُوْتُوا الْكِتَابَ وَالْأُحْشِينَ  
اللہ کی طرف سے اور ان لوگوں نے جو نبی پر عمل کیا اور ان لوگوں کو جو دینے والے کتاب اور ان لوگوں کو جو

أَسْلَمْتُمْ، فَإِنْ أَسْلَمْتُمْ أَفْخَرُوا هَتَدُوا، وَإِنْ تَوَلَّوْا  
کیا اسلام لائے تو تم بھی پھر اگر مسلمان ہو جاؤ گی تو یقیناً ہدایت پائے گئے۔ اور اگر پھر جاؤ گی

فَأِنَّمَا يَكُن لَّكَ الْبَلَاءُ، وَأَنْتَ بِصِيرٍ بِالْعِبَادِ، إِنَّ الَّذِينَ  
تو عورت ذمہ تیرے پہنچانے ہے اور اللہ خوب دیکھنے والا ہے بندوں کو یقیناً وہ لوگ جو

يَخْفَرُونَ بِآيَاتِ اللَّهِ وَيَقْتُلُونَ النَّبِيِّينَ بِغَيْرِ حَقٍّ  
کفر کرتے ہیں اللہ کی آیات کا اور قتل کرتے ہیں نبیوں کو بغیر حق کے

وَيَقْتُلُونَ الَّذِينَ يَأْمُرُونَ بِالْقِسْطِ مِنَ النَّاسِ،  
اور قتل کرتے ہیں ان کو جو حکم دیتے ہیں انصاف کا لوگوں میں سے

فَبِغَيْرِ حَقٍّ يُعَذِّبُ آلِ الْيَتِيمِ، أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ حَبِطَتْ  
پس انصار دے انہیں عذاب دردناک کی وہ لوگ ہیں ضائع ہو گئے

أَعْمَالُهُمْ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَالْآخِرَةِ، وَمَا لَهُمْ مِنْ نَّاصِرِينَ  
اعمال جن کے دنیا میں اور آخرت میں اور میں ان کے لیے مددگار

الَّذِينَ تَرَى الَّذِينَ أُوْتُوا نَصِيبًا مِّنَ الْكِتَابِ يُدْعَوْنَ  
کیا نہیں دیکھتا تو نے ملت ان لوگوں کی جو دینے گئے ایک حصہ کتاب میں سے کہ وہ بلائے جاتے ہیں

إِلَىٰ كِتَابِ اللَّهِ لِيَحْكُمَ بَيْنَهُمْ ثُمَّ تَتَوَلَّىٰ فِرْيَانُ مِنْهُمْ  
ملت کتاب اللہ کے تاکہ وہ فیصلہ کرے درمیان ان کے پھر پھریا ہے ایک فریق ان میں سے

وَهُمْ مُّعْرِضُونَ، ذَٰلِكَ بِأَنَّهُمْ كَانُوا لَنَاصِرِينَ  
اور وہ معترض کرنے والے ہیں یہاں پہنچے کہ انہوں نے کہا ہرگز نہیں چھوڑے گی ہمیں

الَّذِينَ لَا يَأْتِيَانَا مَعَهُ وَلَا يَتَوَلَّوْنَ فِرْيَانَهُمْ  
انہیں سوائے دلوں کے گھنٹی کے اور دھوکہ دیا انہیں دین میں ان کے

شَاكَا نُوا يَفْتَرُونَ، فَكَيْفَ إِذَا جُمِعْتُمْ لِيُؤْمَرُوا بِآيَاتِ  
انہوں نے جو جھوٹے وہ افتراء کرتے ہیں کیا حال ہو گا جب جمع کریں گے ہم ان کو ایسے دین میں کہ نہیں کوئی شک

26. How will they fare when We will gather them together on the Day about which there is no doubt; and when every soul shall be paid in full what it has earned, and they shall not be wronged?

27. Say, 'O Allah, Lord of sovereignty, Thou givest sovereignty to whomsoever Thou pleasest; and Thou takest away sovereignty from whomsoever Thou pleasest. Thou exaltest whomsoever Thou pleasest and Thou abasest whomsoever Thou pleasest. In Thy hand is all good. Thou surely hast power to do all things.

28. 'Thou makest the night pass into the day and makest the day pass into the night. And Thou bringest forth the living from the dead and bringest forth the dead from the living. And Thou givest to whomsoever Thou pleasest without measure.'

29. Let not the believers take disbelievers for friends in preference to believers—and whoever does that has no connection with Allah—except that you cautiously guard against them. And Allah cautions you against His punishment; and to Allah is the returning.

30. Say, 'Whether you conceal what is in your breasts or reveal it, Allah knows it; and He knows whatever is in the heavens and whatever is in the earth. And Allah has power to do all things.'

فِيهِ دُرُفِيَّتٌ كُلُّ نَفْسٍ مَّا كَسَبَتْ وَهُمْ لَا يُظْلَمُونَ ﴿٣٠﴾

ان میں اور پورا پورا جانشین کو جو کیا اس نے اور وہ ہیں علم کئے جائیں گے

قُلِ اللَّهُ مُلْكُ الْمُلْكِ تُوَفِّي الْمُلْكَ مَنْ تَشَاءُ وَ

توکرسے اے اللہ ہر کس کے تو دیتا ہے کس جسے چاہتا ہے اور

تَنْزِعُ الْمُلْكَ مِمَّنْ تَشَاءُ وَتُعِزُّ مَنْ تَشَاءُ وَتُذِلُّ مَنْ

تو ہٹاتا ہے کس جس سے تو چاہتا ہے اور تو عزت دیتا ہے جسے چاہتا ہے اور تو ذلیل کرتا ہے جسے

تَشَاءُ وَيُذِلُّ الْخَيْرُ إِنَّكَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ﴿٣١﴾ تُوَلِّيهُ

چاہتا ہے یا ہٹاتا ہے خیر ہے یقیناً تو ہر بات پر خوب قدرت رکھنے والا ہے تو داخل کرتا

الَّذِي فِي السَّمَاءِ وَتُوَلِّيهُ السَّمَاءُ فِي الْيَمِينِ وَتُخْرِجُ

جسے رات کو دن میں اور دن کو رات میں رات کو اور تو نکالتا ہے

الَّتِي مِنَ الْمَمَيِّتِ وَتُخْرِجُ الْمَمَيِّتِ مِنَ الْحَيِّ وَتَنْزِعُ زُلْفَى

زندہ کو مردہ سے اور نکالتا ہے مردہ کو زندہ سے اور دن کو نکالتا ہے

مَنْ تَشَاءُ بِغَيْرِ حِسَابٍ ﴿٣٢﴾ لَا يَتَخَذُ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ الْكَافِرِينَ

جسے تو چاہتا ہے بغیر حساب نہ بنا کر مومن کافروں کو

أَوْلِيَاءَ مِنْ دُونِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ، وَمَنْ يَفْعَلْ ذَلِكَ فَلَيْسَ

دوست چھوڑ کر مومنوں کو اور جو کرے گا ایسا تو نہیں ہے وہ

مِنَ اللَّهِ فِي شَيْءٍ إِلَّا أَنْ تَتَّقُوا مِنْهُمْ تُقْسَهُ وَيُحَذِّرُكُمْ

اللہ کی بات سے کسی بات (غیر) میں بھی مگر یہ کہ بچو ان سے بچنا اور ڈرتا ہے تمہیں

اللَّهُ نَفْسَهُ، وَإِلَى اللَّهِ الْمَصِيرُ ﴿٣٣﴾ قُلْ إِنْ تَخْشَوْنَ مَا

اللہ اپنے سے اور طرت اللہ کی ٹھکانا ہے توکرسے اگر چھوڑا تم جو

فِي صُدُورِكُمْ أَوْ تُبْدُوهُ يُعَلِّمَهُ اللَّهُ وَيُعَلِّمُ مَا فِي

سینوں میں ہے تمہارے یا ظاہر کرو تم اسے جانتا ہے اے اللہ اور وہ جانتا ہے جو

السَّمَوَاتِ وَمَا فِي الْأَرْضِ، وَاللَّهُ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ﴿٣٤﴾

آسمانوں میں ہے اور جو زمین میں ہے اور اللہ ہر بات پر خوب قدرت رکھنے والا ہے

31. *Beware of the Day when every soul shall find itself confronted with all the good it has done and all the evil it has done. It will wish there were a great distance between it and that evil. And Allah cautions you against His punishment. And Allah is Most Compassionate to His servants.*

R. 4.

32. Say, 'If you love Allah, follow me: then will Allah love you and forgive you your faults. And Allah is Most Forgiving, Merciful.'

33. Say, 'Obey Allah and the Messenger,' but if they turn away, then remember that Allah loves not the disbelievers.

34. Allah did choose Adam and Noah and the family of Abraham and the family of 'Imrān above all peoples —

35. A race, co-related with one another. And Allah is All-Hearing, All-Knowing.

36. Remember when the woman of 'Imrān said, 'My Lord, I have vowed to Thee what is in my womb to be dedicated to Thy service. So do accept it of me; verily, Thou alone art All-Hearing, All-Knowing.'

37. But when she was delivered of it, she said, 'My Lord, I am delivered of a

یَوْمَ تَجِدُ كُلُّ نَفْسٍ مَّا عَمِلَتْ مِنْ خَيْرٍ مُّحْضَرًا وَمَا  
بِئْسَ مَا يَأْتِيهِمْ اِنْ يَمُنُّوا بِمَا لَمْ يُحِبُّوا وَيَسْتَكْبِرُوا  
عَمِلْتَ مِنْ سُوءٍ تَوَدُّ لَوْ أَنَّ بَيْنَهَا وَبَيْنَهُ آدَمًا  
كُنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ تَجِدُوْنَ اِلَّا تَتَّبِعُوْنِيْ يُخَيِّبُكُمُ اللّٰهُ وَ  
يُغْفِرُ لَكُمْ ذُنُوبَكُمْ وَاللّٰهُ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ اَقْلَاطِيعُوا  
اِنَّكُمْ تَكْتُمُوْنَ اِلَّا تَتَّبِعُوْنَ اِلَّا تَتَّبِعُوْنَ اِلَّا تَتَّبِعُوْنَ  
اَللّٰهُ وَرَسُوْلَهُ فَاِنْ تَوَلَّوْا فَاِنَّ اِلٰهَكُمْ اِلٰهٌ وَاحِدٌ  
لَّا يَكْفِرُ بِنَزْلِ اِلٰهٍ اَصْطَفٰى اٰدَمَ وَنُوْحًا وَاٰلَ اِبْرٰهِيْمَ  
وَاٰلَ عِمْرٰنَ عَلٰى الْخَلْمِيْنَ اِذْ ذَرٰىتُهُمْ بَعْضُهُمْ  
مِنْ بَعْضٍ وَّاللّٰهُ سَمِيْعٌ عَلِيْمٌ اِذْ قَالَتِ امْرَاَتُ عِمْرٰنَ  
رَبِّ اِنِّیْ نَذَرْتُ لَكَ مَا فِیْ بَطْنِیْ مُحَرَّرًا فَتَقَبَّلْ  
مِنْیْ اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ السَّمِیْعُ الْعَلِیْمُ فَلَمَّا وَضَعَتْهَا  
قَالَتْ رَبِّ اِنِّیْ وَضَعْتُهَا اُنْثٰی وَاَللّٰهُ اَعْلَمُ بِمَا  
كُلَّمَا مَرَّ عَلٰی فِیْ جَنِّیْنٍ اَوْرَثَ زَاوِدًا فَجَعَلَهُ جَنَّةً

female'—and Allah knew best what she had brought forth and the male *she was thinking of* was not like the female *she had brought forth*—'and I have named her Mary, and I commit her and her offspring, to Thy protection from Satan, the rejected.'

38. So her Lord accepted her with a gracious acceptance and caused her to grow an excellent growth and made Zachariah her guardian. Whenever Zachariah visited her in the chamber, he found with her provisions. He said, 'O Mary, whence hast thou this?' She replied, 'It is from Allah.' Surely, Allah gives to whomsoever He pleases without measure.

39. There *and then* did Zachariah pray to his Lord, saying, 'My Lord, grant me from Thyself pure offspring; surely, Thou art the Hearer of prayer.'

40. And the angels called to him as he stood praying in the chamber: 'Allah gives thee glad tidings of Yahyā, who shall testify to the truth of a word from Allah — noble and chaste and a Prophet, from among the righteous.'

41. He said, 'My Lord, how shall I have a son, when age has overtaken me, and my wife is barren?' He answered, 'Such is

وَضَعَتْ ذَاكَ لَيْسَ الذَّكَرُ كَالْأُنْثَىٰ ۚ وَإِنِّي سَمَّيْتُهَا  
جاس نے اور نہیں ہے مرد مانند عورت کے اور یقیناً نام لکھا ہے اس کا  
مَرْيَمَ ۚ وَإِنِّي أُعِيذُهَا بِكَ وَذَرِيَّتَهَا مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ  
مریم اور یقیناً میں بناؤں گی اسے تیری اور اولاد کو اس کی شیطان  
الرَّجِيمِ ۚ فَتَقَبَّلَهَا رَبُّهَا بِقَبُولٍ حَسَنٍ ۖ وَأَنبَتَهَا نَبَاتًا  
یعنی سے پس قبول کیا اسے رب نے اس کے ساتھ قبولیت کے اچھی اور بڑھا اسے بڑھا  
حَسَنًا ۖ وَكَفَّلَهَا زَكَرِيَّا ۚ كُلَّمَا دَخَلَ عَلَيْهَا زَكَرِيَّا  
اچھا اور دخل بنایا اس کا زکریا کو جب کبھی داخل ہوتا اس پر زکریا  
الْمِحْرَابَ وَوَجَدَ عِنْدَهَا رِزْقًا ۚ قَالَ يَمْرَأَتُ أَيْ لَيْكِ  
محراب میں پاتا یاں اس کے رزق کتنا اس پر کہا ہے تیرے لیے  
هَذَا ۖ قَالَتْ هُوَ مِنْ عِنْدِ اللَّهِ ۖ إِنَّا اللَّهُ يَرْزُقُ مَنْ  
= وہ کتنی = پاس سے ہے اللہ کے یقیناً اللہ رزق دیتا ہے جسے  
يَشَاءُ يُغَيِّرُ حُسْنًا ۚ هُنَالِكَ دَعَا زَكَرِيَّا رَبَّهُ ۖ قَالَ  
پاٹتا ہے بغیر حساب کے وہی دعا کی زکریا نے اپنے رب سے کہا  
رَبِّ هَبْ لِي مِنْ لَدُنْكَ ذُرِّيَّةً طَيِّبَةً ۚ إِنَّكَ سَمِيعُ  
اسے رب پرستہ دعا کر تجھے اپنی جانب سے اولاد پاک یقیناً تو خوب سنتے والا  
الدُّعَاءِ ۚ فَنَادَاهُ الْمَلَكُ ۖ وَهُوَ قَائِمٌ يُصَلِّي فِي  
ہے دعا کا پس پکارا اسے فرشتوں نے جب وہ کھڑا ہوا نازل ہوا رہا تھا  
الْمِحْرَابِ ۚ أَنَا إِلَهُكَ يُبَشِّرُكَ بِرَبِّحِي مَصَدَّقًا بِكَلِمَةٍ  
محراب میں کہ یقیناً اللہ خوشخبری دیتا ہے تجھے بیٹھنے کی (روح) تصدیق کر رہا ہے ایک کلمہ کی  
مِنْ أَمْرِ اللَّهِ ۖ وَسَيِّدٌ وَحَصُورًا وَنَبِيًّا ۚ مِنَ الصَّالِحِينَ ۚ قَالَ  
طرف سے اللہ کی اور سردار ہے اور بڑوں سے رکھنے والا ہے اور نبی ہے (زاور) نبیوں میں سے ہے کہا  
رَبِّ أَتَىٰ يَكُونُ لِي غُلَامٌ وَقَدْ بَلَغَنِي الْكِبَرُ وَامْرَأَتِي  
اسے رب پرستہ ہو گا میرے رزق کا جبر یقیناً پہنچ چکا ہے مجھے بڑھا اور نبوی میری



*the way of Allah: He does what He pleases.*

42. He said, 'My Lord, appoint a token for me.' He replied, 'Thy token shall be that thou shalt not speak to men for three days except by signs. And remember thy Lord much and glorify Him in the evening and in the early morning.'

R. 5.

43. And *remember* when the angels said, 'O Mary, Allah has chosen thee and purified thee and chosen thee above the women of all peoples.'

44. 'O Mary, be obedient to thy Lord and prostrate thyself and worship God alone with those who worship.'

45. This is of the tidings of things unseen which We reveal to thee. And thou wast not with them when they cast their arrows, as to which of them should be the guardian of Mary, nor wast thou with them when they disputed with one another.

46. When the angels said, 'O Mary, Allah gives thee glad tidings of a word from Him; his name *shall be* the Messiah, Jesus, son of Mary, honoured in this world and in the next, and of those who are granted nearness to God;

47. 'And he shall speak to the people in the cradle and when of middle age, and

عَاقِرًا، قَالَ كَذَلِكَ اللَّهُ يَفْعَلُ مَا يَشَاءُ ﴿٥٠﴾ قَالَ رَبِّ

بَاخِرًا زَيْبًا اِطْرَحْ اَنْتَ كَرْتَا بِهٖ جُو بَاخِرًا بِهٖ اَنْ لِّمَكَ اَعْرَابِي

اَجْعَلْ لِّي اٰيَةً، قَالَ اِيَّاكَ اَلَمْ تَكُنْ اَلْمَكْنَىٰ اَلْثَّاسِ ثَلَاثَةً

بَا مَرْسِيَّةٍ كُوْنُ ثَنَانِ زَيْبًا ثَنَانُ ثَرَاءٍ بِهٖ كُوْنُ دُوْنُ لَكَ تَوْرٍ لُّوْكَوْنُ سَعِي

اِيَّاكَ اَلْمَرْآةَ مَرْآَةً وَاَذْكُرْ رَبَّكَ كَثِيْرًا وَّسَبِّحْ بِاَلْعَشِيِّ

وَدُنْ مَكْرُ اَشَاهُ سَعِي اَوْرِيَادُكَ اِبْنُ رِبَا سَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ كُوْنُ ثَم

وَاَلَمْ يَكُنْ اَرَادَ اَذْكَالَتِ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ يَمْرُؤًا اِنَّ اَللَّهَ

اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

اَصْطَفٰكَ وَطَهَّرَكَ وَاَصْطَفٰكَ عَلٰٓى نِسَاءِ الْعٰلَمِيْنَ ﴿٥١﴾

اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

يَمْرُؤًا قَتْنِي لِرَبِّكَ وَاَسْجُدِي وَاَذْكُرِي مَعَ الرَّاكِعِيْنَ ﴿٥٢﴾

اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

ذٰلِكَ مِنْ اٰتِبَاءِ الْغَيْبِ نُوْحِيْهِ اِلَيْكَ، وَمَا كُنْتَ

بِـ خَبْرُوْنَ سَعِي خَبِيْءِ لِي كَرَدِيْ كَرْتَا بِهٖ سَعِي اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

لَعَنَ يَهُودًا يَلْقَوْنَ اَفْلاٰ مَهْمًا يَهُودِيْكُفْلُ مَرْثِيْمَ

اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

وَمَا كُنْتَ لَعَنَ يَهُودًا يَلْقَوْنَ اَفْلاٰ مَهْمًا يَهُودِيْكُفْلُ مَرْثِيْمَ

اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

يَمْرُؤًا اِنَّ اَللَّهَ يَبْشُرُكَ بِكَلِمَةٍ مِّنْهُ وَاَسْمُهُ الْمَسِيْحُ

اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

اَسْمُهُ يَسِيْحُ اَللّٰهُ ثَبَاتٌ بِهٖ دَالٌ بِهٖ اِبْنُ لَرْدٍ سَعِي مَسِيْحُ

عِيْسَى ابْنُ مَرْثِيْمَ وَجِيْهًا فِى السَّيِّئَاتِ وَاَلْاٰخِرَةِ وَهٰذَا

عِيْسَى يَسِيْحُ مَسِيْحُ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

اَلْمُقَرَّبِيْنَ ﴿٥٣﴾ وَيُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ فِى الْمَهْدِ وَكَهْلًا وَهٰذَا

اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

مُقَرَّبِيْنَ سَعِي اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ اَوْرَسَبِّحْ

he shall be of the righteous.'

48. She said, 'My Lord, how shall I have a son, when no man has touched me?' He said, 'Such is the way of Allah, He creates what He pleases. When He decrees a thing, He says to it, 'Be!' and it is.

49. 'And He will teach him the Book and the Wisdom and the Torah and the Gospel;

50. 'And will make him a Messenger to the children of Israel (to say): 'I come to you with a Sign from your Lord, which is,

that I will fashion out for you a creation out of clay after the manner of a bird, then I will breathe into it a new spirit and it will become a soaring being by the command of Allah; and I will heal the night-blind and the leprous, and I will quicken the dead, by the command of Allah; and I will announce to you what you will eat and what you will store up in your houses. Surely, therein is a Sign for you, if you be believers.

51. 'And I come fulfilling that which is before me, namely, the Torah; and to allow you some of that which was forbidden you; and I come to you with a Sign from your Lord; so fear Allah and obey me.

الصَّالِحِينَ ۚ قَالَ رَبِّ اَنْىٰ يَكُوْنُ لِىْ وَلَدٌ وَلَمْ يَمَسُّنِىْ

يكون میں سے کہاں سے رہے میرے کہہ کر ہوگا میرے لیے بچہ حالانکہ میں چھوا مجھے

بَشَرًا ۚ قَالَ كَذَلِكِ اَللّٰهُ يَخْلُقُ مَا يَشَاءُ ۚ وَاِذَا قَضٰى

کسی انسان نے کہا اسی طرح اللہ پیدا کرتا ہے جو چاہتا ہے جب وہ فیصلہ کرتا ہے

اَمْرًا قَاٰتَمًا يَقُوْلُ لَهٗ كُنْ فَيَكُوْنُ ۚ وَاعْلَمْتُمُ الْكُذِبَ

کسی حاکم کا خوف کہتا ہے اُسے ہو جائیں وہ ہو جاتا ہے اور کھائے گا اُسے کہتا

وَالْحِكْمَةَ وَالتَّوْرَةَ وَالْاِنْجِيْلَ ۚ وَرَسُولًا اِلٰى سَرِي

اور حکمت اور تورات اور انجیل اور رسول ہوگا طرف بتی

رَاسْرَآئِيْلَ ۚ اِنِّىْ قَدْ جِئْتُكُمْ بِآيَةٍ مِّنْ رَبِّكُمْ ۚ وَاِنِّىْ

اسرائیل کی کرپٹیا میں ضرور لایا ہوں تمہارے پاس نشان طرف سے رب کے تمہارے کو قیقا

اَخْلَقْتُ لَكُمْ مِّنَ الطَّيْرِ كَهَيْئَةِ الطَّيْرِ فَاَنْفُخُ فِيْهِ

میں بنا ہوں تمہارے لیے کچھڑے مانند شکل پرند کی پھر پھونکتا ہوں اس میں

فَيَكُوْنُ طَيْرًا بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ ۚ وَاُبْرِئُ الْاَكْمَهٗ وَالْاَبْرَصَ ۚ وَ

پھر ہو جاتا ہے اڑنے والا ساتھ اذن کے اللہ کے اور تندرست کرتا ہوں نابینا کو اور دھڑ والے کو اور

اِنِّىْ الْمَوْتِىْ بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ ۚ وَاَنْبِئُكُمْ بِمَا تَاْكُلُوْنَ وَمَا

زندہ کرتا ہوں مرنے والے کو ساتھ علم اللہ کے اور بتا ہوں تمہیں جو کھاتے ہو تم اور جو

تَدْخُرُوْنَ ۚ وَفِىْ بَيْتِهِمْ كُمُورٌ ۚ وَفِىْ ذٰلِكَ لَاٰيَةٌ لِّكُمۡ اِنْ

ذخیرہ بناتے ہو تم اپنے گھروں میں قیقا اس میں اللہ نشان ہے تمہارے لیے اگر

كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ ۚ ۚ وَاصْبِرْ لِّقَالَِمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ مِّنْ

ہو تم اور مصدق ہوں اس کا جو پہلے ہے میرے لیقا

التَّوْرَةِ وَكِتَابِ ۚ لَّكُمْ بَعْضُ الَّذِىْ حُرِّمَ عَلَيْكُمْ ۚ وَ

تورات اور کتاب حالانکہ تمہارے لیے بعض وہ جو حرام کیا گیا تم پر اور

جِئْتُكُمْ بِآيَةٍ مِّنْ رَبِّكُمْ ۚ فَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ ۚ وَاَطِيعُوا

لایا ہوں تمہارے پاس نشان طرف سے تمہارے رب کی ہیں ڈرو اللہ سے اور اطاعت کرو میری



52. 'Surely, Allah is my Lord and your Lord; so worship Him: this is the right path.'

53. And when Jesus perceived their disbelief, he said, 'Who will be my helpers in the cause of Allah?' The disciples answered, 'We are the helpers of Allah. We have believed in Allah. And bear thou witness that we are obedient.'

54. 'Our Lord, we believe in that which Thou hast sent down and we follow this Messenger. So write us down among those who bear witness.'

55. And they planned, and Allah also planned; and Allah is the Best of planners.

إِنَّ اللَّهَ رَبِّي وَرَبُّكُمْ فَاعْبُدُوهُ هَذَا صِرَاطٌ  
يَقِينٌ

مُسْتَقِيمٌ فَلَمَّا أَحَسَّ عِيسَى مِنْهُمُ الْكُفْرَ قَالَ مَنْ  
سَيُتَّبِعُنِي

اتَّبَعْنِي إِلَى اللَّهِ قَالَ الْخَوَارِثُ نَحْنُ أَنْصَارُ اللَّهِ  
مَدَّ يَدَيْهِ لِمَنْ شَاءَ

أَمَّا يَاسَايَ وَأَشْهَدُ بِأَنَّا مُسْلِمُونَ رَبَّنَا آمَنَّا بِمَا  
نَزَّلْتَ وَاتَّبَعْنَا الرَّسُولَ فَاكْتُبْنَا مَعَ الشَّاهِدِينَ

مَكَرُوا وَمَكَرَ اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ خَيْرُ الْمَاكِرِينَ

مَكَرُوا وَمَكَرَ اللَّهُ وَاللَّهُ خَيْرُ الْمَاكِرِينَ

سُورَةُ

## RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

عَنِ ابْنِ مَسْعُودٍ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ قَالَ: قَالَ لِي النَّبِيُّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ: اقْرَأْ عَلَيَّ الْقُرْآنَ قُلْتُ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ! أَقْرَأُ عَلَيْكَ وَعَلَيْكَ أَنْزَلَ قَالَ: إِنِّي أَحِبُّ أَنْ أَسْمَعَهُ مِنْ غَيْرِي - فَقَرَأْتُ عَلَيْهِ سُورَةَ النَّسَاءِ حَتَّى جِئْتُ إِلَى هَذِهِ الْآيَةِ ' فَكَيْفَ إِذَا جِئْنَا مِنْ كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ بِشَهِيدٍ وَجِئْنَا بِكَ عَلَى هَؤُلَاءِ شَهِيدًا قَالَ: حَسْبُكَ الْآنَ فَالتَفَتُ إِلَيْهِ فَإِذَا عَيْنَاهُ تَذْرِفَانِ -

Ḥaḍrat Ibn Mas'ūd<sup>ra</sup> relates: The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> asked me to recite the Qur'ān to him. I said: "Messenger<sup>sa</sup> of Allāh, shall I recite the Qur'ān to you, whereas it is you to whom it has been revealed? He<sup>sa</sup> said: 'I like to hear it recited by another.' So I recited to him a portion from *Sūrah Al-Nisā'* till I came to the verse:

فَكَيْفَ إِذَا جِئْنَا مِنْ كُلِّ أُمَّةٍ بِشَهِيدٍ وَجِئْنَا بِكَ عَلَى هَؤُلَاءِ شَهِيدًا ۚ

*fakaifa idhā ji'nā min kulli ummatim bi shahīdiñwwa ji'nā bika 'alā hā ufa'ai shahīda*

And *how will it fare with them* when We shall bring a witness from every people, and shall bring thee as a witness against these! (4:42)'

when he<sup>sa</sup> said: 'That is enough for now.' " I looked at him and saw that his eyes were running.

(Bukhārī bāb ḥusnaṣṣaut bilqirā' Muslim)

## CHAPTER 4

### AL-NISĀ' (Revealed after Hijrah)

#### *Date of Revelation and Context*

This *Sūrah* is appropriately entitled Al-Nisā', (The Women) because it deals chiefly with the rights and responsibilities of women and also with their status and position in society. It was revealed at Medina between the third and fifth year of Hijrah after the Battle of Uḥud and it mainly deals with the subject of widows and orphans who were left behind in large numbers after the battle. Muslims and European scholars are all agreed on this point. Noldeke, the great German Orientalist, however, is inclined to place some of its verses among the Meccan revelations, because, according to him in those verses "the Jews are referred to in a friendly spirit", as they had not yet come into conflict with Muslims. Wherry thinks that the words "O people" in the verse 134 shows that at least this verse was revealed at Mecca because this form of address has been exclusively used in the Meccan *Sūrahs*. But to say that because a certain verse uses the expression "O people" it must, in spite of all evidence to the contrary, belongs to the Meccan period is a mere assertion. The fact is that because at Mecca the number of believers was very small and they had not yet been welded into a distinct and separate community and very few commandments of the *Shariyy'ah* had been revealed, the Meccans believers and disbelievers were all addressed together by the words "O people". But as after the Emigration of the Holy Prophet to Medina the commandments of the *Shari'yyah* came thick and fast and an organized community of believers, quite distinct and separate from the disbelievers, had come into existence, they were addressed as "O Ye who believe." But where the address is general, applying both to believers and non-believers, the expression "O people" has been used.

The connection of the *Sūrah* with the previous Chapter consists in the fact that in the former *Sūrah* one of the principal subjects dealt with was the Battle of Uḥud while this *Sūrah* deals with the various problems to which that battle gave rise. The *Sūrah* also sheds a flood of light on the evil designs and machinations of the Jews and the Hypocrites of Medina who, after the Battle of Uḥud, seeing that Islām was gaining great power in the land, mustered all their resources to make a last effort to destroy it root and branch. In a way also the *Sūrah* constitutes an extension of the subject matter of the preceding *Sūrah* in that it demolishes the basic Christian doctrine of Atonement, and establishes that Jesus did not die on the Cross.

#### *Summary of Subject-Matter*

As in Āl 'Imrān, the Christian basic doctrines constitute one of the main theme of

this *Sūrah* also. But in this *Sūrah* greater space has been assigned to a comparison of the detailed teachings of the two religions - Islām and Christianity - with special reference to the progress and domination of Christianity in the Latter Days. As in the Latter Days, Christian writers and speakers were to profess and proclaim loudly that Islām had degraded women by giving her a much lower status than man, this *Sūrah* largely deals with the problems concerning females, and a cursory glance over the Qur'anic teaching about women establishes the fact that even in this respect Islāmic teachings are far superior to those of Christianity. And as the subject of orphans is intimately connected with that of women, it has also received special mention in this *Sūrah* which is the first revelation to safeguard their rights and those of women. Women have not only been given all the rights to which they are legitimately entitled, particularly the right of inheritance, but have also been declared to be the sole masters and arbiters of their property. The second main topic dealt with in this *Sūrah* is that of the hypocrisy. As in the Latter Days Christianity was to gain a world-wide predominance and a large number of Muslims were to live under Christian Governments and, as a result of their subjugation by Christian rulers and their fear of Christian criticism of Islām they were to adopt hypocritical attitude towards their own faith, the subject of hypocrisy has also been treated in this *Sūrah* along with that of women, and light is thrown on the depths to which a hypocrite can sink morally and spiritually. The hypocrites are warned that shame and abasement would seize them because they fear men more than their Creator. Towards its end the *Sūrah* sheds some light on the subject of Jesus's crucifixion and it is emphatically stated and convincingly established that the belief that Jesus died on the Cross is utterly false and unfounded. Like other human beings he died a natural death, and this false doctrine is belied by proven facts of history, and even the Gospels lend no support to it. The *Sūrah* closes with a brief reversion to the subject of *Kaḫālah* in order to draw attention to the spiritual heirlessness of Jesus who in a sense was *Kaḫālah* inasmuch as he left no spiritual successor. Prophethood having been transferred from the House of Israel to that of Ishmael.

AL-NISĀ  
(Revealed after Hiyra)

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious,  
the Merciful.
2. O ye people! fear your Lord, Who  
created you from a single soul and created

سُورَةُ النِّسَاءِ مَكِّيَّةٌ

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

(میں نے تمہارے ساتھ) اللہ کے جو رحمن (داد) رحیم ہے

يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ اتَّقُوا رَبَّ الَّذِي خَلَقَكُمْ مِنْ نَفْسٍ

اے لوگو! ڈرو اپنے رب سے وہی نے پیدا کیا تم کو نفس

therefrom its mate, and from them twain spread many men and women; and fear Allah, in Whose name you appeal to one another, and *fear Him particularly respecting* ties of relationship. Verily, Allah watches over you.

3. And give to the orphans their property and exchange not the bad for the good, and devour not their property with your own. Surely, it is a great sin.

4. And if you fear that you will not be fair in dealing with the orphans, then marry of women as may be agreeable to you, two, or three, or four; and if you fear you will not deal justly, then *marry only* one or what your right hands possess. That is the nearest *way* for you to avoid injustice.

5. And give the women their dowries willingly. But if they, of their own pleasure, remit to you a part thereof, then enjoy it as something pleasant and wholesome.

6. And give not to the foolish your property which Allah has made for you a means of support; but feed them therewith and clothe them and speak to them words of kind advice.

وَاحِدَةً وَخَلَقَ مِنْهَا زَوْجَهَا وَبَثَّ مِنْهُمَا رِجَالًا كَثِيرًا

دوسرے اور بیوی کی اس کی بیوی سے بیوی کی اور بچلے ان دونوں سے مرد بہت سے

وَنِسَاءً ۚ وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ الَّذِي تَسَاءَلُونَ بِهِ وَالْأَرْحَامَ

اور خونی اللہ سے وہ جو تم آپس میں سوال کرتے ہو واسطے ایک اور ذریعہ اور ان کی خونی خونی

إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ عَلَيْكُمْ ذَقِيبًا ۚ وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ الَّتِي أَمْوَالُكُمْ

یقیناً اللہ ہے تم پر نگران اللہ دو چیزوں کو مال ان کے

وَلَا تَتَّبِعُوا الْاُخْيَاطَ بِالطَّبِيبِ وَلَا تَكُلُوا أَمْوَالَكُمْ

اور نہ پسلیں دو بڑی چیز میں بھی چیز کے اور نہ کھاؤ مال ان کے

إِلَى أَمْوَالِكُمْ ۚ إِنَّهُ كَانَ حُوبًا كَبِيرًا ۚ وَإِنْ خِفْتُمْ

دراگر ساتھ اپنے مالوں کے یقیناً ہے گناہ اور اگر ڈرو تم کو

تَقْطُطُوا فِي الْيَسَنِ فَإِذْ كُفُوا مَا طَابَ لَكُمْ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ

انصاف کر کے تم سیم بڑیوں میں تو نکاح کرو جو پسند ہوں نہیں عورتوں میں سے

مَثْنً وَثُلَّةً وَارْبَعَةً فَإِنْ خِفْتُمْ أَلا تَعْدِلُوا فَوَاحِشَةً

دو دو اور تین تین اور چار پھر اگر ڈرو تم کو نہ عدل کرو گے تو ایک ہی کرو

أَوْ مَا مَلَكَتْ أَيْمَانُكُمْ ذَٰلِكَ أَفْئَةُ الَّتِي تَعْمَلُونَ ۚ وَاتَّقُوا

یاد کرو کہ ملک ہونے والے اپنے ہاتھ سے اپنی بیویوں سے یہ بات زیادہ قریب ہے نہ اسانی کو تم اور دو

النِّسَاءَ ۚ صَدُوقَتُهُنَّ زَحْلَةٌ فَإِنْ طِبْنَ لَكُمْ عَنْ شَيْءٍ

عورتوں کو ہر ان کے دلی خوشی سے پھر اگر وہ چھوڑ دیں تمہارے لیے کچھ

مِنْهُ نَفْسًا فَكُلُوهُ هَنِيئًا مَرِيئًا ۚ وَلَا تَوَسَّوْا السُّفَهَاءَ

اس میں سے دل سے تو کھاؤ اسے رچتا بچتا اور دو کم سمجھوں کو

أَمْوَالَكُمْ الَّتِي جَعَلَ اللَّهُ لَكُمْ قِيَمًا وَادَّخَرْتُمْ

مال اپنے کو چیزیں بنایا اللہ نے تمہارے لیے قیام کا ذریعہ اور کھاؤ ان کو

فِيهَا وَاكْسُوهُمْ ذَوُلًا ۚ اللَّهُمَّ قَوْلًا مَعْرُوفًا ۚ وَابْتَلُوا

اس میں سے اور پہناؤ ان کو اور کمو ان کو بات مناسب اور آزمائے رہو

7. And prove the orphans until they attain *the age of marriage*; then, if you find in them sound judgment, deliver to them their property; and devour it not in extravagance and haste against their growing up. And whoso is rich, let him abstain; and whoso is poor, let him eat *thereof* with equity. And when you deliver to them their property, then call witnesses in their presence. And Allah is sufficient as a Reckoner.

8. For men is a share of that which parents and near relations leave; and for women is a share of that which parents and near relations leave, whether it be little or much—a determined share.

9. And when *other* relations and orphans and the poor are present at the division of *heritage*, give them *something* therefrom and speak to them words of kindness.

10. And let those fear *God* who, if they should leave behind them their own weak offspring, would be anxious for them. Let them, therefore, fear Allah and let them say the right word.

الْيَتَامَىٰ حَتَّىٰ إِذَا بَلَغُوا النِّكَاحَ، فَإِنْ أَنتَسَبُوا مِنْهُمْ  
 یتیموں کو یہاں تک کہ جب وہ پہنچ جائیں نکاح کی عمر کو پہنچا کر دیکھو تم انکی طرف سے  
 رُشْدًا فَإِنْ فَعُوا الْيَتَامَىٰ مَوَالِيَهُمْ وَلَا تَكُنْ لَهُمْ إِسْرَافًا  
 درستگی تو سوچ دو طرفہ ان کی مال ان کے اور نہ کھاؤ وہ مال ضرور خرچہ کے طور پر  
 زَيْدًا إِنْ يَكْبُرُونَ، وَمَنْ كَانَ غَنِيًّا فَلْيَسْتَعْفِفْ، وَ  
 اور جدی جلدی کہ وہ بڑے ہو جائیں گے اور جو ہو دولت مند تو چاہیے کہ بچہ مال کھائے سے اور  
 مَنْ كَانَ فَقِيرًا فَلْيَأْكُلْ بِالْمَعْرُوفِ، فَإِذَا دَفَعْتُمْ  
 جو ہو ضرورت مند تو چاہیے کہ کم سے مناسب طور پر پھر جب سونپ دو تم  
 إِلَيْهِمْ مَوَالِيَهُمْ فَلْيَشْهَدُوا عَلَيْهِمْ مِمَّا بِيَدِكُمْ بِاللَّهِ حَسيبًا  
 طرف ان کی مال ان کے تو گواہ کو اس پر اور کافی ہے اللہ حساب دینے والا  
 لِلرِّجَالِ نَصِيبٌ مِّمَّا تَرَكَ الْوَالِدَانِ وَالْأَقْرَبُونَ  
 مردوں کے لیے حصہ ہے اس سے جو چھوڑا والدین اور رشتہ داروں نے  
 وَلِلنِّسَاءِ نَصِيبٌ مِّمَّا تَرَكَ الْوَالِدَانِ وَالْأَقْرَبُونَ  
 اور عورتوں کے لیے حصہ ہے جو چھوڑا والدین اور رشتہ داروں نے  
 مِمَّا قَلَّ مِنْهُ أَوْ كَثُرَ، نَصِيبًا مَّفْرُوضًا، وَإِذَا حَضَرَ  
 اس سے جو کم ہوا یا زیادہ حصہ ہے مقررہ اور جب حاضر ہوں  
 الْقِسْمَةُ أُولُوا الْقُرْبَىٰ وَالْيَتَامَىٰ وَالْمَسْكِينُ فَأَذْخَرُوا مِنْ  
 تقسیم میں رشتہ دار اور یتیم اور مسکین تو کھلاؤ ان کو  
 مِنْهُ وَقُولُوا لَهُمْ قَوْلًا مَعْرُوفًا، وَلْيَخْشَ الَّذِينَ لَوْ  
 اس رشتہ سے اور کم کو ان کو بات مناسب اور چاہیے کہ درستی اختیار کریں تاکہ اگر  
 تَرَكَوْا مِنْ خَلْفِهِمْ ذُرِّيَةً ضَعِيفًا فُؤَادًا عَلَيْهِمْ  
 چھوڑ جائیں وہ پیچھے اپنے اولاد کو رور تو ان کو خوف ہو ان کے متعلق  
 فَلْيَتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَلْيَقُولُوا قَوْلًا سَدِيدًا إِنَّ الَّذِينَ  
 یہیں چاہیے کہ ڈریں اللہ سے اور چاہیے کہ کہیں بات مضبوط یقیناً جو لوگ

11. Surely, they who devour the property of orphans unjustly, only swallow fire into their bellies, and they shall burn in a blazing fire.

R. 2.

12. Allah commands you concerning your children: a male shall have as much as the share of two females; but if there be females *only*, *numbering* more than two, then they shall have two-thirds of what the *deceased* leaves; and if there be one, she shall have the half. And his parents shall have each of them a sixth of the inheritance, if he have a child; but if he have no child and his parents be his heirs, then his mother shall have a third; and if he have brothers and sisters, then his mother shall have a sixth, after *the payment* of any bequests he may have bequeathed or of debt. Your fathers and your children, you know not which of them is nearest to you in benefit. *This fixing of portions* is from Allah. Surely, Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

13. And you shall have half of that which your wives leave, if they have no child; but if they have a child, then you

يَا كُلُّوْنَ اَمْوَالَ الْيَتَامَى ظُلْمًا اِنَّهَا يَكُلُوْنَ فِيْ

کھاتے ہیں مال یتیموں کے سوائے انکے کہ وہ کھاتے ہیں

ظُلْمًا زَهْرًا وَّادًّا سَبَّحُوْنَ سَبْحًا ۝ يٰۤاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوا صِبُّوْكُمْ اَللّٰهُ

انچھٹوں میں آگ اور ضرر میں گے وہ آگ میں وصیت کرتا ہے تم کو اللہ

فِيْ اَوْلَادِكُمْ لِلَّذِيْ كَرِهْتُمْ لِطَبْعِ الْاُنثٰى يَتِيْمِيْنَ، فَاِنْ كُنْ

تمہاری اولاد کے بارہ میں کورو کہ لیے برابر ہے حق دعو تو ان کے پورا کر ہوں وہ

نِسَاءً فَوْقَ اُنْثٰى يَتِيْمِيْنَ فَلَهُمْ مِّثْلُ مَا تَرَكَ، وَاِنْ كَانَتْ

اولاد (خواتین) زیادہ دوسے تو ان کے لیے دو تہائی ہے اس سے جو چھوڑا اس میں پانچ گنے اور اگر مردہ (میت)

وَاحِدَةٌ فَلَهَا النِّصْفُ، وَلَا يُوْرِيْهِ لِكُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِّنْهُمَا

ایک تو ان کے لیے نصف ہے اور واسطے اس وصیت کے ہاں آپ کے اپنی واسطے ہر ایک کے ان میں سے

السُّدُسُ مِمَّا تَرَكَ اِنْ كَانَ لَهُ وَلَدٌ، وَلَوْ لَمْ يَكُنْ

چھٹا حصہ ہے اس جو چھوڑا اس وصیت کے اگر ہو واسطے اس وصیت کے اولاد نہیں اگر نہ ہو واسطے

لَهُ وَلَدٌ وَوَرِثَةُ اَبَوَيْهِ فَلَا مَرَّةٍ الثَّلَاثُ، فَاِنْ كَانَ لَهُ

ان کے اولاد اور وارث ہوں ان کے ہاں آپ ان کے والدہ کیلئے میرے حصہ میرا کر ہوں اس وصیت کے

اِخْوَةٌ فَلَا مَرَّةٍ السُّدُسُ مِنْ بَعْدِ وَصِيَّةِ يُوْرِيْهَا

بھائی تو اسکی والدہ کے لیے چھٹا حصہ ہے بعد وصیت کے کہ وصیت کرے وصیت اسکی

اَوْ دِيْنٍ، اَبَاؤُكُمْ وَاَبْنَاؤُكُمْ لَا تَدْرُوْنَ اَيُّهُمْ

دادا (پاپا) تو تم کے باپ تمہارے اور بیٹے تمہارے نہیں جانتے تم کون ان میں سے

اَقْرَبُ لَكُمْ نَفْعًا فَرِيْضَةٌ مِّنْ اَمَلِهِ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ كَانَ

زیادہ قریب ہے تمہارے لیے نفع میں (ریقہ) فرض ہے اللہ کی طرف سے یقیناً اللہ ہے

عَلِيْمًا حَكِيْمًا ۝ وَلَكُمْ نِصْفُ مَا تَرَكَ اَزْوَاجُكُمْ اِنْ

غریب جاننے والا حکمت والا اور تمہارے لیے نصف ہے جو چھوڑا تمہاری بیویوں نے اگر

لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُنَّ وَلَدٌ، فَاِنْ كَانَ لَهُنَّ وَلَدٌ فَلَكُمْ السُّدُسُ

نہ ہو واسطے ان کے اولاد تو واسطے تمہارے جو چھوڑا ہے



shall have a fourth of that which they leave, after the *payment* of any bequests they may have bequeathed or of debt. And they shall have a fourth of that which you leave, if you have no child; but if you have a child, then they shall have an eighth of that which you leave, after the *payment* of any bequests you may have bequeathed or of debt. And if there be a man or a woman whose heritage is to be divided and he or she has neither parent nor child, and he or she has a brother or a sister, then each one of them shall have a sixth. But if they be more than that, then they shall be equal sharers in one-third, after the *payment* of any bequests which may have been bequeathed or of debt, without prejudice to the debt. This is an injunction from Allah, and Allah is All-Knowing, Forbearing.

14. These are the limits set by Allah; and whoso obeys Allah and His Messenger, He will make him enter Gardens through which streams flow; therein shall they abide; and that is a great triumph.

15. And whoso disobeys Allah and His Messenger and transgresses His limits, He will make him enter into Fire; therein shall he abide; and he shall have an humiliating punishment.

يَمَّا تَرَكَ كُنْ مِنْ بَعْدِ وَصِيَّةٍ يُوصِيَنَّ بِهَا إِذَا تَذَرَوْنَ

اگر کاجو چھوڑا انھوں نے بعد وصیت کے کو وصیت کر دے جنہیں کی یا قرینہ کے اور

لَهُنَّ الرُّبُعُ مِمَّا تَرَكَ كُنَّ إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَكُمُ وَلَدٌ فَإِنْ كَانَ

واسطان تھائی بیویوں کے جو تھا حصہ اسکا جو چھوڑا نہ لے کر نہ ہو واسطے تھائی اولاد نہیں

كَانَ لَكُمْ وَلَدٌ فَلَهُنَّ الثُّمُنُ مِمَّا تَرَكَ كُنَّ مِنْ بَعْدِ

اگر ہو واسطے تھائی اولاد تو واسطے ان کے انھوں حصہ اسکا جو چھوڑا تم نے بعد

وَصِيَّةٍ تُوصُونَ بِهَا إِذَا تَذَرَوْنَ وَإِنْ كَانَ لَكُمْ وَلَدٌ

وصیت کے کتم وصیت کو جس کی یا قرینہ کے اور اگر ہو کوئی مرد جنہیں کا کھائے واسطے

كُلَّةٌ أَوْ امْرَأَةٌ أَوْ أَخٌ أَوْ أُخْتٌ فَلِكُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِّنْهُمَا

ہر کلام یا عورت ہر کلام اور واسطے اس کلام کے ایک بیانی ایک بیانی تو واسطے ہر ایک کے ان دونوں میں سے

السُّدُسُ فَإِنْ كَانُوا أَكْثَرَ مِنْ ذَلِكَ فَهُمْ شُرَكَاءُ

چھٹا حصہ ہے پس اگر گروہوں وہ تھا ہیں زیادہ اس سے تو وہ شریک ہوں گے

فِي الثَّلَاثِ مِنْ بَعْدِ وَصِيَّةٍ يُوصَى بِهَا إِذَا تَذَرَوْنَ

تیسرے حصہ میں بعد وصیت کے کو وصیت کیا ہے جس کی یا قرینہ کے

غَيْرِ مُضَارٍّ وَصِيَّةً مِنَ اللَّهِ وَاللَّهُ عَلِيمٌ خَلِيمٌ

بغیر نقصان پہنچانے کے یہ احکام بطور وصیت کہیں ان کی طرف سے اور اللہ خوب جاننے والا ہے بردبار ہے

تِلْكَ حُدُودُ اللَّهِ وَمَنْ يُطِيعِ اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ يَدْخُلْهُ

حدیں ہیں اللہ کی اور شخص احکامات کر لگا اللہ کی اور اس کے رسول کی داخل کرے گا اسے

جَنَّتِ تَجْرِي مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْأَنْهَارُ خَالِدِينَ فِيهَا ذَلِكَ

جنت میں کو بہتی ہیں نیچے جن کے نہریں رہ پڑنے والے ہیں ان رہا تھا میں اور یہ

الْقَوْزُ الْعَظِيمُ وَمَنْ يَعْصِ اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ وَيَتَعَدَّ

کامیابی ہے بڑی اور جو نافرمانی کرے گا اللہ کی اور اس کے رسول کی اور تجاوز کرے گا

حُدُودَ اللَّهِ يَدْخُلْهُ نَارُ آخِزَالٍ فِيهَا يَكُونُ كَصُورِ

حدود سے اسی کو تو داخل کر لگا اسے آگ میں رہ پڑنے والا ہو گا آگ میں جس میں اور واسطے ان کے عذاب ہے ذلیل کرنے والا

كَأَنَّهُمْ قُلُوبٌ مَّحْمُومَةٌ

جیسے کہ وہ لوگوں کے دل آلود ہوں گے

R. 3.

16. And those of your women who are guilty of lewdness—call to witness four of you against them; and if they bear witness, then confine them to the houses until death overtake them or Allah open for them a way.

17. And if two men from among you are guilty of it, punish them both. And if they repent and amend, then leave them alone; surely, Allah is Oft-Returning with compassion and is Merciful.

18. Verily, Allah undertakes to accept the repentance of only those who do evil ignorantly and then repent soon after. These are they to whom Allah turns with mercy; and Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

19. There is no acceptance of repentance for those who *continue* to do evil until, when death faces one of them, he says, 'I do repent now;' nor for those who die disbelievers. It is these for whom We have prepared a painful punishment.

وَالَّذِينَ يَأْتِيهِمُ الْفَكَاحَةُ مِنْ تِسَارِكُمْ فَاسْتَشْهِدُوا

اور وہ جو آپس میں چکر لگاتے ہیں تو گواہ بناؤ

عَلَيْهِمْ أَرْبَعَةً مِنْكُمْ فَإِنْ شَهِدُوا فَامْسِكُوهُمْ فِي

ان پر چار کو اپنے لوگوں میں سے پس اگر وہ گواہی دیں تو روک رکھو ان ریزیلوں کو

الْبُيُوتِ حَتَّى يَتَوَقَّعَهُنَّ الْمَوْتُ أَوْ يَجْعَلَ اللَّهُ لَهُنَّ

گھروں میں یہاں تک کہ توقع کریں ان کی موت یا بنا دے اللہ ان کے لیے

سَبِيلًا ۚ وَالَّذِينَ يَأْتِيهِمْ مِنْكُمْ فَامْسِكُوا ۚ فَإِنْ

کوئی راستہ اور وہ دودھ پر جو روک رہوں اس ریزیلوں کے تمہیں سے تو تکلیف دے (مسل) وہ ان کو پھر اگر وہ

تک پناہ و اصلاح کریں تو اعراض کرو ان سے یقیناً اللہ بہت فضل سے تمہیں پناہ

رَحِيمًا ۚ إِنَّمَا التَّوْبَةُ عَلَى اللَّهِ لِلَّذِينَ يَعْمَلُونَ

بہت رحم کرے گا سوائے ان کے جنہیں کہ توبہیت (توبہ کی اللہ کے ذمہ ہے ان لوگوں کے لیے جو کرتے ہیں

السُّوءَ بِجَهَالَةٍ ثُمَّ يَتَوَبُونَ مِنْ قَرِيبٍ فَأُولَٰئِكَ

پرہیز جہالت سے پھر وہ توبہ کر لیتے ہیں جلد ہی توبہ لوگ وہ ہیں

يَتَوَبُ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ ۚ وَكَانَ اللَّهُ عَلِيمًا حَكِيمًا ۚ وَ

کر فضل سے توبہ پڑتا ہے اللہ ان پر اور ہے اللہ خوب جاننے والا حکمت والا اور

لَيْسَتِ التَّوْبَةُ لِلَّذِينَ يَعْمَلُونَ السَّيِّئَاتِ حَتَّىٰ إِذَا

نہیں ہے (توبہیت) توبہ واسطے ان لوگوں کے جو کرتے ہیں بدیاں یہاں تک کہ جب

حَصَرَ أَحَدُهُمُ الْمَوْتُ قَالَ إِنِّي تُبْتُ ۚ وَالَّذِينَ

غافل ہو جاتے ہیں ان میں سے کسی کو موت توکتا ہے کہ میں نے توبہ کی اب اور واسطے ان لوگوں کے

يَمُوتُونَ وَهُمْ كُفَّارٌ ۚ أُولَٰئِكَ أَعْتَدْنَا لَهُمْ عَذَابًا

جسے جو جانتے ہیں ایسے حال میں کہ وہ کافر ہوتے ہیں یہ لوگ وہ ہیں کہ تیار کیا ہے کہ ان کے لیے عذاب

إِنَّمَا يَأْتِيهِمُ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا يُحِلُّ لَكُمْ أَنْ تَرْشُوا

وردنگ اسے لوگوں جو ایمان لائے ہو نہیں جائز تمہارے لیے کہ وارث میں جاؤ

20. O ye who believe! it is not lawful for you to inherit women against their will; nor should you detain them wrongfully that you may take away part of that which you have given them, except that they be guilty of a flagrant evil; and consort with them in kindness; and if you dislike them, it may be that you dislike a thing wherein Allah has placed much good.

21. And if you desire to take one wife in place of another and you have given one of them a treasure, take not aught therefrom. Will you take it by lying and with manifest sinfulness?

22. And how can you take it when one of you has been alone with the other, and they (the women) have taken from you a strong covenant?

23. And marry not those women whom your fathers married, except what has already passed. It is a thing foul and hateful and an evil way.

R. 4.

24. Forbidden to you are your mothers, and your daughters, and your sisters, and your fathers' sisters, and your mothers' sisters, and brother's daughters, and

النِّسَاءِ كَزَهَّاءَ وَلَا تَعْضَلُوهُنَّ لِتَذْهَبُوا بِبَعْضِ  
عورتوں کے زبردستی اور نہ رکھو تم ان کو تاکر جے جاؤ تم بعض وہ مال  
مَا آتَيْتُمُوهُنَّ إِلَّا أَنْ تَأْتِيَنَّ بِفَكَاحٍ حَشِيَّةٍ مُّبِينَةٍ  
جو دیا تم نے ان کو سوا اس کے کہ وہ کہیں جے جائیں کھلی گلی  
عَايِرُوهُنَّ بِالْمَعْرُوفِ، فَإِنْ كَرِهْتُمُوهُنَّ فَعَسَى  
نہان کرنا ان کے ساتھ مناسب طور سے پھر اگر ناپسند کرو تم ان کو تو ہو سکتا ہے  
أَنْ تَكْرَهُهُنَّ أَشْيَاءً وَيَجْعَلَ اللَّهُ فِيهِ خَيْرًا كَثِيرًا  
کو ناپسند کرو تم کوئی بات اور ناپسند اللہ اس میں بہتری بہت اور  
إِنْ أَرَدْتُمْ اسْتِبْدَالَ زَوْجٍ مَكَانَ زَوْجٍ وَآتَيْتُمْ  
اگر لادہ کرو تم بدل لینے کا ایک ہوگی کو بجائے کسی دوسری کے اور دے چکے ہو تم  
أَحَدَهُنَّ قِنْطَارًا فَلَا تَأْخُذْهُ بِإِْمْنِهِ شَيْئًا  
ایک کو ان میں سے بہت مال تو تم اس سے کچھ بھی  
أَتَأْخُذْهُ وَتَكْهَى بِهَيْئَتِكَ تَأْخُذًا وَإِيمَانًا مُمِيتًا  
کیا لوگ تم اسے بھان کے طور پر اور نہ کے طور پر (مکمل گلی مار رہے) اور کس طرح  
تَأْخُذْهُ وَتَكْهَى وَقَدْ أَقْضَى بِعَظْمِكُمْ إِلَى بَعْضٍ وَآخُذْنَ  
لوگ تم اسے جبریتاً مل چکا ہے بعض تمہارا ساتھ یعنی کے اور وہ تمہاری بیویاں  
وَمَنْ مِثْلًا قَامًا غَيْرَ طَيِّبًا وَلَا تَنْكِحُوا مَا نَكَحَ آبَاؤُكُمْ  
جسے تمہارے عہد پہنچے اور نہ نکاح کرو ان سے کہ نکاح کیا تمہارے باپ دادا نے  
مِنْ النِّسَاءِ إِلَّا مَا قَدْ سَلَفَ وَأَنْتُمْ كَأَنْ فَا حَشِيَّةٍ  
عورتوں سے سوائے اس کے جو پہلے جو چکا یقیناً یہ ہے جے جائیں اور  
مَفْتًا، وَنِسَاءٌ سَبِيْلًا<sup>[۲۴]</sup> حُرِّمَتْ عَلَيْكُمْ أُمَّهَاتُكُمْ وَ  
ناراضی کا سبب اور بُرا ہے راستہ حرام کی گئیں تم پر باپیں تمہاری اور  
بَنَاتُكُمْ وَأَخَوَاتُكُمْ وَعَمَّاتُكُمْ وَخَالَاتُكُمْ وَبَنَاتُ الْأَخِ  
بیٹیاں تمہاری اور بہنیں تمہاری اور پھوپھیاں تمہاری اور خالائیں تمہاری اور بیٹیاں بھائی کی

sister's daughters, and your foster-mothers that have given you suck, and your foster-sisters, and the mothers of your wives, and your step-daughters, who are your wards by your wives unto whom you have gone in—but if you have not gone in unto them, there shall be no sin upon you—and the wives of your sons that are from your loins; and it is forbidden to you to have two sisters together in marriage, except what has already passed; surely, Allah is Most Forgiving, Merciful.

وَلَيْسَتْ الْأُخْتُ وَأُمُّهُتُمْ الَّتِي أَرْضَعَتْكُمْ وَأَخَوَاتُكُمْ  
اور بیٹیاں بہن کی اور تمہاری وہ بھینیں جنہوں نے دودھ پلایا تم کو اور بیٹیں تمہاری  
مِنَ الرِّضَاعَةِ وَأُمُّهُتُمْ نِسَاءُكُمْ ذَرَايَاكُمْ الَّتِي فِي  
دودھ کی اور ماں تھیں تمہاری بیویوں کی اور تمہاری وہ بیویاں جن کو  
حُجُورُكُمْ مِّنْ نِّسَائِكُمُ الَّتِي دَخَلْتُمْ بِهِنَّ رِفَاقًا  
تمہاری گودوں میں ہیں تمہاری ان بیویوں میں سے کہ داخل ہو چکے تم جن پر پس ان کو  
لَمْ تَكُونُوا دَخَلْتُمْ بِهِنَّ فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْكُمْ زَوْجًا مَّعَ  
تیس ہو چکے تم داخل ان پر تو نہیں کوئی گناہ تم پر اور بیویاں  
أَبْنَائِكُمُ الَّذِينَ مِّنْ أَضْلَافِكُمْ وَأَن تَجْمَعُوا بَيْنَ  
تمہاری بیٹوں کی وہ جو پشت سے ہیں تمہاری اور یہ کہ اکٹھا کرو تم  
الْأَخْتَيْنِ إِلَّا مَا قَدْ سَلَفَ إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ غَفُورًا رَّحِيمًا  
دو بہنوں کو سوائے اس کے جو پہلے یقیناً اتر چکے بہت بخشش والا بہت رحم کرنے والا



25. And forbidden to you are married women, except such as your right hands possess. This has Allah enjoined on you. And allowed to you are those beyond that, that you seek *them* by means of your property, marrying them properly and not committing fornication. And for the benefit you receive from them, give them their dowries, as fixed, and there shall be no sin for you in anything you mutually agree upon, after the fixing of the dowry. Surely, Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

26. And whoso of you cannot afford to marry free, believing women, let *him* marry what your right hands possess, namely, your believing handmaids. And Allah knows your faith best; you are *all* one from another; so marry them with the leave of their masters and give them their dowries according to what is fair, they being chaste, not committing fornication, nor taking secret paramours. And if, after they are married, they are guilty of lewdness, they shall have half the punishment prescribed

وَالْمُحْصَنَاتُ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ إِلَّا مَا مَلَكَتْ أَيْمَانُكُمْ

اور حرا کی گھنٹی تم پر، خاندانہ والی عورتیں سوائے انکے کہ مالک ہوئے (بچکے)، دائیں ہاتھ تمہارے

كِتَبَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْكُمْ، وَاجِلْ لَكُمْ مَا وَادَّ ذُلُكُمْ أَنْ

(اللہ پر ایمان کو لکھ کے اوپر اپنے اور جائز کی گئی واسطے تمہارے جو عبادہ ہے ان کے اس طرح بیکر

تَبْتَغُوا بِأَمْوَالِكُمْ مُحْصَنَاتٍ غَيْرَ مُسَافِحِينَ،

چاہو کہ عورتوں سے تعلیق کر لی، اپنے مالوں کے ساتھ نکاح کرتے ہوئے نہ شہوت مٹاتے ہوئے

فَمَا اسْتَمْتَعْتُمْ بِهِ مِنْهُنَّ فَآتُوهُنَّ أُجُورَهُنَّ

پھر جو (عورت کے) فائدہ اٹھایا تم نے اس سے ان عورتوں پر اس سے تو دو ان کو ہر ایک کے

فَرِيضَةً، وَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْكُمْ فِيمَا تَرَا ضَيْتُمْ بِهِ

مقرر شدہ اور نہیں کوئی گناہ تم پر اس بات پر کہ آپس میں راہمی ہوئے تم میں بات، پر

مِنْ بَعْدِ الْفَرِيضَةِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ عَلِيمًا حَكِيمًا ۝

بعد متوالہ (ہر) کے یقیناً اللہ ہے خوب جاننے والا حکمت والا

مَنْ لَمْ يَسْتَطِعْ مِنْكُمْ طَوْلًا أَنْ يَنْكِحَ الْمُحْصَنَاتِ

اور جو نہ طاقت رکھے تم میں سے دولت کے لحاظ سے کہ نکاح کرے آزاد

الْمُؤْمِنَاتِ فَمِنْ مَّا مَلَكَتْ أَيْمَانُكُمْ مِنْ فَتَيَاتِكُمْ

مومن عورتوں سے تو ان میں سے نکاح کرو کہ مالک ہوئے (بچکے) کے دائیں ہاتھ تمہارے اپنی لڑکیوں سے

الْمُؤْمِنَاتِ، وَاللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ بِأَيْمَانِكُمْ بَعْضُكُمْ مِنْ

جو مومن ہیں اور اللہ خوب جانتا ہے تمہارے ایمان کو بعض تمہارے

بَعْضٍ، فَانكِحُوهُنَّ بِأَذْنِ أَهْلِهِنَّ وَآتُوهُنَّ أُجُورَهُنَّ

بعض سے ہیں پس نکاح کرو ان لڑکیوں سے با اجازت انکے مالکوں کے اور دو ان کو ہر ایک کے

بِالْمَعْرُوفِ مُحْصَنَاتٍ غَيْرَ مُسْفِحَاتٍ وَلَا مُتَخِفَاتٍ

نسب طریق سے بیکر وہ نکاح کرنے والیاں ہوں نہ شہوت مٹانے والیاں اور نہ ہانپنے والیاں

أَخَذْنَ، فَإِذَا أُحْصِنَ فَإِنَّ أَتَيْنَ بِفَا حَشَةٍ فَعَلَيْهِنَّ

پہنچے دوست پھر جب ان کا نکاح ہو جائے تو اگر دیکریں کوئی بے حیائی تو ان پر

for free women. This is for him among you who fears lest he should commit sin. And that you restrain yourselves is better for you; and Allah is Most Forgiving, Merciful.

R. 5.

27. Allah desires to make clear to you, and guide you to, the paths of those before you, and to turn to you in mercy. And Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

28. And Allah wishes to turn to you in mercy, but those who follow *their* low desires wish that you should stray far away.

29. Allah desires to lighten your burden, for man has been created weak.

30. O ye who believe! devour not your property among yourselves by unlawful means, except that *you earn* by trade with mutual consent. And kill not yourselves. Surely, Allah is Merciful to you.

31. And whosoever does that by way of transgression and injustice, We shall cast him into Fire; and that is easy with Allah.

نُصِفْ مَا عَلِ الْمُحْصَنَاتِ مِنَ الْعَذَابِ ذَٰلِكَ لِمَنْ

نصف اس (سزا) کا ہے جو آزاد عورتوں پر

خِشْيِ الْعَنَتِ مِنْكُمْ وَأَنْ تَصْبِرُوا خَيْرَ لَكُمْ وَاللَّهُ

کھینچنے سے بچنے خوف ہو بھاری کا تمہیں سے اور اگر صبر کرو بہتر ہے تمہارے لیے اور اللہ

عَفُوٌّ رَحِيمٌ ۚ يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ لِيُذْهِبَ عَنْكُمُ

بخشنے والا بہت نرم کریم والا ہے اللہ کہوں کیوں کرے واسطے تمہارے اور ہدایت دے تم کو

سُنَنَ الَّذِينَ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ وَيَتُوبَ عَلَيْكُمْ وَاللَّهُ

طریقوں کی ان لوگوں کے جو پہلے تھے تم سے اور فضل سے توبہ ہو تم پر اور اللہ

عَلَيْكُمْ حَكِيمٌ ۚ وَاللَّهُ يُرِيدُ أَنْ يَتُوبَ عَلَيْكُمْ وَ

خوب جاننے والا ہے حکمت والا ہے اور اللہ چاہتا ہے کہ نفل سے توبہ ہو تم پر

يُرِيدُ الَّذِينَ يَتَّبِعُونَ الشُّهُوتِ أَنْ تَمِيلُوا مِيلَ

چاہتے ہیں وہ لوگ جو پیروی کرتے ہیں خواہشات کی کہ ہلک جاؤ تم جگ جانا

عَظِيمًا ۚ يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ أَنْ يُخَفِّفَ عَنْكُمْ وَخُلِقَ

بہت چاہتا ہے اللہ کہ ہلکا کرے (لو بوجھ) تم سے اور پیدا کیا گیا ہے

الْإِنْسَانُ ضَعِيفًا ۚ يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا لَا تَأْكُلُوا

انسان ضعیف اسے لوگو جو ایمان لائے ہو نہ کھاؤ

أَمْوَالَكُمْ بَيْنَكُمْ بِالْبَاطِلِ ۖ لَا أَنْ تَكُونُوا تِجَارَةً

مال اپنے آپس میں ناجائز طور پر سواشے اس کے ہو تجارت

عَنْ تَرَاضٍ وَمِنْكُمْ وَلَا تَقْتُلُوا أَنْفُسَكُمْ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ

رضامندی سے تمہاری اور قتل کرو اپنے تمہیں یقیناً اللہ

كَانَ بِكُمْ رَحِيمًا ۚ وَمَنْ يَفْعَلْ ذَٰلِكَ عُدُوًّا وَآثًا وَ

ہے تم پر بہت نرم کریم والا اور جو شخص کرے گا ایسا زیادتی سے اور

ظُلْمًا فَسَوْفَ نُصْلِيهِ نَارًا وَكَانَ ذَٰلِكَ عَلَى اللَّهِ

علم سے تو ضرور ہم داخل کریں گے اسے آگ میں اور ہے اللہ پر

32. If you keep away from the more grievous of the things which are forbidden you, We will remove from you your minor evils and admit you to a place of great honour.

33. And covet not that whereby Allah has made some of you excel others. Men shall have a share of that which they have earned, and women a share of that which they have earned. And ask Allah of His bounty. Surely, Allah has perfect knowledge of all things.

34. And to every one We have appointed heirs to what the parents and the relations leave, and also those with whom your oaths have ratified a contract. So give them their portion. Surely, Allah watches over all things.

يَسِيرًا ۚ اِنْ تَجْتَنِبُوا كَبِيرًا مَّا تُنْهَوْنَ عَنْهُ

آسان اگر بچو گمراہیوں سے کہ بڑا گناہ ہے تو کہ

نُكَفِّرْ عَنْكُمْ سَيِّئَاتِكُمْ وَنُدْخِلْكُمْ مِّنْ خَلْقِكُمْ مَّثَلًا ۚ كَرِيمًا ﴿٣٢﴾

ہم تمہاری گمراہیوں کو مٹا دیں اور تمہاری مثال کے طور پر تمہاری مثال کے طور پر

وَلَا تَتَمَنَّوْا مَا فَضَّلَ اللَّهُ بِهِ بَعْضَكُمْ عَلَىٰ بَعْضٍ ۚ

اور نہ آرزو کرو کہ جس کو اللہ نے اس کے ذریعہ تمہارے بعض کو

لِلرِّجَالِ نَصِيبٌ مِّمَّا كَسَبُوا ۚ وَلِلنِّسَاءِ نَصِيبٌ مِّمَّا

مردوں کے لیے حصہ ہے اس سے جو کدیا انہوں نے اور عورتوں کے لیے حصہ ہے

كَسَبْنَ ۚ وَسَأَلُوا اللَّهَ مِنْ فَضْلِهِ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ

اس سے جو کدیا انہوں نے اور مانگو اللہ سے فضل اس کا یقیناً اللہ

كَانَ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عَلِيمًا ﴿٣٣﴾ وَلِكُلٍّ جَعَلْنَا مَوَالِيَ مِّمَّا

ہے ہر بات کو خوب جاننے والا اور ہر ایک کے لیے ہم نے باپ یا دارث اس مال کے

تَرَكَ الْوَالِدَينَ وَالْأَقْرَبُونَ ۚ وَالَّذِينَ عَقَدَتْ

جو چھوڑا والدین اور رشتہ داروں نے اور وہ جن سے تعلیق قائم کیا

أَيْمَانُكُمْ فَآتَوْهُمْ نَصِيبَهُمْ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَ عَلَىٰ

تمہاری قسموں نے تو دے ان کو حصہ ان کا یقیناً اللہ ہے

كُلِّ شَيْءٍ شَهِيدًا ﴿٣٤﴾ الرِّجَالُ قَوَّامُونَ عَلَى النِّسَاءِ ۚ

ہر بات پر نگران مرد نگران ہیں عورتوں پر اس لیے کہ



## CHAPTER 5

### AL-MĀ'IDAH (*Revealed after Hijrah*)

#### *Date of Revelation*

According to Commentators of the Qur'ān this *Sūrah* belongs to the Medinite period. Ā'ishah reported by Hākim and Imām Aḥmad to have said that this is the last *Sūrah* which was revealed to the Holy Prophet. Taking into consideration all the revelation data one is inevitably led to the conclusion that the *Sūrah* was revealed in the last years of the Holy Prophet's ministry and some of its verses were actually among last to be revealed. Though Imām Aḥmad says on the authority of 'Asmā', daughter of Yazīd, that whole of this *Sūrah* was revealed together, it seems that because a major portion of it was revealed at one time, the whole of it came to be regarded as having been revealed at the same time. This is why perhaps Rodwell has assigned the *Sūrah* the last place in order of revelation.

#### *Subject-Matter*

The *Sūrah*, like *Sūrah* Āl 'Imrān and Al-Nisā', deals mainly with Christian doctrines and particularly denounces the doctrine that the Law is curse. It opens with the injunction that all covenants must be fulfilled and that it was necessary to lay down laws as to what is lawful and what is unlawful. It further claims that the Qur'ān has laid down ordinances bearing upon man's complete moral and spiritual development, and it is in this respect that the Qur'ān constitutes the final and irrevocable Divine Law for all mankind. This claim of the Qur'ān is embodied in the fourth verse of the *Sūrah*, which also implies that because the Law is most essential for the spiritual guidance of man and his moral development, it is wrong to regard it as a curse. The verse further hints that when the eating of the meat offered to idols and of blood and of strangled animals was forbidden to Christians and this commandment constituted an ordinance of the Law (The Acts 15:20. 29), they could not take exception to the Law and condemn it as a curse. The *Sūrah* proceeds to lay down Islāmic commandments with regard to eatables and enjoins that they should be *Ḥalāl*, i.e., allowed by the Law and *Tayyib* (pure), i.e., their use should in no way contravene or offend against medical or hygienic regulations. Islām, alone of all religions, while laying down ordinances regarding lawful and unlawful things, has pointed out the nice distinction between what is only lawful and what is both lawful and pure. Next, it is stated that the Jews and the Christians broke God's covenants and disregarded and defied Divine commandments which led to their moral and spiritual ruin and brought disgrace and humiliation on them. But they could now rehabilitate themselves into Divine favor by accepting the Holy Prophet. Christians are further warned that at first by deifying Jesus they caused the wrath of God to come down upon them and that now they have become jealous of the Holy Prophet because God has chosen him for His favors. This jealous



attitude of theirs towards the Holy Prophet resembles that of Cain towards Abel. The *Sūrah* proceeds to state that while Jews and Christians lose no opportunity to oppose Islām, they themselves have become so depraved as to have ceased to act upon their own religious Scriptures and are increasingly becoming ignorant of the teachings of their own religions. They are told that if they do not see their way to accepting Islām they should at least follow their own Scriptures and abide by their own Law. But if, owing to the political supremacy of Islām they have sometimes to seek the judgement of the Islāmic Government, that judgement will and must inevitably be according to the Qur'ānic Law. Then attention of the Muslims is drawn to the great change that has come over their political position and they are told that as the power of the infidels has been finally broken and Christians now are to be the principal enemies, and Jews in spite of their enmity towards Christianity, are to side with Christians, they (Muslims) should be on their guard against both of them. Some light is then shed on the stratagems and machinations employed by the enemies of Islām to turn Muslims away from their Faith and to lower in their estimation. After this, importance of the preaching of Islām is impressed upon Muslims. They are told that the one real method effectively to defeat the activities of Jews and Christians is to preach the Message of Islām to them and to bring home to them its truth from their own Scriptures. It should also be made clear to them that now their salvation lies in Islām and, that their idolatrous beliefs are false, particularly the doctrine that Jesus was son of God. Similarly, mention is made of Jews who, by opposing and persecuting the two great Prophets - David and Jesus - incurred God's displeasure. Their attention is drawn to their past faults and failings, and Christians being more amenable to accepting the commandments about what is lawful and what is unlawful; commandments about oaths; about the use of wine and games of chance and about hunting; and also commandments regarding criticism of religion and ordinances about religious rites and ceremonies and about evidence. Last of all a somewhat detailed mention is made of the particular circumstances of Jesus's ministry, and it is shown that they closely resemble those of other Prophets of God and that therefore there was nothing of Godhead or Divinity about him and that all material progress of Christian people was due to a prayer of his. But they have made improper use of their material progress and prosperity and have succumbed to polytheistic beliefs and practices. God will, on the Day of Judgement, establish their guilt and put them to shame from the mouth of Jesus himself. The *Sūrah* ends with the declaration that to God belongs the Kingdom of heavens and the earth and He has power over all things, which implies the hint that the belief that the Kingdom of God is only in heaven as the Christians say, has no foundation

(Revealed after Hijra)

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful.
2. O ye who believe! fulfil *your* contracts. Lawful are made to you quadrupeds *of the class* of cattle other than those which are being announced to you, except that you should not hold game to be lawful while you are in a state of pilgrimage; verily, Allah decrees what He wills.
3. O ye who believe! profane not the

۱۰۰

میں پڑھتا ہوں) ساتھ نام اللہ کے (جو) رحمن (اور) رحیم ہے

يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا أَفَوَيْدُ الْعُقُودِ أَجَلَتْ لَكُمْ

اے ایمان لائے ہو پورا کرو عہدوں کو حلال کئے گئے تمہارے لئے

بِإِيمَانِهِ الْأَنْعَامِ وَالْإِبْرَاهِيمَ عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ

موسیقی سوائے ان کے جو بڑھ جاتے ہیں تم پر نہ حلال خانے ہوئے  
چوہائے نکار کو

وَأَنْتُمْ حَرَمُونَ ۚ اللَّهُ يَخْصُكُمْ مَا يَشَاءُ يَتَٰزَوَّجُهَا لِبَنِّهِ

اور کم حالت احرام میں ہو

Signs of Allah, nor the Sacred Month, nor the animals brought as an offering, nor the animals of sacrifice wearing collars, nor those repairing to the Sacred House, seeking grace from their Lord, and His pleasure. And when you put off the pilgrims' garb and are clear of the Sacred Territory, you may hunt. And let not the enmity of a people, that they hindered you from the Sacred Mosque, incite you to transgress. And help one another in righteousness and piety; but help not one another in sin and transgression. And fear Allah; surely, Allah is severe in punishment.

4. Forbidden to you is the flesh of an animal which dies of itself, and blood and the flesh of swine; and that on which is invoked the name of one other than Allah; and that which has been strangled; and that beaten to death; and that killed by a fall; and that which has been gored to death; and that of which a wild animal has eaten, except that which you have properly slaughtered; and that which has been slaughtered at an altar. And forbidden is also that you seek to know your lot by the divining arrows. That is an act of disobedience. This day have those who disbelieve despaired of harming your religion. So

اٰمَنُوْا لَا تُجْلُوْا شَهْرًا لِلّٰهِ وَلَا الشَّهْرَ الْحَرَامَ وَلَا

ایمان لائے ہو نہ چھ مہینے کو نہ اللہ کے اور نہ مہینہ عزت والے کی اور نہ

الْهَدْيَ وَلَا الْفَلَاحَةَ وَلَا اَقْسِيْنَ الْبَيْتِ الْحَرَامِ

قرآن کی اور نہ گنہوں کی اور نہ قصہ کرنے والوں کی بیت الحرام کا

يَسْتَعْمِلُوْنَ فَضْلًا مِّنْ رَّبِّهِمْ وِرْضًا نَّاءٍ وَّادَا حَلَلْتُمْ

کراہ چاہتے ہیں فضل اپنے رب کا اور رضامندی اور جب احرام کھول دو تم

فَاَصْطَادُوا وَلَا يُغْرِبْ مَنَّكُمْ شَتَاَنُ قَوْمٍ اَنْ صَدَّ وَكُمُ

شکار کر سکتے ہو اور نہ آلودہ کرے تم کو دشمنی کسی قوم کی کہ نہ کا تمہا انہوں نے

عَنِ الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ اَنْ تَعْتَدُوْا مَدَنًا وَتَوَاعِلَ

تہیں مسجد الحرام سے کہ تم زیادتی کرو اور آپس میں مدد کرو

الْبَيْرَةِ وَالْثَّقْوَىٰ وَلَا تَعَاوَنُوْا عَلٰى الْاِثْمِ وَالْعُدْوَانِ

نہی اور تقویٰ پر اور نہ مدد کرو آپس میں گناہ پر اور زیادتی پر

وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ شَدِيْدُ الْعِقَابِ ۭ حُرْمَتُ

اور ڈرو اللہ سے یقیناً اللہ سخت ہے سزا دینے میں حرام کیا گیا

عَلَيْكُمْ الْمَيْتَةُ وَالْدَّمُ وَلَحْمُ الْخَنَازِيرِ وَمَا اِهْلَ لَیْغِبِ

تم پر مردار اور خون اور گوشت خنزیر کا اور وہ کہ چھپا لیا (غیر

اللّٰهِ بِهِ وَالْمُنْخَنِقَةُ وَالْمَوْقُوْذَةُ وَالْمُتَرَدِّيَةُ

اللہ کا جس پر اور کھلا گھسی ہوئی اور چوٹ لگی ہوئی اور اوپر سے گری ہوئی

وَالنَّطِيْحَةُ وَمَا اَكَلَ السَّبُعُ اِلَّا مَا ذَكَّيْتُمْ وَمَا ذُبِحَ

اور سینگ لگی ہوئی اور جسے کھا لیا ہو درندہ نے سواٹے اٹکے جسے ذبح کرو تم اور جو ذبح کیا گیا

عَلٰى النُّصْبِ اَنْ تَسْتَفْسِمُوْا اِلَّا اَنْزِلَ ذٰلِكُمْ فَنَسُوقُ

استغاثوں پر اور یہ کہ قسمت معلوم کرو تم بذریعہ جوش کے ترول کے یہ گناہ ہے

الْيَوْمَ رَیْسُ الْاٰیْمِ الْكَافِرِ اِنْ دِیْنَكُمْ فَلَا تَخْشَوْهُمْ

آج یا دہی ہو گئے وہ لوگ جنہوں نے کفر کیا دین سے تمہارے پس نہ ڈرو ان سے

fear them not, but fear Me. This day have I perfected your religion for you and completed My favour upon you and have chosen for you Islam as religion. But whoso is forced by hunger, without being wilfully inclined to sin, then, surely, Allah is Most Forgiving, Merciful.

5. They ask thee what is made lawful for them. Say, 'All good things have been made lawful for you; and what you have taught the beasts and birds of prey to catch for you, training them for hunting and teaching them of what Allah has taught you. So eat of that which they catch for you, and pronounce thereon the name of Allah. And fear Allah. Surely, Allah is quick in reckoning.'

6. This day all good things have been made lawful for you. And the food of the People of the Book is lawful for you, and your food is lawful for them. And lawful for you are chaste believing women and chaste women from among those who were given the Book before you, when you give them their dowries, contracting valid marriage and not committing fornication

وَإِخْشَؤُنِي ۖ الْيَوْمَ اكْمَلْتُ لَكُمْ دِينَكُمْ وَأَتِمَمْتُ

اور دُورِ مُجْمَعِ آج کمال کیا میں نے تمہارے لیے دین تمہارا اور پوری کی میں نے

عَلَيْكُمْ دِينَكُمْ وَأَتِمَمْتُ دِينَكُمْ لَكُمْ لَا إِشْلَاقَ فِي دِينِكُمْ فَمَنْ

آج تمہارا دین اور تمہارا دین تمہارے لیے اسلام کو دین کے طور پر پس جو

اضْطُرَّ فِي مَخْمَصَةٍ غَيْرَ مُتَجَانِفٍ لِآثِمِهِ ۖ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ

مجبور ہو جائے بخوک میں نہ مچلنے والا طرف گناہ کی توفیق اللہ

غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ ۚ يَسْأَلُكَ مَا آذَى الْجَاهِلُ لَهُمْ قُلْ أَجَلُ

جتنے والا بہت کم کرنا ہے۔ پوچھتے ہیں تمہارے کیا کچھ حلال کیا گیا ہے انکے لیے تو کہہ دے حلال کی گئی

لَكُمْ الطَّيِّبَاتُ ۖ وَمَا عَلَّمْتُم مِّنَ الْجَوَارِحِ مُكَلِّبِينَ

پس تمہارے لیے پاک چیزیں اور وہ جنہیں سکھایا تم نے شکار کی جانوروں میں سے شکار کا طریق سکھاتے ہوئے،

تَعْلَمُونَ لَهُنَّ مِمَّا عَلَّمَكُمُ اللَّهُ ۚ فَكُلُوا مِمَّا مَسَكَنَ

سکھاتے ہوئے تم انہیں اس سے جو سکھایا تمہیں اللہ نے پس کھاؤ اس سے جو رکھ رکھاؤ وہ شکاری

عَلَيْكُمْ وَادْكُرُوا اللَّهَ عَالِمِي ۖ وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ ۖ إِنَّ اللَّهَ

جانور پر تم اور ذکر کرو نام اللہ کا اسی رشکار پر اور ڈرو اللہ سے یقیناً اللہ

سَرِيعُ الْحِسَابِ ۚ الْيَوْمَ اكْمَلْتُ لَكُمْ الدِّينَ ۚ وَ

جلد لینے والا ہے حساب آج حلال کی گئیں واسطے تمہارے پاک چیزیں اور

طَعَامَ الَّذِينَ أُوتُوا الْكِتَابَ ۚ كُلْ لَكُمْ وَطَعَامُ كُفْرٍ ۚ

کھانا ان لوگوں کا جو دیئے گئے کتاب حلال ہے تمہارے لیے اور کھانا تمہارا حلال ہے

لَهُمْ ۚ وَالْمُحْصَنَاتُ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنَاتِ وَالْمُحْصَنَاتُ مِنَ

انکے لیے اور حلال کی گئیں پاک عورتیں مسلمان عورتوں میں سے اور پاک عورتیں

الَّذِينَ أُوتُوا الْكِتَابَ مِن قَبْلِكُمْ ۖ إِذَا آتَيْتُمُوهُنَّ

لوگوں میں سے جو دیئے گئے کتاب پہلے تم سے جبکہ دے دو تم ان عورتوں کو

أَجُورَهُنَّ مُحْصِنِينَ غَيْرَ مُسَافِحِينَ وَلَا مُتَخَفِذِينَ

ہر ان کے قید کماج میں لاتے ہوئے نہ شہوت ملاتے ہوئے اور نہ بناتے ہوئے

nor taking secret paramours. And who-  
ever rejects the faith, his work has doubt-  
less come to naught, and in the Hereafter  
he will be among the losers.

R. 2.

7. O ye who believe! when you stand  
up for Prayer, wash your faces, and your  
hands up to the elbows, and pass your  
*wet* hands over your heads, and *wash* your  
feet to the ankles. And if you be unclean,  
purify yourselves *by bathing*. And if you  
are ill or *you are* on a journey *while unclean*,  
or one of you comes from the privy or you  
have touched women, and you find not  
water, betake yourselves to pure dust and  
wipe therewith your faces and your hands.  
Allah desires not that He should place you  
in a difficulty, but He desires to purify  
you and to complete His favour upon you,  
so that you may be grateful.

8. And remember Allah's favour upon  
you and the covenant which He made  
with you, when you said, 'We hear and

اٰخِذِيْنَ وَمَنْ يَكْفُرْ بِالْاِيْمَانِ فَقَدْ حَبِطَ عَمَلُهُ زُو  
پروشنیدہ یار اور جو انکار کرے ایمان کا تو یقیناً جھوٹ ہو گئے اس کے عمل اور  
هُوَ فِي الْاٰخِرَةِ مِنَ الْخٰسِرِيْنَ ۝ اِيْمَانِ لَا يَمُنُو  
وہ آخرت میں ناکاموں میں سے ہے اے لوگو جو ایمان لائے  
اِذَا قُمْتُمْ إِلَى الصَّلٰوةِ فَاغْسِلُوْا وُجُوْهَكُمْ وَاَيْدِيَكُمْ  
جب کہ تشرع ہو تم طوت نماز کی تو دھو لیا کرو اپنے منہ اور اپنے ہاتھ  
إِلَى الْمَرَافِقِ وَاصْبَحُوا بِرُءُوسِكُمْ وَأَرْجُلُكُمْ إِلَى  
کنبوں تک اور مسح کرو اپنے سروں کا اور دھو لیا کرو اپنے پیروں کو  
الْكٰفِيْنَ ۝ وَإِنْ كُنْتُمْ جُنُبًا فَاطَّهَّرُوا وَإِنْ كُنْتُمْ  
نمیزوں تک اور اگر ہو تم نجس ہو کر یا کھڑے ہو کر اور اگر  
مَرْضًى أَوْ عَلَى سَفَرٍ أَوْ جَاءَ أَحَدٌ مِنْكُمْ مِنَ الْغَائِطِ  
بیمار یا سفر پر یا آؤسے کوئی تم میں سے جانتے ضرور سے  
أَوْ لَمَسْتُمُ النِّسَاءَ فَلَمْ تَجِدُوا مَاءً فَتَيَمَّمُوا  
اور پھیرا تم نے عورتوں کو پھر نہ پاؤ تم پانی تو قصہ کرو  
صَعِيْدًا طَيِّبًا فَامْسَحُوا بِرُءُوسِكُمْ وَأَيْدِيكُمْ  
مٹی پاک کا پھر مسح کرو اپنے چہروں کا اور اپنے ہاتھوں کا اس  
مِنْهُ مَا يُرِيدُ ۝ اللَّهُ لِيَجْعَلَ عَلَيْكُمْ مِنْ حَرَجٍ  
رہتی سے نہیں چاہتا اللہ نہ کرے تم پر کوئی تنگی  
وَلٰكِنْ يَّرِيْدُ لِيُطَهِّرَكُمْ وَلِيُتِمَّ نِعْمَتَهُ عَلَيْكُمْ  
دیکھیں وہ چاہتا ہے کہ پاک کرے تم کو اور تاکہ پوری کرے اپنی نعمت تم پر  
لَعَلَّكُمْ تَشْكُرُوْنَ ۝ وَادْكُرُوا نِعْمَةَ اللَّهِ عَلَيْكُمْ  
تاکہ تم شکر کرو اور یاد کرو نعمت اللہ کی اپنے پر اور  
مِثْلًا قَدْ اَلٰذِيْ وَاتَّقُوا رَبَّ ۝ اِذَا قُلْتُمْ سَمِعْنَا وَأَطَعْنَا  
عند اس کا جو کہ یا اس نے تم سے جب کہ تم نے سنا ہم نے اور اطاعت کی تم نے

we obey.' And fear Allah. Surely, Allah knows well what is in the minds.

9. O ye who believe! be steadfast in the cause of Allah, bearing witness in equity; and let not a people's enmity incite you to act otherwise than with justice. Be *always* just, that is nearer to righteousness. And fear Allah. Surely, Allah is aware of what you do.

10. Allah has promised those who believe and do good deeds that they shall have forgiveness and a great reward.

11. And *as for* those who disbelieve and reject Our Signs, they are the people of Hell.

12. O ye who believe! remember Allah's favour upon you when a people intended to stretch out their hands against you, but He withheld their hands from you; and fear Allah. And on Allah should the believers rely.

R. 3.

13. And indeed Allah did take a covenant from the children of Israel; and We raised among them twelve leaders. And Allah said, 'Surely, I am with you. If you

وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلِيمٌ بِذَاتِ الصُّدُورِ ﴿١٥﴾ يَا أَيُّهَا

اَلَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا كُوْنُوْا قَوَّامِيْنَ لِلّٰهِ شُهَدَآءَ بِالْقِسْطِ

وَلَا يَجْرِمَنَّكُمْ شَنَاٰنُ قَوْمٍ عَلٰٓى اَلَّا تَعْدِلُوْا اِعْدِلُوْا

هُوَ اَقْرَبُ لِلتَّقْوٰى ز وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ اِنَّ اللَّهَ خَبِيْرٌۢ بِمَا

تَعْمَلُوْنَ ۝ وََعَدَ اللّٰهُ الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا وَعَمِلُوا الصّٰلِحٰتِ

لَهُمْ مَغْفِرَةٌ وَّاَجْرٌ عَظِيْمٌ ۝ وَالَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا

كَذٰٓبُوْا يٰۤاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا اَصْحٰبُ الْجَحِيْمِ ۝ يٰۤاَيُّهَا

الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا اذْكُرُوْا اِنَّمَا اتَّخَذْتُم مِّن دُونِ

اللّٰهِ مَوَدَّةَ بَشَرٍ فَمَتٰى يَصْعَدُ الْبَشَرُ أِِنْ

كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّوْنَ النَّاسَ ۚ وَاللّٰهُ اَعْلَمُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ

وَالَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا وَعَمِلُوا الصّٰلِحٰتِ لَنُدْخِلَنَّهُمْ

فِي الْغَفُوْرَةِ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

الْبَشَرِ عَلَيْهِمْ غَضَبٌ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَلَهُمْ اَعْدَآءُ

بِغَيْرِ حَسَابٍ ۚ وَالَّذِيْنَ يَتَّبِعُوا مَوَدَّةَ

observe Prayer, and pay the Zakāt, and believe in My Messengers and support them, and lend to Allah a goodly loan, I will remove your evils from you and admit you into Gardens beneath which streams flow. But whoso from among you disbelieves thereafter does indeed stray away from the right path.'

14. So, because of their breaking their covenant, We have cursed them, and have hardened their hearts. They pervert the words from their *proper* places and have forgotten a *good* part of that with which they were exhorted. And thou wilt not cease to discover treachery on their part, except in a few of them. So pardon them and turn away *from them*. Surely, Allah loves those who do good.

15. And from those *also* who say, 'We are Christians,' We took a covenant, but they too have forgotten a *good* part of that with which they were exhorted. So We have caused enmity and hatred among them till the Day of Resurrection. And Allah will soon let them know what they have been doing.

اَقِمْتُمُ الصَّلٰوةَ وَآتَيْتُمُ الزَّكٰوةَ وَآمَنْتُمْ بِرُسُلِي  
تاقم کی تم نے نماز اور دی تم نے زکوٰۃ اور ایمان لائے تم رسولوں پر میرے  
وَعَزَّزْتُمُوهُمْ وَاقْرَضْتُمُ اللّٰهَ قَرْضًا حَسَنًا  
اور مدد کی تم نے ان کی اور قرض دیا تم نے اللہ کو اچھا  
لَا تُكْفِرْنَ عَنْكُمْ سَيِّئَاتِكُمْ وَلَا ذُنُوبَكُمْ جَعَلْتَ تَجْبِرِي  
خود خود دُور کرو گے تم سے بُرائیاں تمہاری اور خود خود داخل کرو گے تم کو باغاتی میں کہ جیسی ہیں  
مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْاَنْهَارُ فَمَنْ كَفَرَ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ مِنْكُمْ فَقَدْ  
پیچھے جین کے نہیں پھر جس نے کفر کیا بعد اس کے تم میں سے تو یقیناً  
ضَلَّ سَوَاءَ السَّبِيلِ <sup>[۱۴]</sup> فَيَسْمَا نَقُضُهُمْ مِّثْلًا قَهْمُ  
گمراہ ہوا وہ درست راہ سے ہیں سبب ان کے توڑنے کے اپنا عہد  
لَعَنَهُمْ وَجَعَلْنَا قُلُوبَهُمْ قَاسِيَةً يُحَرِّفُونَ الْكَلِمَ  
لعنت کی کہ نے ان پر اور بنایا ہم نے دلوں کو ان کے سخت وہ بدلا دیتے ہیں باتوں کو  
عَنْ مَوَاضِعِهِ وَنَسُوا حَظًّا مِمَّا ذُكِّرُوا بِهِ وَلَا تَزَالُ  
گہلوں سے ان کی اور بھول گئے وہ ایک حصہ اس کے کہ وہ نصیحت کی گئی تھی بچے ذریعہ اور توبہ کے  
تُظَلِّمُ عَلَى خَائِنَةٍ مِنْهُمْ اَلَا قَلِيلًا مِّنْهُمْ قَاعِفُ  
ہمیشہ مطلق ہوتا خیانت پر ان کی طرف سے سوائے تھوڑوں کے ان میں سے پس درگزر کر  
عَنْهُمْ وَاَصْفَحْ <sup>[۱۵]</sup> اِنَّ اللّٰهَ يُحِبُّ الْمُخْسِنِينَ <sup>[۱۶]</sup> وَمِنْ  
ان سے اور معاف کر یقیناً اللہ پسند کرتا ہے محسنوں کو اور ان  
الَّذِينَ قَالُوا اِنَّا نَصْرِيْكَ اَخَذْنَا مِيثَاقَهُمْ فَنَسُوا  
لوگوں سے جنہوں نے کہا ہم تیرا مدد کریں یا تھا ہم نے وعدہ ان سے پس وہ بھول گئے  
حَظًّا مِّمَّا ذُكِّرُوا بِهِ فَافْغَرْنَا بِئَنَّهُمْ الْعَدَاوَةَ  
ایک حصہ اس کے کہ وہ نصیحت کی گئی تھی بچے ذریعہ پس والدی ہم نے درمیان ان کے دشمنی  
وَالْبَغْضَاءَ اِلٰی يَوْمِ الْقِيٰمَةِ <sup>[۱۷]</sup> وَسَوْفَ يُنَبِّئُهُمُ اللّٰهُ بِمَا  
اور کفین تا روز قیامت اور غریب آگاہ کرے گا ان کو اللہ اس سے



16. O People of the Book! there has come to you Our Messenger who unfolds to you much of what you had kept hidden of the Book and passes over much. There has come to you indeed from Allah a Light and a clear Book.

17. Thereby does Allah guide those who seek His pleasure on the paths of peace, and leads them out of every *kind* of darkness into light by His will, and guides them to the right path.

18. They have indeed disbelieved who say, 'Surely, Allah is none but the Messiah, son of Mary.' Say, 'Who then has any power against Allah, if He desire to bring to naught the Messiah, son of Mary, and his mother and all those that are in the earth?' And to Allah belongs the kingdom of the heavens and the earth and what is between them. He creates what He pleases; and Allah has power to do all things.

19. The Jews and the Christians say, 'We are sons of Allah and His loved ones.' Say, 'Why then does He punish you for your sins?'

کَا تَوَايَعْنَهُمْ هَآءَ هَآءَ الْكِتَابِ قَدْ جَاءَكُمْ سُورُنَا

جو تھے وہ کرتے اے اہل کتاب یقیناً آگیا تمہارے پاس رسول ہمارا

بَيِّنٌ لِّكُمْ كَثِيرًا مِّمَّا كُنْتُمْ تُخْفُونَ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ

کھل کر بیان کرتا ہے تمہارے لیے بہت کچھ اس سے جو تھے تم کتاب میں سے

وَيَعْفُو عَنْ كَثِيرٍ قَدْ جَاءَكُمْ مِنَ اللَّهِ نُورٌ وَكِتَابٌ

اور درگزر کرتا ہے بہت سے یقیناً آگیا تمہارے پاس نور اور کتاب

مُبِينٌ يَهْدِي بِرَبِّهِ اللَّهُ مَنِ اتَّبَعَ لِضُوءَاتِهِ سُبُلُ

کھل کر دکھائی دیتا ہے بذریعہ انور اللہ اسے جس نے پیروی کی راسخی ہوتے ہوئے اہل دانش کو راستوں

السَّلَامِ وَيُخْرِجُهُم مِّنَ الظُّلُمَاتِ إِلَى النُّورِ بِإِذْنِهِ

کی سلاحتی کے اور وہ نکالتا ہے انہیں انوریزوں سے طرف نور کی ساقی اپنے حکم کے

وَيَهْدِي لَهُمْ إِلَى صِرَاطٍ مُسْتَقِيمٍ ۚ لَقَدْ كَفَرَ الَّذِينَ

اور ہدایت دیتا ہے انہیں راہ سیدھی کی یقیناً یقیناً تمہیں ان لوگوں نے

قَالُوا إِنَّ اللَّهَ هُوَ الْمَسِيحُ ابْنُ مَرْيَمَ قُلْ فَمَنْ

جنہوں نے کہا یقیناً اللہ ہی مسیح ابن مریم ہے تو کہہ دے ہیں کون

يَمْلِكُ مِنَ اللَّهِ شَيْئًا إِنْ أَرَادَ أَنْ يُهْلِكَ الْمَسِيحَ ابْنَ

ہاک ہے بظاہر اللہ کے کسی بات کا اگر وہ ارادہ کرے کہ ہلاک کرے مسیح ابن

مَرْيَمَ وَآمَنَهُ وَمَنْ فِي الْأَرْضِ جَمِيعًا وَلِلَّهِ مُلْكُ

مریم کو اور ماں کو اسکی اور ان کو جو زمین میں ہیں سب کو الارض کی ہی ہے بادشاہی

السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَمَا بَيْنَهُمَا يَخْلُقُ مَا يَشَاءُ وَاللَّهُ

آسمانوں کی اور زمین کی اور جو درمیان ہے ان دونوں کے وہ پیدا کرتا ہے جو چاہتا ہے اور

اللَّهُ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ قُلْ شَيْءٌ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ قَالَتِ الْيَهُودُ وَالنَّصَارَى نَحْنُ

اللہ ہر بات پر خوب قدرت رکھنے والا ہے اور کئی یہودیوں اور عیسائیوں نے کہ ہم

أَبْنَاءُ اللَّهِ وَاجْتَبَاؤُهُ قُلْ فَلِمَ يُعَذِّبُكُمْ بِذُنُوبِكُمْ ۖ

ابنوں کے اور پیار سے ہی ان کے تو کہہ دے پھر کیوں عذاب دیتا ہے تمہیں بسبب گناہوں کے تمہارے

یہی ہیں



Nay, you are *only* human beings among those He has created.' He forgives whom He pleases and punishes whom He pleases. And to Allah belongs the kingdom of the heavens and the earth and what is between them, and to Him shall be the return.

20. O People of the Book! there has come to you Our Messenger, after a break in the *series of* Messengers, who makes things clear to you lest you say, 'There has come to us no bearer of glad tidings and no warner.' So a bearer of glad tidings and a warner has indeed come to you. And Allah has power to do all things.

R. 4.

21. And remember when Moses said to his people, 'O my people, call to mind Allah's favour upon you when He appointed Prophets among you and made you kings, and gave you what He gave not to any other among the peoples.'

22. 'O my people, enter the Holy Land which Allah has ordained for you and do not turn back, for then you will turn losers.'

23. They said, 'O Moses, there is in that *land* a haughty and powerful people,

بَلْ أَنْتُمْ بَشَرٌ مِّمَّنْ خَلَقَ يَغْفِرُ لِمَنْ يَشَاءُ

(نہیں) بل تم انسان ہو ان میں سے جو پیدا کئے اس نے وہ بخشتا ہے جسے چاہتا ہے اور

يُعَذِّبُ مَنْ يَشَاءُ وَلِلَّهِ مَلَكُ السَّمَوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَ

عذاب دیتا ہے جسے چاہتا ہے اور اللہ ہی کی ہے بادشاہی آسمانوں کی اور زمین کی اور

مَا بَيْنَهُمَا وَإِلَيْهِ الْمَصِيرُ ﴿١٩﴾ يَا هَلْ أَكْثَبَ قَدَ

جو درمیان ہے ان دونوں کے درمیان اس کی ٹھکانا ہے اے اہل کتاب یقیناً

جَاءَكُمْ رَسُولُنَا يُبَيِّنُ لَكُمْ عَلَى قِثْرَةٍ مِّنْ

ایسے تمہارے پاس رسول ہمارا کھول کر بیان کرتا ہے تمہارے لیے دفعہ پر

الرُّسُلِ أَنْ تَقُولُوا مَا جَاءَنَا مِن بَشِيرٍ وَلَا

رسولوں کے یہ کہہ دو تمہیں آیا تمہارے پاس کوئی خوشخبری دینے والا اور

نَذِيرٍ فَقَدْ جَاءَكُمْ بَشِيرٌ وَنَذِيرٌ وَاللَّهُ عَلَى كُلِّ

ڈرانے والا یقیناً آیا تمہارے پاس خوشخبری دینے والا اور ڈرانے والا اور اللہ ہر بات پر

شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ﴿٢٠﴾ وَإِذْ قَالَ مُوسَى لِقَوْمِهِ يَقُولُوا ذُرُّوا

خوب قدرت رکھنے والا ہے اور جب کہا موسیٰ نے اپنی قوم سے اے قوم میری یاد کرو

نِعْمَةَ اللَّهِ عَلَيْكُمْ إِذْ جَعَلَ فِيكُمْ أَنْبِيَاءَ وَجَعَلَ لَكُمْ

نعمت اللہ کی اپنے پر جب بنائے اس نے تم میں نبی اور بنایا تم کو

مَلَكًا تَوَاتَوْا لَكُمْ مَا لَمْ يُؤْتِ أَحَدًا مِّنَ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴿٢١﴾

بادشاہ اور دنیا تم کو جو نہیں دیا کسی کو تمام دنیا میں سے

يَقُولُوا ذُرُّوا الْأَرْضَ الْمُقَدَّسَةَ الَّتِي كَتَبَ اللَّهُ

اے قوم میری داخل ہو ارض مقدس میں وہ جو تمہاری مہدی اللہ نے

لَكُمْ وَلَا تَرْتَدُّوا عَلَى أَدْبَارِكُمْ فَتَنْقَلِبُوا خَاسِرِينَ ﴿٢٢﴾

تیرے لیے اور نہ پھرو اپنی پیٹھوں پر کہیں ہوجاؤ گے تم ناکام

قَالُوا يَا مُوسَى إِنَّا فِيهَا قَوْمٌ جَبَّارُونَ ﴿٢٣﴾ وَإِنَّا لَنَرِيكَ

انہوں نے کہا اے موسیٰ یقیناً اس میں ہے قوم سرکش اور ہم ہرگز نہیں

and we shall not enter it until they go forth from it. But if they go forth from it, then we will enter it.'

24. Thereupon two men from among those who feared *their Lord*, on whom Allah had conferred His favour, said, 'Enter the gate, *advancing* against them; when *once* you have entered it, then surely you will be victorious. And put your trust in Allah, if you are believers.'

25. They said, 'O Moses, we will never enter it so long as they remain in it. Therefore, go thou and thy Lord and fight, and here we sit.'

26. He said, 'My Lord, I have power over none but myself and my brother; therefore make Thou a distinction between us and the rebellious people.'

27. *God* said: 'Verily, it shall be forbidden them for forty years; in distraction shall they wander through the land. So grieve not over the rebellious people.'

R. 5.

28. And relate to them truly the story of the two sons of Adam, when they *each* offered an offering, and it was accepted from one of them and was not accepted from the other. The latter said, 'I will surely kill thee.' The former replied, 'Allah accepts only from the righteous.'

تَدْخُلُهَا حَتَّى يَخْرُجُوا مِنْهَا، فَإِنْ يَخْرُجُوا مِنْهَا  
داعی ہو گئے اسیں یہاں تک کہ نکل جائیں وہ اس سے نکل نکل جائیں گے وہ اس سے  
فَاتَاكَ اِخْلُوكَ قَالَ رَجُلَيْنِ مِنَ الَّذِينَ يَخْتَفُونَ اَنْعَمَ  
تو ہم داعی ہوئے اس لیے ہیں کہا دو آدمیوں نے ان لوگوں میں سے جو ڈرتے تھے انہیں کیا تمنا  
اَللّٰهُ عَلَيْهِمَا اِذَا خُلُوْا عَلَيْهِمُ الْبُيُوتُ، فَاِذَا دَخَلْتُمُوْهُ  
اللہ نے ان دونوں پر داعی ہو جاؤ ان پر دروازے میں پس جب داعی ہو جاؤ گے تو ان کو دروازوں  
فَاَنْتُمْ غٰلِبُوْنَ وَعَلَى اللّٰهِ فَتَوَكَّلُوْا اِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ  
میں تو یقیناً تم غالب ہو گئے اور اللہ پر پس بھروسہ کرو اگر تم مومن ہو  
قَالُوْا يٰمُوسٰى اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ خُلُوهَا بِسَآءٍ اَقْبَادًا مُّوْافِقِيْهَا  
انہوں نے کہا اے موسیٰ یقیناً ہم اگر نہیں داخل ہو گئے اس میں کبھی بھی جب تک وہ رہیں اس میں  
فَاَذْهَبْ اَنْتَ وَرَبُّكَ فَقَاتِلَا اِنَّا هَاهُنَا قَاعٌ دُونَ ذٰلِكَ  
پس جا تو اور رب تیرا دونوں رتو یقیناً ہم یہاں پر بیٹھنے والے ہیں کہا اس نے  
رَبِّ رَاقِيْ لَا اَمْلِكُ اِلَّا نَفْسِيْ وَاَخِيْ فَاَفِرْ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَ  
لے رہے ہیں یقیناً میں نہیں اختیار کرتا مگر اپنی جان پر اور اپنے بھائی کی نہیں اختیار کرتا مگر درمیان ہمارے اور درمیان  
الْقَوْمِ الْفٰسِقِيْنَ قَالَ فَاِنْهَآ مَحْرَمَةٌ عَلَيْهِمْ اَرْبَعِيْنَ  
نوم فاسق کے فرمایا پس یقیناً وہ (زمین) حرام کی گئی ہے ان پر چالیس  
سَنَةً، يَّتِيْتُهُمْ فِيْهَا لَآ اَرْضٌ، فَلَا تَأْسَ عَلَى الْقَوْمِ  
سال مرگداں پھر رہیں گے زمین میں پس نہ غم کھا تو قوم  
الْفٰسِقِيْنَ وَاشْكُ عَلَيْهِمْ تَبَاۗءُ بَنِي اٰدَمَ يٰۤاَحْقِرْ مَا ذُ  
فاسق پر اور بڑھ ان پر خبر دو بنیوں کی آدم کے ساتھ حق کے جگر  
قَرِيْبًا قَرِيْبًا فَتَقْبَلُ مِنْ اَحَدٍ هِمًّا وَلَمْ يَتَقَبَّلْ  
قریبانی کی ان دونوں نے کوئی قریبانی قبول کی گئی طرف سے ایک کی ان دونوں میں سے اور نہ قبول کی گئی  
مِنَ الْاٰخِرِ قَالَ لَا تَمْلِكُ اَنْتَكَ قَالَ اِنَّمَا يَتَقَبَّلُ اللّٰهُ  
طرف سے دوسرے کی اس نے کہا البتہ ضرور میں قبول کرنا کچھ اس نے کہا صرف قبول کرتا ہے اللہ

29. 'If thou stretch out thy hand against me to kill me, I am not going to stretch out my hand against thee to kill thee. I do fear Allah, the Lord of the universe.'

30. 'I wish that thou shouldst bear my sin as well as thy sin, and thus be among the inmates of the Fire, and that is the reward of those who do wrong.'

31. But his mind induced him to kill his brother, so he killed him and became one of the losers.

32. Then Allah sent a raven which scratched in the ground, that He might show him how to hide the corpse of his brother. He said, 'Woe is me! Am I not able to be even like this raven so that I may hide the corpse of my brother?' And then he became regretful.

33. On account of this, We prescribed for the children of Israel that whoever killed a person—unless it be for *killing* a person or for creating disorder in the land—it shall be as if he had killed all mankind; and whoso gave life to one, it shall be as if he had given life to all mankind. And

مِنَ الْمُتَّقِينَ [۱۶] لَئِنْ بَسَطْتَ إِلَى يَدِكَ لَتَقْتُلَنِي

متقیوں سے یقیناً اگر دراز کیا تو نے طرف میری اپنا ہاتھ تو قتل کرے تو مجھے

مَا أَنَا بِسَاطِئِي إِلَيْكَ لَا فَتُكِّلَكَ، وَإِنِّي أَخَافُ

میں نہیں ہوں دراز کرنے والا اپنا ہاتھ تیری طرف نہ اتاروں تو قتل کر دے تو مجھے میں ڈرتا ہوں

اللَّهُ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ [۱۷] إِنْ نِيَدُ أَنْ تُبَيِّتُوا بِأَثِمِي وَ

اللہ رب عالمین سے یقیناً میں چاہتا ہوں کہ تو اٹھائے گئے میرا اور

أَثِمَكَ فَتَكُونُ مِن أَصْحَابِ النَّارِ، وَذَلِكَ جَزَاءُ

گناہ اپنا پس تو ہو جاوے آگ والوں سے اور یہ بدلہ ہے

الظَّالِمِينَ [۱۸] فَطَوَّعَتْ لَهُ نَفْسُهُ قَتْلَ أَخِيهِ فَقَتَلَهُ

ظالموں کا میں رغبت دلائی اس کو نفس نے اس کے قتل کی اپنے بھائی کے جسے اس نے قتل کر دیا

فَأَصْبَحَ مِنَ الْخَاسِرِينَ [۱۹] فَبَعَثَ اللَّهُ غُرَابًا يَبْحَثُ

اسے پس ہو گیا خسارہ پا پتوالوں میں سے پھر بھیجا اللہ نے ایک کوا کر دیا تھا

فِي الْأَرْضِ لِيُرِيَهُ كَيْفَ يُوَارِي سَوَاءَ أَخِيهِ، قَالَ

زمین میں تاکہ دکھا دے اسے کس طرح ڈھانکے وہ لاش اپنے بھائی کی اس نے کہا

يُؤْتِلَتِي أَعْجَزْتُ أَنْ أَكُونَ مِثْلَ هَذَا الْغُرَابِ فَأُوَارِي

لے انہیں مجھ پر کیا عاجز ہو گیا میں کہ ہو جاؤں میں مانند اس کوسے کی کر دھانکوں میں

سَوَاءَ أَخِي، فَأَصْبَحَ مِنَ الشَّامِثِينَ [۲۰] مِنْ أَجْلِ ذَلِكَ

لاش اپنے بھائی کی پس ہو گیا وہ پشیمان ہو پتوالوں میں سے بسبب اس کے

كَتَبْنَا عَلَى بَنِي إِسْرَءِيلَ أَنَّهُ مَن قَتَلَ نَفْسًا بِغَيْرِ

لکھا ہم نے بنی اسرائیل پر کہ جس نے قتل کیا کوئی نفس بغیر

نَفْسٍ أَوْ فَسَادٍ فِي الْأَرْضِ فَكَأَنَّمَا قَتَلَ النَّاسَ جَمِيعًا،

نفس کے یا فساد کرنے کے زمین میں تو گویا کہ قتل کر دیا اسے لوگوں کو سب کو

وَمَنْ أَحْيَاهَا فَكَأَنَّمَا أَحْيَا النَّاسَ جَمِيعًا وَلَقَدْ

اور جس نے زندہ کیا اس کو تو گویا کہ زندہ کیا اسے لوگوں کو سب کو اور یقیناً یقیناً

اور جس نے زندہ کیا اس کو تو گویا کہ زندہ کیا اسے لوگوں کو سب کو اور یقیناً یقیناً

Our Messengers came to them with clear Signs, yet even after that, many of them commit excesses in the land.

34. The reward of those who wage war against Allah and His Messenger and strive to create disorder in the land is *only this* that they be slain or crucified or their hands and their feet be cut off on alternate sides, or they be expelled from the land. That shall be a disgrace for them in this world, and in the Hereafter they shall have a great punishment;

35. Except those who repent before you have them in your power. So know that Allah is Most Forgiving, Merciful.

جَاءَتْهُمْ رُسُلُنَا بِالْبَيِّنَاتِ زُفْرَانَ كَثِيرًا مِّنْهُمْ بَعْدَ

آئے ان کے پاس رسول ہمارے ساتھ دلائل کے پھر بقیہا بہت سے ان میں سے بعد

ذَلِكَ فِي الْأَرْضِ لِمُسْرِفُونَ ﴿١٤﴾ إِنَّمَا جَزَاءُ الَّذِينَ

اس کے زمین میں موزوں سے بڑھنے والے ہیں سوائے ان کے نہیں کہ بدل ان لوگوں کا جو

يَحَارِبُونَ اللَّهَ وَرُسُلَهُ وَيَسْعَوْنَ فِي الْأَرْضِ فَسَادًا

لڑتے ہیں اللہ اور رسول اس کے سے اور کوشش کرتے ہیں زمین میں فساد کی

أَن يُقْتَلُوا أَوْ يَصَلَّبُوا أَوْ تُقَطَّعَ أَيْدِيُهُمْ وَأُرجُلُهُمْ

ہے کہ قتل کیے جاویں یا صلیب دیئے جاویں یا کاٹے جاویں ہاتھ ان کے اور پاؤں ان کے

مِّنْ خِلَافٍ أَوْ يُنْفَوْا مِنَ الْأَرْضِ، ذَلِكَ لَهُمْ خِزْيٌ فِي

خلاف طرف سے یا عطا دی گئے جاویں زمین سے = ان کے لیے ذلت ہے

الْأُتْيَا وَلَهُمْ فِي الْآخِرَةِ عَذَابٌ عَظِيمٌ ﴿١٥﴾ إِلَّا الَّذِينَ

دنیا میں اور ان کے لیے آخرت میں عذاب ہے بڑا سوائے ان لوگوں کے جنہوں

تَابُوا مِن قَبْلِ أَن تَقْدِرُ رُءُوسُهُمْ، فَاَعْلَمُوا أَنَّ اللَّهَ

نے توبہ کی پہلے اس کے کہ تم قابو پاؤ ان پر پس جان لو کہتے ہیں اللہ

غَفُورٌ رَّحِيمٌ ﴿١٦﴾ يَا أَيُّهَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللَّهَ

بہت بخشنے والا بہت رحم کرنے والا ہے اے لوگو جو ایمان لائے ہو ڈرو اللہ سے اور

# QUR'ĀNIC VOCABULARY

## الْمُفْرَدَاتُ الْقُرْآنِ

*al-mufradātul qur'āni*

### SPLIT-WORD TRANSLATION OF SŪRAH AL-FĀTIḤAH AND SŪRAH AL-BAQARAH AND TRANSLITERATION

## RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

عَنْ أَنَسٍ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ قَالَ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ صَلَّى  
اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ مَثَلُ الْمُؤْمِنِ الَّذِي يَقْرَأُ الْقُرْآنَ مَثَلُ  
الْأُتْرُجَةِ رِيحُهَا طَيِّبٌ وَطَعْمُهَا طَيِّبٌ وَمَثَلُ الْمُؤْمِنِ  
الَّذِي لَا يَقْرَأُ الْقُرْآنَ مَثَلُ التَّمْرَةِ طَعْمُهَا طَيِّبٌ وَلَا رِيحَ  
لَهَا وَمَثَلُ الْفَاجِرِ الَّذِي يَقْرَأُ الْقُرْآنَ كَمَثَلِ الرِّيحَانَةِ  
رِيحُهَا طَيِّبٌ وَطَعْمُهَا مُرٌّ وَمَثَلُ الْفَاجِرِ الَّذِي لَا يَقْرَأُ  
الْقُرْآنَ كَمَثَلِ الْحَنْظَلَةِ طَعْمُهَا مُرٌّ وَلَا رِيحَ لَهَا -

Ḥaḍrat Anas<sup>ra</sup> relates that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said: "A believer who recites the Holy Qur'ān is like a tangerine, which tastes good and also has a pleasant smell; a believer who does not recite the Holy Qur'ān is like a date, which tastes good but has no smell. A sinner who recites the Holy Qur'ān is like sweet basil flower (*Ocimum pelosum*) which smells pleasant but is bitter in taste; a sinner who does not recite the Holy Qur'ān is like a wild gourd, which does not smell good and also has a bitter taste."

(Abū Dā'ūd kitābul adab bāb man yu'mar ayyu jālis)

**QUR'ĀNIC VOCABULARY (الْمُفْرَدَاتُ الْقُرْآنُ)**  
**SPLIT-WORD TRANSLATION OF**  
**SŪRAH AL-FĀTIḤAH AND SŪRAH AL-BAQARAH**

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
الرَّحْمَنُ	( <i>ArRaḥmān</i> ) The Most Gracious	غَشَاوَةٌ	( <i>Ghishāwatun</i> ) Covering	سَمَاءٌ	( <i>Samā 'un</i> ) Cloud; Sky
الرَّحِيمُ	( <i>ArRaḥīm</i> ) The Ever Merciful	عَظِيمٌ	( <i>'Aẓīmun</i> ) Great	رَعْدٌ	( <i>Ra 'dun</i> ) Thunder
حَمْدٌ	( <i>Ḥamdu</i> ) Praise; Goodness	مَرَضٌ	( <i>Maraḍun</i> ) Disease	بَرْقٌ	( <i>Barqun</i> ) Lightning
رَبِّ	( <i>Rabbi</i> ) Creator, Protector	أَلِيمٌ	( <i>Alīmun</i> ) Grievous	أَصَابِعُ	( <i>Aṣābi 'a</i> ) Fingers
عَالَمِينَ	( <i>'Ālamīn</i> ) Worlds; Universe	عَذَابٌ	( <i>'Adhābun</i> ) Punishment	أَذَانٌ	( <i>Ādhānun</i> ) Ears
يَوْمٍ	( <i>Yaum</i> ) Day, Time	نَسْتَعِينُ	( <i>Nasta 'inu</i> ) We do implore for help	حَذَرٌ	( <i>Ḥadhara</i> ) Fear
صِرَاطٌ	( <i>Ṣirāta</i> ) Path	مُضِلُّوْنَ	( <i>Muṣliḥūn</i> ) Reformers	مُحِيطٌ	( <i>Muḥiṭun</i> ) One who encompasses
مُسْتَقِيمٌ	( <i>Mustaqīma</i> ) Straight, Right	النَّاسُ	( <i>Annāsu</i> ) The people	يَخْطَفُ	( <i>Yakhṭafu</i> ) He snatches away
أَنْعَمْتَ	( <i>An 'amta</i> ) You have bestowed your favors	سُفَهَاءٌ	( <i>Sufahā 'u</i> ) Fools	سَمْعٌ	( <i>Sam 'i</i> ) Hearing
الْمَغْضُوبِ	( <i>Al-maghḍūbi</i> ) Those who have incurred <i>your</i> wrath	شَيَاطِينِ	( <i>Shayāṭīn</i> ) Ring-leaders	خَلَقَ	( <i>Khalaqa</i> ) He created
ضَالِّينَ	( <i>ḍā 'allīn</i> ) Those who have gone astray	طُغْيَانِهِمْ	( <i>Tuḡhyānihim</i> ) Their transgression	صَيِّبٌ	( <i>Ṣayyibun</i> ) Heavy rain
رَيْبٌ	( <i>raiba</i> ) Doubt	الْضَّلَالَةُ	( <i>Adḍalālatu</i> ) Error; Mistake	فِرَاشٌ	( <i>Firāshan</i> ) Bed; Resting place
هُدًى	( <i>Hudan</i> ) Guidance	مَثَلٌ	( <i>Mathalu</i> ) Case; Example	بِنَاءٌ	( <i>Binā 'an</i> ) Roof
مُتَّقِينَ	( <i>Muttaqīna</i> ) Righteous people	نَارًا	( <i>Nāran</i> ) Fire	مَاءٌ	( <i>Mā 'an</i> ) Water
ذَلِكَ	( <i>Dhālika</i> ) This	ذَهَبَ اللَّهُ	( <i>Dhahaballāhu</i> ) Allāh took away	ثَمَرَاتٍ	( <i>Thamarāt</i> ) Fruits
أُولَئِكَ	( <i>Uḷā 'ika</i> ) It is they	بِنُورِهِمْ	( <i>Binūrihim</i> ) Their light	أَنْدَادٌ	( <i>Andādan</i> ) Equals; Counterparts
خَتَمَ	( <i>Khatama</i> ) He has set a seal	ظُلُمَاتٍ	( <i>Zulumātin</i> ) Thick darkness	عَبْدَنَا	( <i>'Abdinā</i> ) Our servant
قُلُوبٌ	( <i>Qulūbun</i> ) Hearts	صُمٌّ	( <i>Ṣummun</i> ) Deafs	بِسُورَةٍ	( <i>Bisūratin</i> ) A chapter; Sign
سَمْعٍ	( <i>Sam 'in</i> ) Ears	بُكْمٌ	( <i>Bukmun</i> ) Dumbs	وَقُودٌ	( <i>Waqūdu</i> ) Fuel; Fire-wood

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
أَبْصَارُهُمْ	( <i>Abṣārahum</i> ) Their sight	عُمَى	( <i>'Umyun</i> ) Blinds	الْحِجَارَةُ	( <i>Al-hijāratun</i> ) Special stone
أَنْهَارٌ	( <i>Anhārun</i> ) Streams	غَيْبٌ	( <i>Ghaiba</i> ) Secrets; Hidden matters	يَا بَنِيَّ	( <i>Yā banī</i> ) O Children
أَزْوَاجٌ	( <i>Azwājun</i> ) Mates	أَبَى	( <i>Abā</i> ) He refused	نِعْمَتٌ	( <i>Ni'matun</i> ) Favors
مُطَهَّرَةٌ	( <i>Mutahharatun</i> ) Chaste; Pured	كَافِرِينَ	( <i>Kāfirīn</i> ) Disbelievers	أَنْعَمْتُ	( <i>An'amtu</i> ) I rewarded
بُعُوضَةٌ	( <i>Ba'ūdatan</i> ) Gnat	كُلَا	( <i>Kulā</i> ) Both of you eat	أَوْفُوا	( <i>Aufū</i> ) You fulfil
يُضِلُّ	( <i>Yudillu</i> ) He adjudges to be in error	رَغَدَا	( <i>Raghadan</i> ) Plentifully	أَنْزَلْتُ	( <i>Anzaltu</i> ) I have sent
فُسِّقِينَ	( <i>Fāsiqīn</i> ) Disobedient	لَا تَقْرَبَا	( <i>Lā taqrabā</i> ) Approach not both of you	لَا تَشْتَرُوا	( <i>Lā tashtarū</i> ) Barter not
عَهْدٌ	( <i>'Ahdin</i> ) Covenant	شَجَرَةٌ	( <i>Shajaratun</i> ) Tree	ثَمَنًا	( <i>Thamanan</i> ) Price
مِيثَاقٍ	( <i>Mithāqin</i> ) Having established	ظَالِمِينَ	( <i>Zālimīn</i> ) Wrongdoers	قَلِيلًا	( <i>Qalīlan</i> ) A paltry (price)
خُسِرُونَ	( <i>Khāsirūna</i> ) Losers	أَزْلَهُمَا	( <i>Azallahumā</i> ) He (Satan) caused them both to slip	حَقٌّ	( <i>Haqqun</i> ) Truth
أَمْوَاتًا	( <i>Amwātan</i> ) Without Life; Dead ones	إِهْبِطُوا	( <i>Ihbitū</i> ) Go forth; Get out	بِالْبَاطِلِ	( <i>Bilbāṭili</i> ) With falsehood
عَلِيمٌ	( <i>'Alimun</i> ) One who knows most	عَدُوٌّ	( <i>'Aduwwun</i> ) Enemy	وَارْكَعُوا	( <i>Warka'ū</i> ) And bow down
جَاعِلٌ	( <i>Jā'ilun</i> ) One who creates	مُسْتَقَرٌّ	( <i>Mustaqarrun</i> ) Abode	الرُّكَّعِينَ	( <i>Arrāki'in</i> ) Those who bow down
خَلِيفَةٌ	( <i>Khalīfah</i> ) Vicegerant	مَتَاعٌ	( <i>Matā'un</i> ) Provision	بِالْبِرِّ	( <i>Bilbirri</i> ) Of good; Righteousness
دِمَاءٌ	( <i>Dimā'un</i> ) Blood	كَلِمَتٍ	( <i>Kalimātin</i> ) Words of prayer; Commandments	وَأَسْتَعِينُوا	( <i>Wasta'inū</i> ) And seek help
نُسَبِّحُ	( <i>Nusabbihū</i> ) We glorify	الْأَوَابُ	( <i>Attawwāb</i> ) Oft-returning with compassion	بِالصَّبْرِ	( <i>Biṣṣabri</i> ) With patience
نُقَدِّسُ	( <i>Nuqaddisu</i> ) We extol holiness	تَبِعَ	( <i>Tabi'a</i> ) Shall follow	خُشِعِينَ	( <i>Khāshi'in</i> ) Humble in spirit
أَعْلَمُ	( <i>A'lamu</i> ) I know well	خَوْفٌ	( <i>Khaufun</i> ) Fear	أَذْكُرُوا	( <i>Udhkarū</i> ) Remember
عَلَّمَ	( <i>'Allama</i> ) He taught	آيَاتٍ	( <i>Āyāti</i> ) Signs	وَاتَّقُوا	( <i>Wattaqū</i> ) And fear
أَسْمَاءٌ	( <i>Asmā'un</i> ) Names; Attributes	أَصْحَابُ النَّارِ	( <i>Ashābunnār</i> ) Inmates of the Fire	تَحْتَهَا	( <i>Taḥtiḥā</i> ) Beneath these (gardens)
يَنْقُضُونَ	( <i>Yanquḍūna</i> ) They break	أَنْبِئُونِي	( <i>Anbi'ūnī</i> ) Tell me	أَسْكُنْ	( <i>Uskun</i> ) Dwell; Live



ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
صَادِقِينَ	( <i>Ṣādiqīn</i> ) Truthful; Right	خَالِدُونَ	( <i>Khālidūna</i> ) They will abide; They will remain permanently	شَفَاعَةٌ	( <i>Shafā'atun</i> ) Intercession
عَدْلٌ	( <i>ʿAdlun</i> ) Ransom	الْغَمَامَ	( <i>Al-ghamāma</i> ) The clouds	أَذْنَى	( <i>Adnā</i> ) Worse; Inferior
نَجَّيْنَاكُمْ	( <i>Najjainākum</i> ) We delivered you	طَيِّبَاتٍ	( <i>Tayyibāt</i> ) The good things	إِهْبِطُوا	( <i>Ihbiṭū</i> ) Go down
سُوءٌ	( <i>Sū'an</i> ) Grievous	إِتَّخَذْتُمْ	( <i>Ittakhadhtum</i> ) They took	مِصْرًا	( <i>Miṣran</i> ) Town/City
بَلَاءٌ	( <i>Bafā'un</i> ) Trial; Test	قَرْيَةً	( <i>Qaryata</i> ) Town	ذِلَّةٌ	( <i>Dhillatu</i> ) Abasement
فَرَّقْنَا بَيْنَكُمْ	( <i>Farraqnā bikum</i> ) We divided for you	حَيْثُ	( <i>Haithu</i> ) Wherever	مَسْكَنَةٌ	( <i>Maskanatu</i> ) Destitution
بَحْرٌ	( <i>Baḥrun</i> ) The sea	خَطِيئَتُكُمْ	( <i>Khaṭāyākum</i> ) Your sins	غَضَبٍ	( <i>Ghaḍabin</i> ) The wrath
وَعَدْنَا	( <i>Wā'adnā</i> ) We made a promise	قَوْلًا	( <i>Qaulan</i> ) For a word	عَصَوْا	( <i>ʿAṣawwa</i> ) They rebelled
أَرْبَعِينَ	( <i>Arba'inā</i> ) Forty	رِجْزًا	( <i>Rijzan</i> ) Punishment	كَانُوا يَغْتَدُونَ	( <i>Kānū ya'tadūna</i> ) They transgressed
لَيْلَةٌ	( <i>Lailatan</i> ) Night	بِعَصَاكَ	( <i>Bi-'aṣāka</i> ) With thy rod	هَادُوا	( <i>Hadū</i> ) Became Jews
الْعِجْلَ	( <i>Al-'ijla</i> ) The calf	فَانْفَجَرَتْ	( <i>Fanfajarat</i> ) So gushed forth	نَصْرَى	( <i>Naṣārā</i> ) The Christians
ظَالِمُونَ	( <i>Zālimūn</i> ) Transgressors	إِنْنَا عَشْرَةٌ	( <i>Ithnatā 'ashrah</i> ) Twelve	صَبِيئِينَ	( <i>Ṣabī'in</i> ) The Sabians
عَفَوْنَا	( <i>ʿAfaunā</i> ) We forgave	عَيْنًا	( <i>ʿAinan</i> ) Springs	أَجْرٌ	( <i>Ajrun</i> ) Reward
أَتَيْنَا	( <i>Ātainā</i> ) We gave	كُلُّ أَنْاسٍ	( <i>Kullu unāsin</i> ) Every tribe	الْطُّورَ	( <i>Atṭur</i> ) The Mount
الْفُرْقَانَ	( <i>Al-furqāna</i> ) The Discrimination	لَا تَغْفُوا	( <i>Lā ta'thau</i> ) Commit not iniquity	خُذُوا	( <i>Khudhū</i> ) Hold fast
قَوْمٍ	( <i>Qaumin</i> ) Nation	طَعَامٍ	( <i>Ta'āmin</i> ) Food	خَسِرِينَ	( <i>Khāsirin</i> ) The losers
بَارِئُكُمْ	( <i>Bāri'ikum</i> ) Your Maker	بَقْلِهَا	( <i>Baqlihā</i> ) Its herbs	إِعْتَدُوا	( <i>I'tadau</i> ) They transgressed
نَرَى	( <i>Narā</i> ) We see	فِتْنَاتِهَا	( <i>Qiththā'ihā</i> ) Its cucumbers	سَبْتٍ	( <i>Sabti</i> ) Saturday
جَهْرَةً	( <i>Jahratan</i> ) Face to face	قُومِهَا	( <i>Fūmihā</i> ) Its wheat; Garlic	قِرْدَةً	( <i>Qiradatan</i> ) Apes
صُعِقَةٌ	( <i>Ṣā'iqatu</i> ) The thunderbolt	عَدَسِهَا	( <i>ʿAdasihā</i> ) Its lentils	خَسِيبِينَ	( <i>Khāsi'in</i> ) Despised
مُفْسِدُونَ	( <i>Mufsidūna</i> ) Those who create disorder	إِسْتَوْقَدَ	( <i>Istauqada</i> ) He kindled	مَا حَوْلَهُ	( <i>Mā ḥaulahū</i> ) All around him

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
بَعَثْنَاكُمْ	(Ba'athnākum) We raised you	بَصَلَهَا	(Baṣalihā) Its onions	تُؤْمَرُونَ	(Tu'marūna) You are commanded
مَوْعِظَةٌ	(Mau'izatun) A lesson; An admonition	قَسَتْ	(Qasat) Became hardened	أَيَّامًا	(Ayyāman) A few days
تَذْبَحُو	(Tadhbaḥū) Slaughter	يَشَقُّو	(Yashshaqqaqu) That cleaves asunder	خَلَاقٍ	(Khalāqi) Share
بَقَرَةٌ	(Baqaratan) A cow	يَهْبِطُ	(Yahbitu) Humbles	مِمَّا	(Mimmā) Out of what
هُزُوا	(Huzuwan) To make a jest	خَشْيَةُ اللَّهِ	(Khashyatillāhi) Fear of Allāh	سَيِّئَةٌ	(Sayyi'atan) Evil
جَاهِلِينَ	(Jāhilin) Ignorants	غَافِلٌ	(Ghāfilun) Unmindful	أَحَاطَتْ	(Aḥātat) Has encompassed
مَا	(Mā) What	كَلَّمَ اللَّهُ	(Kalāmallāh) The Word of Allāh	خَطِيئَتُهُ	(Khaṭī'atuhū) His sins
فَارِضٌ	(Fāridun) Old	يُحَرِّفُونَ	(Yuḥarrifūna) They distort; Pervert	كَادُوا	(Kādū) Were near
بِكْرٌ	(Bikrun) Young	يَعْلَمُونَ	(Ya'lamūna) They know	إِسْتَسْقَى	(Istasqā) He prayed for water
عَوَانٌ	('Awānun) Full-grown	فَتَحَ اللَّهُ	(Fataḥallāhu) Allāh has unfolded	تَشَابَهَ	(Tashābaha) Appeared alike
لَوْنُهَا	(Launuhā) Her color	يُسِرُّونَ	(Yusirrūna) They keep secret	إِحْسَانًا	(Iḥsānan) To show kindness; Handsome manner
صَفْرَاءُ	(Ṣafrā'u) Dun (Dull brown)	يُعْلِنُونَ	(Yu'linūna) They make known	قُرْبَى	(Qurbā) Kindred
فَاقِعٌ	(Fāqi'un) Rich in tone	أُمِّيُونَ	(Ummiyyūna) Illiterate	تَوَلَّيْتُمْ	(Tawallaitum) You turned away
تَسُرُّ	(Tasurru) She delights	أَمَانِيٌّ	(Amāniyya) False notions	لَا تَسْفِكُونَ	(Lā tasfikūna) You will not shed
نَظَرِينَ	(Nazirina) Observers	يَظُنُّونَ	(Yazunnūna) They conjecture	لَا تَهْوَى	(Lā tahwā) Desired not
لَنْ تَمَسَّ	(Lan tamassa) Shall never touch	وَيْلٌ	(Wailun) Woe; Distress	دِيَارِكُمْ	(Diyārikum) Your homes
تُثِيرُ	(Tuthiru) She ploughs	يَكْتُبُونَ	(Yaktabūna) They Write	أَقْرَزْتُمْ	(Aqrartum) You confirmed
حَزَتْ	(Hartha) Tilth	أَيْدِي	(Aidi) Hands	فَرِيقًا	(Fariqan) A section
شَيْئَةً	(Shiyata) Any blemish; Flaw	عِنْدِ	('Indi) Here; With; By	إِثْمٌ	(Ithmun) Sin
مُخْرِجٌ	(Mukhrijun) Is to bring to light	يَكْسِبُونَ	(Yaksibūna) They earn	عُدْوَانٌ	('Udwānun) Transgression
تَسْقِي	(Tasqi) She waters	يَنْفَجِرُ	(Yatafajjaru) Gush forth	ذُلُولٌ	(Dhalūlun) Well-trained

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
ثُمَّ	(Thumma) Then	تَمَسَّنَا	(Tamassanā) Touch us	يَشَاءُ	(Yashā'u) He wishes
تُفَدُّوْ	(Tufādū) Your ransom	مُهِنْ	(Muhīnun) Humiliating	أَكْثَرُهُمْ	(Aktharuhum) Most of them
إِخْرَاجُ	(Ikhrāju) Expulsion	نُؤْمِنُ	(Nu'minu) We believe	وَرَاءَ	(Warā'a) Behind
جَزَاءُ	(Jazā'un) Reward; Return	خُذُوا	(Khudhū) Hold	لَكَبِيرَةٌ	(Lakabīratun) This indeed is hard
خِزْيٌ	(Khizyun) Disgrace	بِقُوَّةٍ	(Bi quwwatin) Firmly	سِحْرٌ	(Siḥra) Deception; Magic
أَشَدُّ	(Ashaddu) Worse; Stronger; Harder; Severe	سَمِعْنَا	(Sami'nā) We heard	فِتْنَةٌ	(Fitnatun) Trial
عَذَابٍ	(Adhāb) Punishment	عَصَيْنَا	(Asainā) We disobeyed	مَرْءٌ	(Mar'un) Man
الْحَيَاةُ	(Al-hayāti) Life	إِيمَانٌ	(Imānu) Faith	ضَارِرِينَ	(Dā arrīna) Harmful
يُخَفَّفُ	(Yukhaffafu) Shall be lightened	الدَّارُ	(Addāru) The abode	مَثْوِيَةٌ	(Mathūbatun) Reward; Return
لَقَدْ	(Laqad) Verily	خَالِصَةً	(Khāliṣatan) Exclusively	يَخْتَصُّ	(Yakhtassu) He chooses
أَتَيْنَا	(Ātainā) We gave	دُونِ	(Dūni) Other	نَنْسَخُ	(Nansakh) We abrogate
قَفَّيْنَا	(Qaffainā) We sent after	فَتَمَنُّوْ	(Fatamannau) Then you wish	نَنْسِ	(Nunsi) We cause to be forgotten
بَيِّنَاتٍ	(Bayyināti) Manifest signs; Clear proofs	يُودُ	(Yawaddu) He wishes	نَاتٍ	(Na'ti) We take; Bring
أَيَّدْنَاهُ	(Ayyadnāhu) We strengthened him	أَحَدُهُمْ	(Aḥaduhum) Every one of them	مِثْلَهَا	(Mithlihā) Like thereof
فَلَا رَفَثَ	(Flā rafatha) No foul talk	أَلْفٌ	(Alfun) A thousand	وَلِيٍّ	(Waliyyin) Protector; Friend
غُلْفٌ	(Ghulfun) Covers	سَنَةٍ	(Sanatin) Year	تُرِيدُونَ	(Turīdūna) You wish
عَرَفُوا	(Arafū) They knew to be the truth	مُزَحَّزِحِهِ	(Muzahzihihi) Keeping it away	سُئِلَ	(Su'ila) We asked
يَكْفُرُوا	(Yakfurū) They reject	بَصِيرٌ	(Baṣīrun) All-Seeing	ضَلَّ	(Dalla) He has gone astray
بِئْسَ	(Bi'sa) Is evil	عَدُوًّا	(Aduwwan) Enemy	سَبِيلٍ	(Sabīli) Path
يَسْتَغْفِرُكَوْنَ	(Yastaftihūna) They pray for victory	بِإِذْنِ اللَّهِ	(Bi idhnillahi) By the command of Allāh	كَثِيرٌ	(Kathirun) Many
أَقْرَرْتُمْ	(Aqrartum) You confirmed	أُسْرَى	(Usārā) Prisoners	يَخْطَفُ	(Yakhtafu) He snatches

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
بَاءُوا	(Bā'ū) They incurred	بُشْرَى	(Bushrā) Glad tidings	حَسَدًا	(Hasadan) Envy
أَقِيمُوا	(Aqimū) Observe; Perform accurately	خَرَابَهَا	(Kharābihā) To ruin them	بَشِيرًا	(Bashīran) A bearer of glad tidings
أَتُوا	(Ātū) Give; Pay	إِلَّا	(Illā) Except	نَذِيرًا	(Nadhīran) A warner
تَجِدُواهُ	(Tajidū hu) You shall find it	خَائِفِينَ	(Khā'ifina) Those who fear	تَظْهَرُونَ	(Tazāharūna) You back up; Support
هُودًا	(Hūdan) Jews	عَصَوْ	(‘Aṣau) They rebelled	جَحِيمٍ	(Jaḥīmi) Hell
تِلْكَ	(Tilka) These are	أَيْنَمَا	(Ainamā) Withersoever	تَرْضَى	(Tarḍā) Will be pleased
أَمَانِيَّهُمْ	(Amāniyyuhum) Their vain desires	تَوَلَّوْا	(Tuwallū) You will turn	أَهْوَاءَهُمْ	(Ahwā'ahum) Their evil desires
هَاتُوا	(Hātū) Produce	وَجْهَ اللَّهِ	(Wajhullāhi) The Face of Allāh	مَشْرَبٍ	(Mashraba) Drinking place
بُرْهَانُكُمْ	(Burhānakum) Your proof	وَاسِعٌ	(Wāsi'un) Bountiful	خَسِرُونَ	(Khāsirūna) Losers
مَنْ	(Mann) Whoever	وَلَدًا	(Waladan) Son	أُذْكَرُوا	(Udhkarū) Remember
أَسْلَمَ	(Aslama) Submits	سُبْحَانَهُ	(Subḥānahū) Holy is He	يَسْتَغْفِرُونَ	(Yastaftihūna) They pray for victory
مُحْسِنٌ	(Muḥsinun) Doer of good	فَعِيتُونَ	(Qānitūna) Obeying	فَضَّلْتُكُمْ	(Faddaltukum) Exalted you
أَجْرُهُ	(Ajruhū) His reward	بَدِيعٌ	(Badi'u) The Originator	تَجْزِي	(Tajzī) We will substitute
خَوْفٌ	(Khaufun) Fear	قَضَى	(Qaḍā) He decrees	تَنْفَعُ	(Tanfā'u) Shall avail
يَتْلُونَ	(Yatlūna) They read	أَمْرًا	(Amran) A thing	شَفَاعَةٌ	(Shafā'atun) Intercession
يَحْكُمُ	(Yahkumu) He will judge	كُنْ	(Kun) Be	ذَهَبَ بِهِ	(Dhahaba biḥi) He took it away
يَضْرِبُ مَثَلًا	(Yadriba mathalan) He gives example	فَيَكُونُ	(Fayakūnu) It begins to happen	أَتَمَّهُنَّ	(Atammahunna) He fulfilled
يَخْتَلِفُونَ	(Yakhtalifūna) They disagree	تَشَابَهَتْ	(Tashābahat) Became alike	إِمَامًا	(Imāman) A leader
أَظْلَمُ	(Azlamu) More unjust	يُوقِنُونَ	(Yūqinūna) Firmly believe	ذُرِّيَّتِي	(Dhurriyyati) My offspring
مَنْعَ	(Mana'a) Prohibits	أَرْسَلْنَاكَ	(Arsalnāka) We have sent thee	مَثَابَةً	(Mathābatan) A resort
سَعَى	(Sa'a) Seeks	مَشَوْا	(Mashau) They walk	مُصَلًّى	(Muṣallā) A place of Prayer

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
عَهْدَنَا	( <i>'Ahidnā</i> ) We commanded	مُسْلِمَةً	( <i>Muslimatan</i> ) Submissive	الدِّينَ	( <i>Addina</i> ) Perfect religion
طَهَّرَا	( <i>Tahhirā</i> ) You both purify	أَرِنَا	( <i>Arinā</i> ) Show us	لَا تَمُوتُنَّ	( <i>Lā tamūtunna</i> ) Let not death overtake you
طَائِفِينَ	( <i>Tā'ifina</i> ) Those who perform the circuit	مَنَاسِكَتَنَا	( <i>Manāsikanā</i> ) Our ways of worship and sacrifice	مُسْلِمُونَ	( <i>Muslimūna</i> ) Obedient; Those who submit
عَاكِفِينَ	( <i>'Ākifina</i> ) Those who remain for devotion	تُبْ عَلَيْنَا	( <i>Tub 'alainā</i> ) Turn to us with mercy	أَمْ	( <i>Amm</i> ) Or
الرُّكُوعِ	( <i>Arrukka 'i</i> ) Those who bow down	تَوَّابٌ	( <i>Tawwābu</i> ) Oft-returning with compassion	كُنْتُمْ شُهَدَاءَ	( <i>Kuntum shuhadā 'u</i> ) You were present
السُّجُودِ	( <i>Assujūdi</i> ) Those who fall prostrate in Prayer	إِنْعَثْ	( <i>Ib'ath</i> ) Raise up	حَضَرَ	( <i>Ḥaḍara</i> ) Came ( <i>Death</i> )
إِذَا	( <i>Idh</i> ) When	يَتْلُوا	( <i>Yatlū</i> ) He will recite	مَوْتُ	( <i>Mautu</i> ) Death
إِجْعَلْ	( <i>Ij'al</i> ) Make	يُعَلِّمُ	( <i>Yu'allimu</i> ) He will teach	إِلَهَ	( <i>Ilaha</i> ) God; Deity
بَلَدًا	( <i>Baladan</i> ) Town	الْحِكْمَةَ	( <i>Al-ḥikmata</i> ) Wisdom	آبَاءَ	( <i>Ābā 'i</i> ) Fathers
أَمِنَا	( <i>Āminan</i> ) Of peace	يُزَكِّي	( <i>Yuzakki</i> ) He will purify	تِلْكَ	( <i>Tilka</i> ) Those
أُزْرُقِ	( <i>Urzuq</i> ) Provide with fruits	مَنْ	( <i>Mann</i> ) Who	خَلَّتْ	( <i>Khalat</i> ) Have passed away
أَهْلَهُ	( <i>Ahlahū</i> ) Its dwellers	يَرْغَبُ عَنْ	( <i>Yarghabu 'an</i> ) Turns away	كَسَبَتْ	( <i>Kasabat</i> ) These ( <i>people</i> ) earned
أُمَتِّعُ	( <i>Umatti 'u</i> ) I shall bestow benefits	سَفِهَ	( <i>Safiha</i> ) He made a fool	مُخْلِصُونَ	( <i>Mukhlisūna</i> ) Sincerely devoted
أَضْطَرُّ	( <i>Aḍṭarru</i> ) I shall drive to the punishment	إِصْطَفَيْنَا	( <i>Iṣṭafainā</i> ) We have chosen	كَسَبْتُمْ	( <i>Kasabtum</i> ) You earned
بَيْتَ الْمَصِيرِ	( <i>Bi'sal maṣīru</i> ) An evil destination it is	صَالِحِينَ	( <i>Ṣāliḥina</i> ) The righteous	تُسْتَلَوْنَ	( <i>Tus'alūna</i> ) You will be questioned
يَرْفَعُ	( <i>Yarfa 'u</i> ) He raises	أَسْلِمُ	( <i>Aslimu</i> ) Submit	رَاجِعُونَ	( <i>Rāji'unā</i> ) Those who return
قَوَاعِدَ	( <i>Qawā 'ida</i> ) The foundations	أَسْلَمْتُ	( <i>Aslamtu</i> ) I have already submitted	قَبْلَكَ	( <i>Qablika</i> ) Before thee
تَقَبَّلْ	( <i>Taqabbal</i> ) Accept	وَصَّى	( <i>Waṣṣā</i> ) Did enjoin	تَهْتَدُوا	( <i>Tahtadū</i> ) You will be rightly guided
مُسْلِمِينَ	( <i>Muslimaini</i> ) Both submissive	بَنَى	( <i>Baniyya</i> ) My sons	حَنِيفًا	( <i>Ḥanīfan</i> ) Ever inclined to Allāh
أُمَّةٌ	( <i>Ummatan</i> ) Nation; Community	أَعْبُدُوا	( <i>U'budū</i> ) Worship	أَسْبَاطُ	( <i>Asbātun</i> ) Children

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
أُوتِيَ	( <i>Ūtiya</i> ) Given	وَسَطًا	( <i>Wasatan</i> ) Middle; Balanced	إِنَّ	( <i>Inna</i> ) Surely
نُفَرِّقُ	( <i>Nufarriqu</i> ) We make distinction	شُهَدَاءَ	( <i>Shuhadā'a</i> ) Guardians	أُدْعُ	( <i>Ud'u</i> ) Pray
أَمَنْتُمْ	( <i>Āmantum</i> ) You have believed	نَعْلَمُ	( <i>Na'lama</i> ) We know	يَعْرِفُونَ	( <i>Ya'rifūna</i> ) They recognize
إِهْتَدَوْا	( <i>Ihtadau</i> ) They are rightly guided	يَتَّبِعُ	( <i>Yattabi'u</i> ) He follows	يَكْتُمُونَ	( <i>Yaktumūna</i> ) They conceal
تَجِدَنَّ	( <i>Tajidanna</i> ) You shall find	يَنْقَلِبُ	( <i>Yanqalibu</i> ) He turns upon his heels	قَدَّمَتْ	( <i>Qaddamat</i> ) Sent forward
أَذْكُرُ	( <i>Adhkur</i> ) I shall remeber	عَقِبَيَّ	( <i>'Aqibai</i> ) Both heels	فَلَا تَكُونَنَّ	( <i>Fala takūnanna</i> ) Be not of those
يَكْفِي	( <i>Yakfi</i> ) Will suffice	أَقْتُلُوا	( <i>Uqtulū</i> ) Kill	مِنَ الْمُتَمَرِّينَ	( <i>Minal mumtarina</i> ) Who doubt
صِبْغَةً	( <i>Šibghata</i> ) Religion	لِيُضَيِّعَ	( <i>Li-yuḍi'u</i> ) That he would let go ( <i>your faith</i> ) in vain	وَجْهَةً	( <i>Wijhatun</i> ) Goal; Aim
أَحْسَنُ	( <i>Aḥsanu</i> ) Is better	رَعُوفٌ	( <i>Ra'ūfun</i> ) Compassionate	مُوَلِّئَهَا	( <i>Muwallihā</i> ) One who turns his whole attention to it
عَابِدُونَ	( <i>'Ābidūna</i> ) Worshippers	أَحْرَصَ	( <i>Ahrasa</i> ) The most covetous; Desirous	فَاسْتَبِقُوا	( <i>Fastabiqū</i> ) Then vie with one another
تُحَاجُّونَ	( <i>Tuḥā-ajjūna</i> ) You dispute	تَقْلُبُ	( <i>Taqalluba</i> ) Turning often	خَيْرَاتٍ	( <i>Khairāti</i> ) Good works
أَعْمَالُ	( <i>A'mālu</i> ) Deeds	وَجْهَكَ	( <i>Wajhika</i> ) Thy face	أَيْنَ مَا	( <i>Aina mā</i> ) Wherever
أَمْ تَقُولُونَ	( <i>Am taqūlūna</i> ) Do you say?	فَلَنَوَلِّيَنَّكَ	( <i>Falanuwalliyannaka</i> ) Surely, we shall make you turn (to the Qiblah)	خَرَجْتَ	( <i>Kharajta</i> ) You came out
أَظْلَمُ	( <i>Azlamu</i> ) More unjust	شَطْرَ	( <i>Shatra</i> ) Towards	لِئَلَّا يَكُونَ	( <i>Li'alla yakūnu</i> ) So that, there may be no
كَتَمَ	( <i>Katama</i> ) He hid	الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ	( <i>Al-masjidil ḥarām</i> ) Sacred Mosque	حُجَّةٌ	( <i>Hujjatun</i> ) Argument
تَعْمَلُونَ	( <i>Ta'malūna</i> ) You do	حَيْثُ مَا	( <i>Haithu mā</i> ) Wherever	تَخْشَوْنَ	( <i>Takhshau</i> ) Be fearful
سَيَقُولُ	( <i>Sayaqūlu</i> ) They will say	أَبَدًا	( <i>Abadan</i> ) Never	أَتِمُّ	( <i>Utimma</i> ) I shall make perfect
يُعْمَرُ	( <i>Yu'ammuru</i> ) He may be granted a life	أَتَيْتَ	( <i>Ataita</i> ) You came	كَمَا	( <i>Kamā</i> ) Just as
وَلَّى	( <i>Wallā</i> ) Has turned	تَابِعٍ	( <i>Tābi'in</i> ) Follower	أَرْسَلْنَا	( <i>Arsalnā</i> ) We have sent
قِبْلَةً	( <i>Qiblati</i> ) Direction	تَبِعُوا	( <i>Tabi'ū</i> ) They followed	تَعْلَمُونَ	( <i>Ta'lmūna</i> ) You know

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
أَشْكُرُوا	( <i>Ashkurū</i> ) Be thankful	فَلَا جُنَاحَ	( <i>Falā junāḥa</i> ) It is, therefore, no sin	تَصَرِّيفٍ	( <i>Taṣrīfi</i> ) Change (of winds)
يَا أَيُّهَا	( <i>Yā-ayyuhā</i> ) O!	يَطُوفُ	( <i>Yattawwafā</i> ) He goes around	الزَّيْحُ	( <i>Arriyāḥu</i> ) Winds
يُقْتَلُ	( <i>Yuqtalu</i> ) He is killed	مَنْ تَطَوَّعَ خَيْرٌ	( <i>Man tatawwa'a khairan</i> ) Whoso does good voluntarily	تَجْرِي	( <i>Tajrī</i> ) Sail; Flow
أَمْوَاتٌ	( <i>Amwātun</i> ) Dead ones	يَكْتُمُونَ	( <i>Yaktumūna</i> ) Conceal	السَّحَابِ	( <i>Assaḥābi</i> ) Clouds
أَحْيَاءٌ	( <i>Ahyā'un</i> ) Living; Alive	شَاكِرٌ	( <i>Shākirun</i> ) Appreciating	الْمُسَخَّرِ	( <i>Al-musakhkhari</i> ) Pressed into service
لَا تَشْعُرُونَ	( <i>Lā tash'urūna</i> ) You perceive not	بَيِّنًا	( <i>Bayyannā</i> ) We have made it clear	يَعْقِلُونَ	( <i>Ya'qilūna</i> ) They understand
لَنَبْلُوَنَّ	( <i>Lanabluwanna</i> ) We will try you	يَلْعَنُ	( <i>Yal'anū</i> ) He curses	يَتَّخِذُ	( <i>Yattakhidhu</i> ) He takes
الْجُوعِ	( <i>Al-jū'i</i> ) Hunger	لَا عِزَّ	( <i>Lā'inūna</i> ) Those who curse	أَنْدَادًا	( <i>Andādan</i> ) Partners
نَقْصٍ	( <i>Naqsin</i> ) Loss	تَابُوا	( <i>Tābū</i> ) They repented	يُحِبُّونَ	( <i>Yuḥibbūna</i> ) They love
أَمْوَالٍ	( <i>Amwālin</i> ) Wealth	أَصْلَحُوا	( <i>Aṣlahū</i> ) They amended	حُبٍّ	( <i>Ḥubbin</i> ) Love
أَنْفُسٍ	( <i>Anfusin</i> ) Lives	بَيَّنُّوا	( <i>Bayyanū</i> ) They openly declared	إِخْتِلَافٍ	( <i>Ikhtilāfa</i> ) Alternation; Variation
يُبَشِّرُ	( <i>Bashshir</i> ) Give glad tidings	أَتُوبُ	( <i>Atūbu</i> ) I shall turn with forgiveness	يَرَوْنَ	( <i>Yarauna</i> ) They will see
أَصَابَتْ	( <i>Aṣābat</i> ) Overtook	كَفَّارٌ	( <i>Kuffārun</i> ) Disbelievers	شَدِيدٌ	( <i>Shadīdun</i> ) Severe; Extreme
مُصِيبَةٌ	( <i>Muṣibatun</i> ) Misfortune	خَالِدِينَ	( <i>Khālidina</i> ) Those who will remain till long time	يُرِيهِمُ اللَّهُ	( <i>Yurīhumullāhu</i> ) Allāh shows them
رَاجِعُونَ	( <i>Rāji'ūna</i> ) Those who return	يُخَفَّفُ	( <i>Yukhaffafu</i> ) Will be lightened	اتَّبَعُوا	( <i>Attubi'ū</i> ) They were followed
صَلَوَاتٌ	( <i>Ṣalawātun</i> ) Blessings	يُنْظَرُونَ	( <i>Yunzarūna</i> ) They will be granted respite	اتَّبَعُوا	( <i>Ittaba'ū</i> ) They followed
مُهْتَدُونَ	( <i>Muhtadūna</i> ) Those who are rightly guided	حِطَّةٌ	( <i>Ḥittatun</i> ) We ask for forgiveness of our sins	تَقَطَّعَتْ	( <i>Taqatta'at</i> ) To be cut asunder; Cut off
الْصَّفَا	( <i>Aṣṣafā</i> ) A hill in Mecca	الْفُلُكِ	( <i>Al-fulki</i> ) Ships	أَسْبَابُ	( <i>Asbābu</i> ) Means; Ties
الْمَرْوَةِ	( <i>Al-Marwah</i> ) A hill in Mecca	شَرَوْ	( <i>Sharau</i> ) They sold	كَرَّةٌ	( <i>Karatan</i> ) A return (to world)
شَعَائِرُ اللَّهِ	( <i>Sha'a'irillāh</i> ) Signs of Allāh	بَثَّ	( <i>Baththa</i> ) He (God) scattered	نَتَبَرَأُ	( <i>Natabarra-a</i> ) We shall disown
إِعْتَمَرَ	( <i>I'tamara</i> ) He performed 'Umrah	دَابَّةٌ	( <i>Dā-abbatun</i> ) Beasts (Moving creatures)	تَبَرَّأُوا	( <i>Tabarra'ū</i> ) They disowned

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
حَسَرَاتٍ	( <i>Hasarātin</i> ) Anguishes	بَاغٍ	( <i>Bāghin</i> ) Disobedient	مُؤَفُّونَ	( <i>Mūfūna</i> ) Those who fulfil
خَارِجِينَ	( <i>Khārijīna</i> ) Those who get out	عَادٍ	( <i>‘Ādin</i> ) Exceeding the limit	بِعَهْدِهِمْ	( <i>Bi-‘ahdihim</i> ) Their promise
حَالًا	( <i>Hālālan</i> ) Lawfull	يَسْتَتْرُونَ	( <i>Yashtarūna</i> ) They take in exchange	عَاهَدُوا	( <i>‘Āhadū</i> ) They made covenant
طَيِّبًا	( <i>Tayyiban</i> ) Wholesome	يَأْكُلُونَ	( <i>Ya’kulūna</i> ) They eat	بَأْسَاءٍ	( <i>Ba’sā’i</i> ) Poverty
خُطُواتٍ	( <i>Khutuwātin</i> ) Footsteps	بُطُونٍ	( <i>Buṭūni</i> ) Bellies	ضُرَاءٍ	( <i>Ḍarrā’i</i> ) Afflictions
فَحْشَاءٍ	( <i>Fahshā’i</i> ) Foul; Indecencies	اِتَّخَذَ	( <i>Ittakhadha</i> ) Has taken to; Assumed	حِينَ الْبَاسِ	( <i>Hīnal ba’si</i> ) In time of war
نَتَّبِعُ	( <i>Nattabi’u</i> ) We follow	فَمَا أَصْبَرَهُمْ	( <i>Famā aṣḥarahum</i> ) How great is their endurance	صَدَقُوا	( <i>Ṣadaqū</i> ) They have proved truthful
الْفَيْنَا	( <i>Alfainā</i> ) We found	نَزَلَ	( <i>Nazzala</i> ) He sent down	مُتَّقُونَ	( <i>Muttaqūna</i> ) Truly God-fearing
يَهْتَدُونَ	( <i>Yahtadūna</i> ) They follow the right path	تَنْظُرُونَ	( <i>Tanzurūna</i> ) In front of your eyes	كُتِبَ	( <i>Kutiba</i> ) Was prescribed
يَنْعِقُ	( <i>Yan’iqu</i> ) He shouts	شِقَاقٍ بَعِيدٍ	( <i>Shiqāqim ba’id</i> ) Extreme enmity	الْقِصَاصُ	( <i>Al-qīṣāṣu</i> ) Retaliation
يَسْمَعُ	( <i>Yasma’u</i> ) He hears	لَيْسَ	( <i>Laisa</i> ) Is not	الْقَتْلَى	( <i>Al-qatlā</i> ) Slain; Killed ones
دُعَاءٍ	( <i>Du’ā’-an</i> ) Call	الْبِرُّ	( <i>Al-birru</i> ) Righteousness	الْحُرُّ	( <i>Al-ḥurru</i> ) Free man
بِدَاءٍ	( <i>Nidā-’u</i> ) Cry	تَوَلَّوْا	( <i>Tuwallū</i> ) You turn	الْعَبْدُ	( <i>Al-‘abdu</i> ) Slave
إِيَّاهُ	( <i>Iyyāhu</i> ) Him alone	قَبْلَ	( <i>Qibala</i> ) Towards	سَآئِلِينَ	( <i>Sā’ilīna</i> ) Those who ask
الْمَيِّتَةَ	( <i>Al-maitata</i> ) Dead	أَتَى الْمَالَ	( <i>Ātal māla</i> ) He gave money	اِتَّبَاعُ	( <i>Ittabā’un</i> ) To follow
الدَّمُ	( <i>Addama</i> ) Blood	عَلَى حُبِّهِ	( <i>‘Alā ḥubbiḥi</i> ) In spite of it's love	أَدَاءٌ	( <i>Adā’un</i> ) Payment
لَحْمًا	( <i>Lahman</i> ) Flesh	مَسْكِينٍ	( <i>Masākina</i> ) Needy; Poor	يَخْتَصُّ	( <i>Yakhtaṣṣu</i> ) He chooses
خِنْزِيرٍ	( <i>Khinzir</i> ) Swine; Pig	ابْنِ السَّبِيلِ	( <i>Ibnassabili</i> ) Wayfarer	تَخْفِيفٌ	( <i>Takhfifun</i> ) Alleviation
وَمَا أُهْلَ بِهِ لِغَيْرِ اللَّهِ	( <i>Wamā uhillā bihi li ghai rillāhi</i> ) And that on which the name of any other than Allāh has been invoked	عُفِيَ	( <i>‘Ufiya</i> ) He has been granted remission	تَتَّقُونَ	( <i>Tattaqūna</i> ) You guard against evil
إِضْطُرُّ	( <i>Idṭurra</i> ) He is compelled	الرِّقَابِ	( <i>Arriqābi</i> ) Slaves; Captives	تَرَكَ خَيْرًا	( <i>Taraka khairan</i> ) Leaves much wealth



ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
يُبَدِّلُونَ	(Yubaddilūna) They alter	عَنِّي	(‘Annī) About me	خَيْطَ الْأَبْيَضِ	(Khaital-abyaḍu) White thread
خَافَ	(Khāfa) He apprehended	أَجِيبُ	(Ujību) I accept	أَسْوَدَ	(Aswadi) Black
مُوصٍ	(Mūsin) Testator	دَعْوَةٌ	(Da‘watun) Prayer; Call	أَتِمُّوا	(Atimmū) Complete
الصَّيَامِ	(Aṣṣiyāmu) Fasting	الدَّاعِ	(Adda‘i) Suppliant	لَا تُبَاشِرُوهُمْ	(Lā tubāshirūhunna) Do not go in unto them
جَنَافًا	(Janafan) A partiality	دَعَانِ	(Da‘āni) He prayed to me	عَاكِفُونَ	(‘Ākifūna) Those who perform I’tikaf
إِبْتَغُوا	(Ibtaghū) Wish; Seek	فَلْيَسْتَجِيبُوا لِي	(Falyastajībūlī) So that they should hearken to Me	حُدُودَ اللَّهِ	(Ḥudūdullāhi) Limits fixed by Allāh
مَعْدُودَاتٍ	(Ma‘dūdātīn) Fixed number of days	وَالْيَوْمِئُتُوبِ	(Walyu‘minūbī) And they should believe in Me	لَا تَقْرُبُوا	(Lā taqrabū) You approach them not
يُطِيقُونَ	(Yufīqūna) They are able to	لَعَلَّهُمْ	(La‘allahum) May be that they	يُبَيِّنُ	(Yubayyinu) Makes clear
فِدْيَةٍ	(Fidyatun) Expiation	يَزُشُدُونَ	(Yarshudūna) They follow the right way	أُعِدَّتْ	(U-‘iddat) Is prepared
إِتَّقُوا	(Ittaqū) Guard against	أُحِلَّ	(Uhilla) It is made lawful	لَا تُدْلُوا	(Lā tudlū) Do not offer
إِعْتَدُوا عَلَيْهِ	(I’tadau ‘alaihi) Punish him; Retaliate	لَيْلَةَ الصَّيَامِ	(Lailataṣṣiyāmi) Night of the fast	حُكَّامٌ	(Ḥukkāmūn) Authorities
تَصُومُوا	(Taṣūmū) You fast	الرَّفَقْتُ	(Arrafathu) Going in (unto your wives)	فَرِيقًا	(Fariqan) A part
فُرْقَانٌ	(Furqānun) Discrimination	بَلَاءٌ	(Balā‘un) Trial; Test	يَسْأَلُونَكَ	(Yas‘alūnaka) They ask you
شَهِدَ	(Shahida) He was present	كُنْتُمْ تَخْفَاطُونَ	(Kuntum takhtafūna) You had been acting unjustly	نَقْصٍ	(Naqṣin) Diminution; Loss
يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ	(Yurīdullāhu) Allāh desires	فَتَابَ عَلَيْكُمْ	(Fataba ‘alaikum) He has turned to you with mercy	الْأَهْلَةِ	(Al-ahillati) Moons
الْيُسْرَ	(Al-yusra) Ease	فَالَنَ	(Fal’āna) So now	مَوَاقِيتُ	(Mawāqitu) Means for measuring time
الْعُسْرَ	(Al-‘usra) Hardship	بَاشِرُوهُمْ	(Bāshirūhunna) You may go in unto them	شَاكِرٌ	(Shākīrun) Appreciating; Grateful
تُكْمِلُوا	(Tukmilū) You may complete	وَإِبْتَغُوا	(Wabtaghū) And seek	تَأْتُوا	(Ta‘tū) You come into
لَعَلَّكُمْ	(La‘allakum) May be that you	كُلُوا	(Kulū) Eat	الْبُيُوتِ	(Al-buyūta) Houses
سَأَلَكَ	(Sa-alaka) He asked you	يَتَبَيَّنُ	(Yatabayyana) It becomes distinct	ظُهُورَهَا	(Zuhūrihā) The backs thereof

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
لَا تَعْتَدُوا	(Lā ta‘tadū) Do not transgress	لَا تَخْلِقُوا	(Lā tahlīqū) Do not shave	خَيْرَ الزَّادِ	(Khairazzādi) Best provision
لَا يُحِبُّ	(Lā yuḥibbu) He does not like	رُؤُوسَكُمْ	(Ru‘ūsakum) Your heads	يَعْلَمُهُ اللَّهُ	(Ya ‘lamhullāhu) Allāh knows it
الْمُعْتَدِينَ	(Al-mu‘tadīna) The transgressors	يَبْلُغُ	(Yablughu) It reaches	يَأُولَى الْبَابِ	(Ya ulilbāb) O men of understanding
حَيْثُ	(Haithu) Wherever	الْهَدْيُ	(Al-hadyu) Offering (animal)	لَيْسَ	(Laisa) It is no
تَقِفْتُمُوهُمْ	(Thaqiftumūhum) You meet them	مَجَلُهُ	(Mahillahū) Its destination	أَفَلَا	(Afaḷa) Will not then
أَخْرِجُوهُمْ	(Akhrijūhum) Drive them out	بَلَى	(Bla) Yes (why not)	تَبْتَغُوا	(Tabtaghū) You seek
قَاتِلُوا	(Qātilū) Fight	رَأْسِهِ	(Ra’sihī) His head	أَقْضَيْتُمْ	(Afaḍtum) You returned
أُنْزِلَ	(Unzila) Has been revealed	نُسُكٍ	(Nusukin) Sacrifice	أَفِيضُوا	(Afiḍū) Return
إِنْ انْتَهَوْا	(Inintahau) If they desist; Abstain	تَمَتَّعَ	(Tamatta’a) He availed himself	مِنْ حَيْثُ	(Min haithu) From where
مَلَائِكَيْنِ	(Malakaini) Two angels	لَمْ يَجِدْ	(Lam yajid) He could not find	أَفَاضَ النَّاسُ	(Afaḍannāsu) People poured forth
عُدْوَانَ	(‘Udwāna) Hostility; Enmity	ثَلَاثَةَ	(Thalāthatin) Three	قَضَيْتُمْ	(Qaḍaitum) Have performed
الْحُرُمَاتِ	(Al-ḥurumāti) Sacred things	سَبْعَةَ	(Sab’atin) Seven	دُونِ	(Dūni) Besides; Except
قِصَاصٌ	(Qisāṣun) Retaliation	رَجَعْتُمْ	(Raja’tum) You return (to home)	حَسَنَةً	(Ḥasanatun) Good
إِعْتَدَى	(I’tadā) He transgressed	الْعِقَابِ	(Al-‘iqābi) Punishment	قِنَا	(Qinā) Protect us
أَنْفَقُوا	(Anfiqū) Spend	أَشْهُرُ	(Ash-hurun) Months	نَصِيبٌ	(Naṣībun) A goodly share
لَا تُلْقُوا	(Lā tulqū) Cast not yourselves	مَعْلُومَاتٌ	(Ma‘lūmātun) Well known	كَسَبُوا	(Kasabū) They earned
الْتِهْلُكَةِ	(Attahlukuh) Ruin	فَرَضَ	(Farada) He determined	سَرِيعَ الْحِسَابِ	(Sarī‘ul ḥisāb) Swift at reckoning
أَحْسِنُوا	(Aḥsinū) Do good	قَامُوا	(Qāmū) They stand still	يُبَيِّنُ	(Yubayyinu) He expounds
أَتِمُّوا	(Atimmū) Complete	فُسُوقٌ	(Fusūqun) Transgression; Disobedience	تَعْجَلْ	(Ta’ajjala) He hastened
أُحْصِرْتُمْ	(Uḥṣirtum) You are kept back	جِدَالَ	(Jidāla) Quarrelling	تَأَخَّرَ	(Ta akhkharā) He stayed behind
إِسْتَيْسَرَ	(Istaisara) Is easily available	تَزَوَّدُوا	(Tazawwadū) Take provision	تُخْشَرُونَ	(Tuḥsharūna) You will be brought together

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
يُغْجِبُكَ	(Yu 'jibuka) It pleases you	أَتَيْنَهُمْ	(Ātaināhum) We gave them	مَاذَا	(Mādhā) What
يُشْهِدُ اللَّهَ	(Yush hidullāhu) He calls Allāh to witness	وَمَنْ	(Wa mann) And whoso	مَا أَنْفَقْتُمْ	(Mā anfaqtum) Whatever you spent
أَلَدُّ الْخِصَامِ	(Aladdulkhiṣāmi) Contentious of quarrellers	زُيِّنَ	(Zuyyina) Is made to appear attractive	مِنْ خَيْرٍ	(Min khairin) From wealth
تَوَلَّى	(Tawallā) He became ruler	يُبَدِّلُ	(Yubaddil) He changes	مَا تَفَعَّلُوا	(Mā taf'alū) Whatever you do
سَعَى	(Sa'ā) He ran about	يَسْتَخْرُونَ	(Yaskharūna) They scoff at	الْقِتَالُ	(Al-qitālu) Fighting
يُهْلِكُ	(Yuhlika) He destroys	فَوْقَهُمْ	(Fauqahum) Above them	كُرْهٌ	(Kurhun) Repugnant
لَقُوا	(Laqū) They met; They meet	فَبَعَثَ اللَّهُ	(Faba'athallāhu) Then Allāh raised	عَسَى	(‘Asā) It may be
إِسْتَوَى	(Istawā) He turned	مُبَشِّرِينَ	(Mubashshirīna) Bearers of good tidings	تَكْرَهُوا	(Takrahū) You dislike
فَحَسْبُهُ	(Fa ḥasbahū) So it is his sufficient reward	مُنْذِرِينَ	(Mundhirīna) Warners	تُحِبُّوا	(Tuḥibbū) You like
الْمِهَادُ	(Al-mihādu) Place of rest	فِيمَا	(Fimā) Wherein	شَرُّكُمْ	(Sharrullakum) That is bad for you
يَشْرِي	(Yashrī) He sells	اِخْتَلَفُوا فِيهِ	(Ikhtalafū fihī) They differed about it	عَنْ	(‘Ann) From
إِبْتِغَاءً	(Ibtighā'a) Seeking of	بَغْيًا	(Baghyān) Oppressing; Transgression	كَبِيرٌ	(Kabirun) Heinous thing
مَرْضَاتِ اللَّهِ	(Marḍatillāhi) The pleasure of Allāh	بَيْنَهُمْ	(Bainahum) One another	صَدَّ	(Ṣaddun) To hinder
فِي السِّلْمِ	(Fissilmi) Into submission	حَسِبْتُمْ	(Ḥasibtum) You thought	إِخْرَاجٌ	(Ikhrājun) To turn out
كَافَّةً	(Kā affātan) Wholly; Entire	لَمَّا	(Lammā) Not yet	أَهْلِهِ	(Ahlīhi) Its people
زَلَلْتُمْ	(Zalaltum) You slipped	خَلَوْا	(Khalau) They passed away	أَكْبَرُ	(Akbaru) More heinous thing
يَنْظُرُونَ	(Yanzurūna) They wait	مَسْتَنَّهُم	(Massathum) Befell them	وَلَا يَزَالُونَ	(Wala yazālūna) They will cease not
ظُلُلٍ	(Zulalin) Coverings	النَّسْلَ	(Annasla) The progeny; Off-spring	يُقَاتِلُونَكُمْ	(Yuqātilūnakum) They will keep on fighting you
أَضَاءَتْ	(Aḍā'at) It (fire) lighted up	زُلْزِلُوا	(Zulzilū) They were violently shaken	يَرُدُّوكُمْ	(Yaruddūkum) They will make you revert
وَقُضِيَ الْأَمْرُ	(Wa quḍiyal amru) And the matter was decided	حَتَّى	(Ḥattā) Until	عَنْ دِينِكُمْ	(‘An dīnikum) From your faith
فَسَوَّيْنَهُنَّ	(Fasawwāhunna) Then he perfected them (skies)	مَتَى	(Matā) When	إِسْتَطَاعُوا	(Istaṭā'ū) They were able

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
مَنْ يَرْجِدْ	(Mañyyartadid) Whoso turns back	يَدْعُونَ	(Yad'ūna) They call	حَلِيمٌ	(Ḥalimun) Forbearing
فَيَمُتْ	(Fayamut) Then he dies	أَعَجَبُكُمْ	(A'jabakum) Pleases you	يُؤْلُونَ	(Yu'lūna) They vow (abstinence)
حَبِطَتْ	(Ḥabītat) Gone in vain	يُبَيِّنُ	(Yubayyinu) Makes clear	أَبَى	(Abā) He refused
يَرْجُونَ	(Yarjūna) They hope	يَتَذَكَّرُونَ	(Yatadhakkarūna) They may remember	فَاءَوُ	(Fā'ū) They go back
الْخَمْرُ	(Al-khamru) Wine	الْمَحِيضُ	(Al-mahīḍi) Menstruation	عَزَمُوا	(‘Azamū) They decided
الْمَيْسِرُ	(Al-maisaru) Gambling	أَذَى	(Adhan) Harmfull thing; Injury	الْمُطَلَّقاتُ	(Almutallaqātu) Divorced women
مَنَافِعُ	(Manāfi'un) Advantages	فَاعْتَرِلُوا	(Fa'tazilū) So keep away	يَتَرَبَّصْنَ	(Yatarabbasna) They shall wait
تَطْمَعُونَ	(Tatma'ūna) You expect	يَطْهَرُونَ	(Yathurna) They are clean	بِأَنْفُسِهِنَّ	(Bi-anfusihinna) Themselves
مُتَشَابِهًا	(Mutashābihā) Similar; Mutually resembling	تَطْهَرُونَ	(Tatahharna) They have cleansed themselves	قُرُوءٌ	(Qurū'in) Courses
يُنْفِقُونَ	(Yunfiqūna) They spend	فَاتَوْنَهُنَّ	(Fa'tūhunna) Then go into unto them	يَجِلُّ	(Yahillu) It is lawful
الْعَفْوُ	(Al'afwa) Surplus: What we can spare after fulfilling our basic requirements	مِنْ حَيْثُ	(Min haithu) In a manner which	يَكْتُمْنَ	(Yaktumna) They conceal
تَتَفَكَّرُونَ	(Tatafakkarūna) You reflect	أَمَرَكُمْ	(Amarakum) Commanded you	أَرْحَامُ	(Arḥāmun) Wombs
تُخَالِطُونَهُمْ	(Tukhālīṭuhum) Intermix with them	لَمْ أَقُلْ	(Lam aqul) Did I not say	يُعُولَتَهُنَّ	(Bu'ulatahunna) Their husbands
إِخْوَانُكُمْ	(Ikhwānukum) Your brothers	أَنَّى	(Annā) When and how	بِرَدِّهِمْ	(Bi raddihinna) To take them back
لَأَعْنَتُكُمْ	(La -a'natukum) He would have put you to hardship	سَتُتَمُّ	(Shi'tum) You like	فَأَمْسَاكَ	(Fa imsākum) Then to retain
لَا تَنْكِحُوا	(Lā tankihū) Marry not	قَدِّمُوا	(Qaddimū) Send ahead	تَسْرِيحُ	(Tasriḥun) To send
الْمُشْرِكَاتِ	(Al-mushrikāti) Idolatrous women	عُرْضَةٌ	('Urdatan) Target	إِخْوَانُكُمْ	(Ikhwānukum) Your brothers
يُؤْمِنَنَّ	(Yu'minna) They (women) believe	لَا يَمَانِيَكُمْ	(Li aimānikum) For your oaths	أَتَيْتُمُوهُمْ	(Ātaitumūhunna) You have given them
أَمَةٌ مُؤْمِنَةٌ	Amatun mu'minatun A believing bond-woman	تُضْلِحُوا	(Tuṣlihū) Yoy make peace; Amend	يَخَافَا	(Yakhāfā) They both fear
عَقَلُوهُ	(‘Aqalūhu) They have understood it	لَا يُؤَاخِذُكُمْ	(Lā yu'ākhidhukum) He will not call you to account	يَتَرَا جَعَا	(Yatarāja'ā) They both turn to each other
أَعَجَبْتُكُمْ	(A'jabatkum) She pleased you	بِاللَّغْوِ	(Billaghwi) Idle; Vain	فَبَلَّغْنَ	(Fabalaghna) They approach

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
أَجَلُهُنَّ	( <i>Ajalahunna</i> ) End of their period	كِسْوَتُهُنَّ	( <i>Kiswatuḥunna</i> ) Their clothing	فَاحْذَرُوهُ	( <i>Faḥḍharūhu</i> ) So beware of him
فَأَمْسِكُوهُنَّ	( <i>Fa amsikūhunna</i> ) Then retain them	لَا تُكَالِفُ نَفْسَ	( <i>Lā tukallafu nafsān</i> ) No soul is burdened	لَمْ تَمَسُّوهُنَّ	( <i>Lam tamassūhunna</i> ) You have not touched them
سَرِّحُوهُنَّ	( <i>Sarriḥūhunna</i> ) Send them away	إِلَّا وَنْسَعَهَا	( <i>Illā wus'ahā</i> ) Beyond its capacity	لَمْ تَفْرِضُوا	( <i>Lam tafriḍū</i> ) You have not setteled
ضَرَارًا	( <i>Dirāran</i> ) Causing harm; Hurting	تُضَارُّ	( <i>Tuḍā arru</i> ) She is made to suffer	فَرِيضَةٌ	( <i>Fariḍatun</i> ) A dowery
هُزُوًا	( <i>Huzuwan</i> ) Jest; Mockery	وَالِدَةٌ	( <i>Walidatun</i> ) Mother	مَتَّعُوهُنَّ	( <i>Matti'ūhunna</i> ) Provide for them
يَعْظُمُكُمْ	( <i>Ya 'izukum</i> ) He exhorts you	أَرَادَا	( <i>Arādā</i> ) They both decided	الْمُوسِعُ	( <i>Al-mūsi'u</i> ) The rich
نِعْمَتَ اللَّهِ	( <i>Ni'matalḥabi</i> ) Allāh's favors	فِصَالًا	( <i>Fiṣālan</i> ) Weaning ( <i>the child</i> )	قَدْرُهُ	( <i>Qadaruhū</i> ) His means
الْحِكْمَةِ	( <i>Al-ḥikmatī</i> ) The wisdom	تَرَاضٍ	( <i>Tarāḍin</i> ) Mutual consent	الْمُقْتَرِ	( <i>Al-muqtari</i> ) The poor
تَفْعُلُوهُنَّ	( <i>Ta 'dulūhunna</i> ) Prevent them	تَشَاوُرٍ	( <i>Tashāwurin</i> ) Consultation	حَقًّا	( <i>Ḥaqqan</i> ) Obligation
يَنْكِحْنَ	( <i>Yankihna</i> ) From marrying	الرِّضَاعَةَ	( <i>Arriḍā'ata</i> ) Suckling	فَرَضْتُمْ	( <i>Faraḍtum</i> ) Settled for them
تَرَاضَوْا	( <i>Tarāḍau</i> ) They agree between themselves	سَلَّمْتُمْ	( <i>Sallamtum</i> ) You pay	تَغْفُوا	( <i>Ta 'fū</i> ) You remit
يُوعِظُ	( <i>Yū'azu</i> ) Is admonished; Advised	يُتَوَفَّوْنَ	( <i>Yutawaffauna</i> ) They die	يَغْفُونَ	( <i>Ya 'fūna</i> ) They remit; Forgive
أَزْكَى لَكُمْ	( <i>Azkā lakum</i> ) It is more blessed for you	يَذَرُونَ	( <i>Yadharūna</i> ) They leave	عُقْدَةُ النِّكَاحِ	( <i>'Uqdattunnikāhi</i> ) Tie of marriage
أَطْهَرُ	( <i>Aṭharu</i> ) Purer	لَا يَسْتَحْيِ	( <i>Lā yastahyi</i> ) He does not disdain	خَبِيرٌ	( <i>Khabīrun</i> ) Is aware of
يُرِضِعْنَ	( <i>Yurḍi'na</i> ) They give suck	عَرَضْتُمْ	( <i>'Arraḍtum</i> ) You spoke indirectly	لَا تَنْسَوُ	( <i>Lā tansau</i> ) Do not forget
حَوْلَيْنِ	( <i>Ḥaulaini</i> ) Two years	خِطْبَةٌ	( <i>Khithbatun</i> ) Proposal of marriage	الْفَضْلَ	( <i>Al-faḍla</i> ) Good; Grace
كَامِلَيْنِ	( <i>Kāmilaini</i> ) Two full; Complete	أَكْنَنْتُمْ	( <i>Aknantum</i> ) You conceal; Keep hidden	حَافِظُوا	( <i>Ḥafizū</i> ) Watch; Guard
يُتِمُّ	( <i>Yutimmu</i> ) He completes	سَتَذَكَّرُوهُنَّ	( <i>Satadhkurūhunna</i> ) You will think of them	قُومُوا	( <i>Qūmū</i> ) Stand; Be ready
تَسْتَرْضِعُو	( <i>Tastarḍi'ū</i> ) You desire to engage a wet-nurse	تَوَاعِدُوهُنَّ	( <i>Tawā'idūhunna</i> ) You will make a contract with them	قَائِتِينَ	( <i>Qānitina</i> ) Submissively; Humbly
عَلَى الْمَوْلُودِ لَهُ	( <i>'Alal maulūdi lahū</i> ) Father is responsible	لَنْ تَفْعَلُوا	( <i>Lan taf'alū</i> ) Never shall you do	خِفْتُمْ	( <i>Khiftum</i> ) You fear
رِزْقُهُنَّ	( <i>Rizquhunna</i> ) Their ( <i>the mothers</i> ) maintenance	لَا تَغْزِمُوا	( <i>Lā ta'zimū</i> ) Resolve not on the marriage tie	رِجَالًا	( <i>Rijālan</i> ) Walking; On foot

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
رُكْبَانًا	(Rukbānan) Riding	تَوَلَّوْا	(Tawallau) They turned back	كَمْ مِّنْ	(Kammin) How many
أَمِنْتُمْ	(Amintum) When you are safe	بَعَثَ	(Ba'atha) Appointed	فِتْنَةً قَلِيلَةً	(Fi'atun qalilatin) A small party
يُتَوَفَّوْنَ	(Yutawaffauna) Those who will die	أَتَى يَكُونُ	(Annā yakūnu) How can he have	غَلَبَتْ	(Ghalabat) Triumphed
يَذَرُونَ	(Yadharūna) Leave behind	لَمْ يُوْتِ	(Lamm Yū'ta) He is not given	لَمَّا	(Lammā) When
مَتَاعًا	(Matā'an) Provision	سَعَةً	(Sa'atan) Abundance of	بَرَزُوا	(Barazū) They issued forth
الْحَوْلِ	(Al-hauli) For a year	إِصْطَفَاهُ	(Iṣṭafahu) Chosen him	أَفْرِغْ	(Afrigh) Pour forth
غَيْرِ إِخْرَاجٍ	(Ghaira ikhrājīn) Without being turned out	زَادَهُ	(Zadahū) Has increased him	صَبْرًا	(Ṣabran) Steadfastness
خَرَجْنَ	(Kharajna) They go out	بَسْطَةً	(Bastatan) Abundantly	ثَبَّتِ	(Thabbīṭ) Make firm
أُلُوفٌ	(Ulūfun) Thousands	وَاسِعٌ	(Wāsi'un) Bountiful	فَهَزَمُوهُمْ	(Fahazamūhum) They routed them
حَذَرَ الْمَوْتِ	(Ḥadharalmawti) Fearing death	مَا بَقِيَ	(Mā baqiya) What remains	فَوْقَ	(Fauqa) More than small
مُوتُوا	(Mūtū) Die	سَكِينَةً	(Sakīnatun) Tranquility	بَلَكَ الرُّسُلُ	(Tilkarrusulu) These Messengers
أَحْيَاهُمْ	(Ahyāhum) Brought them to life	تَحْمِلُ	(Taḥmilu) Bearing it	فَضَّلْنَا	(Faddalnā) We have exalted
فَيُضَاعِفُهُ	(Fayuda'ifuhū) He may multiply it	فَصَلَ	(Faṣala) Set out	أَيَّدَنَاهُ	(Ayyadnāhu) Strengthened him
يَقْبِضُ	(Yaqbiḍu) Receives	جُنُودٌ	(Junūdun) Forces	أَقْتَتَلُ	(Aqtatala) (They) fought among themselves killing one another
يَبْسُطُ	(Yabsuṭu) Enlarges	مُبْتَلًى	(Mubṭalī) Will try you	لَا يَبِيعُ	(Lā bai'un) No buying
الْمَلَأُ	(Al-mala-u) Chiefs	شَرِبَ	(Shariba) Drinks	لَا خُلَّةَ	(Lā khullatun) No selling
إِنْعَثْ لَنَا	(Ib'ath lanā) Appoint for us	لَمْ يَطْعَمَهُ	(Lam yat'amhu) Who tastes it not	الْحَيُّ	(Al-Hayyu) The Living
مَلِكًا	(Malikan) A King	إِغْتَرَفَ	(Ighṭarafa) Who takes	الْقَيُّومُ	(Al-Qayyūmu) The Self-Subsisting
هَلْ عَسَيْتُمْ	(Hal 'asaitum) Is it not likely that	غُرْفَةً	(Ghurfatun) A handful of water	سِنَةً	(Sinatun) Slumber
أَلَّا تُقَاتِلُوا	(Allā tuqātilū) You will not fight	جَاوَزَهُ	(Jāwazahū) They crossed	مَنْ ذَا الَّذِي	(Man dhalladhī) Whosoever is
مَا لَنَا	(Mā lanā) What reason we have	يُظُنُّونَ	(Yazunnūna) Those who knew	يَشْفَعُ	(Yashfa'u) Intercede

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
مَا بَيْنَ أَيْدِيهِمْ	(Ma baina aidihim) What is before them	حَاجٌّ	(Hā ajja) Disputed	لِنَجْعَلَكَ	(Li naj'alaka) That we make you
مَا خَلْفَهُمْ	(Ma khalfahum) What is behind them	يَأْتِي	(Ya 'ti) He brings	الْعِظَامُ	(Al-'izāmu) Bones
لَا يُحِيطُونَ	(Lā yuhītūna) They encompass nothing	فَاتٍ	(Fa 'ti) Then bring it	يَسْتَهْزِئُ	(Yastahzi'u) He (Allāh) will punish mockery
وَسِعَ	(Wasi'a) Extends	بُهَتَ	(Buhita) Dumbfounded	نُنْشِزُهَا	(Nunshizuhā) We set them
كُرْسِيُّهُ	(Kursiyyuhu) His Kingdom	مَرَّ	(Marra) Passed by	نَكْسُوهُمْ	(Naksūhā) We clothe them
لَا يَئُودُهُ	(Lā ya'ūduhū) That does not weary him	خَاوِيَةٌ	(Khāwiyatan) Had fallen down upon	الْمُسْخَرِ	(Al-musakhkhari) Pressed into service
حِفْظُهُمَا	(Hifzuhumā) The care of them	عُرُوشُهَا	(‘Urūshihā) Its roofs	أَرِنِي	(Arinī) Show me
الْعَلِيُّ	(Al-'Aliyyu) The High	مُلَاقُوا	(Mulāqū) Those who will meet	كَيْفَ تُحْيِي	(Kaifa tuhyi) How You give life
الْعَظِيمُ	(Al-'Aẓimu) The Great	يُحْيِي	(Yuhyi) He will restore to life	صُرِّ	(Surr) Make attached; Domesticate
لَا إِكْرَاهَ	(Lā ikrāha) No compulsion	مَوْتِهَا	(Mautihā) Its destruction	جَبَلٌ	(Jabalun) A hill
تَبَيَّنَ	(Tabayyana) Has become distinct	أَمَاتَهُ اللَّهُ	(Amātahullāhu) Allāh caused him to die	جُزْءٌ	(Juz'an) A part or a portion
الرُّشْدُ	(Arrushdu) The right way	مِائَةٌ	(Mi'ata) A hundred	أَدْعُهُنَّ	(Ud'uhunna) Call them
الْغَى	(Al-ghayyu) Wrong path	عَامٍ	(‘Āmin) Year	يَأْتِيَنَّكَ	(Ya'tinaka) They (birds) will come to thee
الطَّاغُوتُ	(Atṭāghūtu) Those who transgress	بَعَثَهُ	(Ba'athahū) He raised him	سَعْيًا	(Sa'yan) In haste; Running
اِسْتَمْسَكَ	(Istamsaka) He has grasped strongly	يُؤْصَلُ	(Yūṣala) It is to be joined	حَبَّةٌ	(Ḥabbatin) A grain of corn
عُرْوَةُ الْوُثْقَى	(‘Urwatilwuthqā) Strong handle	لَبِثْتَ	(Labithta) You had remained	أَنْبَتَتْ	(Anbatat) It (a grain of corn) grows
أَوْلِيَائُهُمْ	(Auliya'uhum) Their friends	أَنْظُرْ	(Unzur) Look at	سَنَابِلُ	(Sanābila) Corn-ears
اِنْفِصَامُ	(Infiṣāmu) Breaking	طَعَامِكَ	(Ta'amika) Your food	يُضَاعَفُ	(Yuḍā'ifu) Multiplies
أَنْبَأَ	(Anbā'a) He informed	شَرَابِكَ	(Sharābika) Your drink	لَا يُتَّبِعُونَ	(Lā yutbi'ūna) They follow not
يُخْرِجُهُمْ	(Yukhrijuhum) He brings them out	لَمْ يَنْسَهُ	(Lam yatasannahu) Have not rotted	مَنَا	(Mannā) Taunt; Favor; Good bounty
أَلَمْ تَرَ	(Alam tara) Have you not heard	حِمَارِكَ	(Himārika) Your ass; Donkey	كَثِيرًا	(Kathīran) Many



ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
غَنِيٌّ	( <i>Ghaniyyun</i> ) Self-Sufficient	أَيُّودُ	( <i>Ayawaddu</i> ) Would he desire	مَا أَنْفَقْتُمْ	( <i>Mā anfaqtum</i> ) Whatsoever you spent
لَوْلَا	( <i>Lau lā</i> ) If had it not been	نَخْلٌ / نَخِيلٌ	( <i>Nakhlun</i> ) Palm-tree(s)	مَا نَذَرْتُمْ	( <i>Mā nadhartum</i> ) Whatsoever you vowed
لَا تُبْطِلُوا	( <i>Lā tubtilū</i> ) Render not vain	أَعْنَابٌ	( <i>A 'nābun</i> ) Vines	أَنْصَارٌ	( <i>Anṣārun</i> ) Helpers
رِثَاءَ النَّاسِ	( <i>Ri'ā'annāsi</i> ) To be seen of men	الْكِبَرُ	( <i>Al-kibru</i> ) Old age	أَجْرُهُمْ	( <i>Ajruhum</i> ) Their reward
صَفْوَانٌ	( <i>Safwānun</i> ) Rock	إِعْصَارٌ	( <i>I'sārun</i> ) Whirlwind	فَنِعْمًا هِيَ	( <i>Fani'immā hiya</i> ) It is well and good
تُرَابٌ	( <i>Turābun</i> ) Earth; Dust	فَاحْتَرَقَتْ	( <i>Faḥtaraqat</i> ) That (garden) be all burnt	تُخْفُوهُمْ	( <i>Tukhfūhā</i> ) You hide them (alms)
عَرَضَ	( <i>'Arada</i> ) He put before	طَيِّبَاتٌ	( <i>Tayyibātu</i> ) Good things	تُؤْتُوهُمْ	( <i>Tu'tūhā</i> ) Give this (alms) to
وَابِلٌ	( <i>Wābilun</i> ) Heavy rain	تَيَمَّمُوا	( <i>Tayammamū</i> ) Seek; Intend	فُقَرَاءٌ	( <i>Fuqarā'u</i> ) The Poor
تَرَكَهُ	( <i>Tarakahū</i> ) He left it	الْخَبِيثَ	( <i>Al-khabītha</i> ) Bad thing	يُكَفِّرُ	( <i>Yukaffir</i> ) He will remit
صَلْدًا	( <i>Ṣaldan</i> ) Bare Rock	لَسْتُمْ بِأَخِذِيهِ	( <i>Lastum bi ākhidhīhi</i> ) You would not take it	سَيِّئَاتِكُمْ	( <i>Sayyi ātikum</i> ) Your sins
يَقْدِرُونَ	( <i>Yaqdirūna</i> ) They have power	أَصَابَهُ	( <i>Aṣābahū</i> ) Has stricken him	أُحْصِرُوا	( <i>Uḥṣirū</i> ) Those who are detained
إِبْتَغَاءً	( <i>Ibtighā'a</i> ) To seek	تُغْمِضُوا	( <i>Tughmiḍū</i> ) Connive	ضَرَبًا فِي الْأَرْضِ	( <i>Ḍarban fīlardi</i> ) To move about in the land
مَرْضَاتِ اللَّهِ	( <i>Mardātillāhi</i> ) The pleasure of Allāh	حَمِيدٌ	( <i>Ḥamīdun</i> ) Praiseworthy	يَحْسِبُهُمْ	( <i>Yahṣabahum</i> ) Thinks them
تَشْبِيئًا	( <i>Tashbitan</i> ) To strengthen	يَعْدُكُمْ	( <i>Ya'idukum</i> ) He threatens you	الْجَاهِلُ	( <i>Al-jāhīlu</i> ) The ignorant
أَنْفُسِهِمْ	( <i>Anfusihim</i> ) Their souls	الْفَقْرُ	( <i>Al-faqra</i> ) Poverty	الْتَعَفُّ	( <i>Atta'affafu</i> ) Abstaining from begging
رَبْوَةٌ	( <i>Rabwatin</i> ) Elevated ground	يَأْمُرُكُمْ	( <i>Ya'murukum</i> ) He enjoins upon you	تَعْرِفُهُمْ	( <i>Ta'rifuhum</i> ) You know them
كَمَثَلٍ	( <i>Kamathali</i> ) Like the case of	فَتَكُونَا	( <i>Fatakūnā</i> ) Lest both of you will be	بِسِيمَتِهِمْ	( <i>Bi simāhum</i> ) By their appearance
فَأَتَتْ	( <i>Fa ātat</i> ) It brought forth	سَوَاءٌ	( <i>Sawā'un</i> ) Same; Alike; Equal	يَسْتَلُونَ	( <i>Yas'alūna</i> ) They beg
أَكْلَهَا	( <i>Ukulahā</i> ) Its fruit	يُؤْتِي	( <i>Yuti</i> ) He grants	إِلْخَافًا	( <i>Ilhāfan</i> ) With importunity
ضِعْفَيْنِ	( <i>Di'faini</i> ) Twofold	يُؤْتِ الْحِكْمَةَ	( <i>Yu'talḥikmata</i> ) He was granted wisdom	سِرًّا	( <i>Sirran</i> ) Secretly
طَلٌّ	( <i>Tallun</i> ) Light rain	أَمَرَ اللَّهُ	( <i>Amarallāhu</i> ) Allāh commanded	عَلَانِيَةً	( <i>'Alāniyatan</i> ) Openly



ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
يَحْزَنُونَ	(Yahzanūna) They wil grieve	تُرْجَعُونَ	(Turja 'ūna) You shall be made to return	لَا تَسْمَأُوا	(Lā tusma 'ū) Be not averse; Weary
وَاللَّهُ يَعِدُكُمْ	(Walfahu ya 'idukum) Allāh promises you	تُؤْفَى	(Tuwaffā) You shall be paid in full	أَدْنَى	(Adnā) Is more equitable
الرِّبَا	(Arribā) Interest	تَدَايَنْتُمْ	(Tadāyantum) Borrow one from another	لَا تَزَايُوا	(Lā tarfābū) Keep you away from doubt
لَا يَقُومُونَ	(Lā yaqūmūna) They do not rise	دَيْنٍ	(Dainin) Debt; Lending	حَاضِرَةٌ	(Ḥādiratan) On the spot; Ready
إِلَّا كَمَا	(Illā kamā) Except whom	رُءُوسُ أَمْوَالِكُمْ	(Ru 'usu amwālikum) Principal; Capital-stock	تُدِيرُونَهَا	(Tudirūnahā) You give or take merchandise among yourselves
يَخْخَبُطُ	(Yatakhabbatu) He (Satan) smites	مُسَمًّى	(Musamman) Fixed	تَبَايَعْتُمْ	(Tabāya 'tum) Sell one to another
الْبَيْعِ	(Al-bai 'u) Trade	فَاكْتُبُوهُ	(Faktubūhu) Write it down	يُضَارَّ	(Yuḍā arra) He is done harm
إِمَّا	(Immā) If	وَلْيَكْتُبْ	(Walyaktub) Let (a scribe) write	قُوَّةٌ	(Quwwatin) Force; Power
يَمْحَقُ اللَّهُ	(Yamḥaqu'llāhu) Allāh will blot out	لَا يَأْبَ	(Lā ya 'ba) He should not refuse	فَرِهْنِ	(Farihānun) Pledge
يُزِيدُ	(Yurbī) He will cause to increase	وَلْيُمْلِلْ	(Walyumlil) And he should dictate	مَقْبُوضَةٌ	(Maqbūḍatun) With possession
كَفَّارٌ	(Kaffārun) A confirmed disbeliever	لَا يَنْخَسِ	(Lā yabkhas) He should not diminish	أَمِنَ	(Amina) He entrusted
أَتَيْنِمٌ	(Athimun) Arch-sinner	سَفِيهًا	(Safihan) Low understanding	فَلْيُؤَدِّ	(Fal-yu 'addi) He should surrender
وَذَرُوا	(Wadharū) Relinquish; Give up	شِئْتُمَا	(Shi 'tumā) Both of you wish	أَوْثَمِنَ	(U 'tumina) He is entrusted
مَا بَقِيَ	(Mā baqiya) What remains	اسْتَشْهَدُوا	(Istash hadū) Call; Appoint witness	لَا تَكْتُمُوا	(Lā taktumū) Do not conceal
فَإَذْنُوا	(Fa 'dhanū) Be ready; Assure	شَهِيدَيْنِ	(Shahīdaini) Two witnesses	يَكْتُمُ	(Yaktum) He conceals
تُبْتَئِمُ	(Tubtum) You repent	رِجَالٌ	(Rijālun) Men	أَتِمٌ	(Athimun) Sinful
تَظْلِمُونَ	(Tazlimūna) You wrong or shall wrong	إِمْرَأَتَانِ	(Imra-atāni) Two women	قَلْبُهُ	(Qalbuhū) His heart
دُوْعُسْرَةٍ	(Dhū 'usratin) One who is in straitened circumstances	تَرْضَوْنَ	(Tarḍauna) You approve	تُبْدُوا	(Tubdū) You disclose
فَنَظِرَةٌ	(Fanaẓiratun) Respite will be granted	تَحِضُّ	(Taḥillu) She (woman) forgets	تُخْفُوهُ	(Tukhfū hu) You keep it hidden
مَيْسِرَةٍ	(Maisaratun) Time of ease	فَتَذَكَّرُ	Fatudhakkira) Then she may remind	يَحَاسِبُكُمْ	(Yuhāsibkum) He will call you to account
تَصَدَّقُوا	(Taṣaddaqū) Remit it as charity	إِذَا مَا دُعُوا	(Idhā mā du 'ū) When they are called	لَا تُفَرِّقُ	(Lā nufarriqu) We make no distinction

ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH	ARABIC	ENGLISH
عَلَى سَفَرٍ	( <i>Alā safarin</i> ) On a journey	مِنَ الْمَسِّ	( <i>Minal massi</i> ) With insanity	تَجْعَلُ	( <i>Taj'al</i> ) You will create
لَمْ تَجِدُوْ	( <i>Lam tajidū</i> ) Do not find	فَانْتَهَى	( <i>Fantahā</i> ) He desists	يُخَادِعُونَ	( <i>Yukhādī'ūna</i> ) They want to deceive
كَاتِبًا	( <i>Kātiban</i> ) A scribe	مَا سَلَفَ	( <i>Mā salaf</i> ) Which he recieved in the past	يُفْسِدُ	( <i>Yufsidu</i> ) He will cause disorder
عُفِّرْ اِنَّكَ	( <i>Ghufrānaka</i> ) We implore Your forgiveness	أَمْرُهُ	( <i>Amruhū</i> ) His affair	يَسْفِكُ	( <i>Yasfiku</i> ) He will shed
إِلَيْكَ الْمَصِيرُ	( <i>Ilaika-maṣīru</i> ) To Thee is the return	رَبِحَتْ	( <i>Rabiḥat</i> ) It brought gain	يَقْطَعُونَ	( <i>Yaqṭa'ūna</i> ) They cut asunder
لَا يُكَلِّفُ	( <i>Lā yukallifu</i> ) He burdens not	أَسْجُدُوا	( <i>Usjudū</i> ) Submit; Obey; Carry out	أَعُوذُ	( <i>A'ūdhu</i> ) I seek refuge
كَسَبَتْ	( <i>Kasabat</i> ) She accomplished; Earned	لَا تُظْلَمُونَ	( <i>Lā tuzlamūna</i> ) Nor shall you be wronged	أَوْفُوا	( <i>Aufū</i> ) You fulfil
اِكْتَسَبَتْ	( <i>Iktasabat</i> ) She accomplished in the form of evil	أَقْسَطُ	( <i>Aqsatu</i> ) More equitable	أَوْفِ	( <i>Ūfi</i> ) I shall fulfil
لَا تُؤَاخِذْنَا	( <i>Lā tu'ākhidhnā</i> ) Do not punish us	بِجَارَةٍ	( <i>Tijāratan</i> ) Merchandise	إِيَّايَ	( <i>Iyyāya</i> ) Me alone
نَسِينَا	( <i>Nasinā</i> ) We forgot	كَفَرُوا	( <i>Kafarū</i> ) They disbelieved; They refused	فَارْهَبُونِ	( <i>Farhabūni</i> ) Me alone fear
أَخْطَانَا	( <i>Akhtānā</i> ) We fell into error	إِصْرًا	( <i>Isran</i> ) A responsibility	لَمْ أَقُلْ	( <i>Lam aqul</i> ) Did I not say
لَا تَحْمِلْ عَلَيْنَا	( <i>Lā taḥmil 'alainā</i> ) Lay not on us	وَارْحَمْنَا	( <i>Warḥamnā</i> ) Have mercy on us	أَبْنَاءَ	( <i>Abnā'a</i> ) Sons
لَا تُحْمِلُنَا	( <i>Lā tuḥammilnā</i> ) Burden us not	عِبَادِي	( <i>'Ibādī</i> ) My servants	بَابُ	( <i>Bābun</i> ) The gate
وَأَعْفُ عَنَّا	( <i>Wa'fu 'annā</i> ) Efface our sins	أَيْدِي	( <i>Aidī</i> ) Hands	يَخْدَعُونَ	( <i>Yakhda'ūna</i> ) They deceive
فَاغْفِرْ لَنَا	( <i>Faghfirānā</i> ) So grant us forgiveness	فَرَقْنَا بِكُمْ	( <i>Farraqnā bikum</i> ) We divided for you	أَنْذَرْتُ	( <i>Andharta</i> ) Thou warn
مَوْلَانَا	( <i>Maulānā</i> ) Our Master	أَنْجَيْنَا	( <i>Anjainā</i> ) We saved	تَحْمِلُ	( <i>Taḥmilu</i> ) They (angels) will bear
فَانصُرْنَا	( <i>Fanṣurnā</i> ) So help us	أَغْرَقْنَا	( <i>Aghraqnā</i> ) We drowned	أَبْصَارِ	( <i>Abṣāri</i> ) Eyes
يَكْذِبُونَ	( <i>Yakdhibūna</i> ) They lie	يَسْؤُمُونَ	( <i>Yasūmūna</i> ) They afflicted	يُنْفِقُونَ	( <i>Yunfiqūna</i> ) They spend
أَقَامَ	( <i>Aqāma</i> ) Observes	يُذَبِّحُونَ	( <i>Yudhabbiḥūna</i> ) They killed	يَشْعُرُونَ	( <i>Yash'urūna</i> ) They perceive; They feel
يَقُومُونَ	( <i>Yaqūmūna</i> ) They rise	يَسْتَحْيُونَ	( <i>Yastahyūna</i> ) They spared; Let live	إِلَى حِينٍ	( <i>Ilā ḥini</i> ) For a time

# QUR'ĀNIC PRAYERS

God Almighty says in the Holy Qur'ān about acceptance of prayers:

وَ إِذَا سَأَلَكَ عِبَادِي عَنِّي فَإِنِّي قَرِيبٌ مُّجِيبٌ  
دَعْوَةَ الدَّاعِ إِذَا دَعَانِ ۚ

*wa idhā sa-alaka 'ibādī 'annī fa innī qarīb ujību d'awataddā'i idhā da'ān*

And when My servants ask thee about Me, say: I am near. I answer the prayer of the supplicant when he prays to Me. (2:187)

أَمَّنْ يُجِيبُ الْمُضْطَرَّ إِذَا دَعَاهُ وَيَكْشِفُ السُّوءَ

*ammañyyujibul mudṭarra idhā da'āhu wa yakshifussū-'a*

Or, Who answers the distressed person when he calls upon Him, and removes the evil. (27:63)

## RECITATION OF THE HOLY QUR'ĀN

عَنْ رَافِعِ بْنِ الْمُعَلَّى رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ قَالَ لِي رَسُولُ اللَّهِ  
صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ: أَلَا أَعْلَمُكَ أَعْظَمَ سُورَةٍ فِي  
الْقُرْآنِ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَخْرُجَ مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ؟ فَأَخَذَ بِيَدِي فَلَمَّا  
أَرَدْنَا أَنْ نَخْرُجَ قُلْتُ: يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ! إِنَّكَ قُلْتَ لِأَعْلَمَنَّكَ  
أَعْظَمَ سُورَةٍ فِي الْقُرْآنِ قَالَ: الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ  
هِيَ السَّبْعُ الْمَثَانِي وَالْقُرْآنُ الْعَظِيمُ الَّذِي أُوتِيْتُهُ -

Ḥaḍrat Rafī' bin Mu'illā<sup>ra</sup> relates: The Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> said to me: "Shall I tell you before you go out of the mosque which is the greatest chapter of the Qur'ān? Then he took hold of my hand. When we were about to issue from the mosque I said to him: 'Messenger<sup>sa</sup> of Allāh, you had said that you would tell me which is the greatest Chapter of the Qur'ān.' He answered: '*Alḥamdu lillāhi rabbil 'ālamīn*' (All praise belongs to Allāh, Lord of all the worlds) , the opening chapter which contains the seven oft-repeated verses and the Great Qur'ān which has been bestowed upon me.' "

(Bukhārī kitāb faḍā'ilul Qur'ān bāb faḍl fātiḥatul kitāb)

## QUR'ĀNIC PRAYERS

§

Ḥaḍrat ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās relates that it was revealed to the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> that there existed such a complete prayer the like of which had not been revealed to any earlier Prophet. This prayer includes *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah* and last verses of *Sūrah Al-Baqarah*. Whosoever asks God Almighty for anything through these prayers has his prayer accepted by God Almighty.

(An-Nasā’i Kitābul Iftitāḥ)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

*bismillā hirrahmā nirrahīm*

In the Name of Allāh, the Gracious, the Merciful

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ۝ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ ۝ مَلِكِ يَوْمِ الدِّينِ ۝ إِيَّاكَ  
نَعْبُدُ وَإِيَّاكَ نَسْتَعِينُ ۝ اهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ ۝ صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ  
عَلَيْهِمْ ۚ لَا غَيْرَ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ ۝

*alḥamdu lillāhi rabbil ‘ālamīn arrahmā nirrahīm māliki yaumiddīn iyyāka  
na‘budu wa iyyāka nasta‘in ihdi naṣṣirāṭal mustaqīm ṣirāṭalladhīna  
an‘amta ‘alaihim ghairil maghdūbi ‘alaihim wa ladḍuā allin*

All praise belongs to Allāh, Lord of all the worlds, The Gracious, the Merciful. Master of the Day of Judgment. Thee alone do we worship and Thee alone do we implore for help. Guide us in the right path -- The path of those on whom Thou has bestowed Thy blessings, those who have not incurred Thy displeasure, and those who have not gone astray. (1:1-7)

Ḥaḍrat Ubayy bin Ka‘b relates that the Holy Prophet<sup>sa</sup> has called *Sūrah Al-Fātiḥah* as the best of the Holy Qur’ān.

(Mustadrak Ḥākim)

§

رَبَّنَا وَاجْعَلْنَا مُسْلِمِينَ لَكَ وَمَنْ ذُرِّيَّتَنَا أُمَّةً مُسْلِمَةً لَكَ ۖ وَأَرِنَا مَنَاسِكَنَا  
وَتُبَّ عَلَيْنَا ۖ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيمُ ۝

*rabbanā waj‘alnā muslimaini laka wamin dhurriyyatinā ummatammuslima  
tallaka wa arinā manāsikanā wa tub ‘alainā innaka antattawwāburrahīm*

O our Lord, make us submissive to Thee and *make* of our offspring a people submissive to Thee. And show us our ways of worship, and turn to us with mercy; for Thou art Oft-Returning *with compassion and* merciful. (2:129)

§

رَبَّنَا آتِنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَفِي الْآخِرَةِ حَسَنَةً ۖ وَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

*rabbanā ātinā fiddunyā ḥasanatañwwa fil āakhirāti ḥasanatañwwa qinā  
‘adhābannār*

Our Lord, grant us good in this world as well as good in the world to come, and protect us from the torment of the Fire. (2:202)

§

رَبَّنَا أَفْرِغْ عَلَيْنَا صَبْرًا وَثَبِّتْ أَقْدَامَنَا وَانصُرْنَا عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْكَافِرِينَ ۝

*rabbanā afrigh ‘alainā ṣabrañwwa thabbit aqdāmanā wanṣurnā ‘alal  
qaumil kāfirīn*

O our Lord, pour forth steadfastness upon us, and make our steps firm, and help us against the disbelieving people. (2:251)

§

سَمِعْنَا وَأَطَعْنَا ۖ غُفْرَانَكَ رَبَّنَا وَإِلَيْكَ الْمَصِيرُ ٥

*sami'nā wa aṭa'nā ghufrānaka rabbanā wa ilaikal maṣīr*

We hear and we obey. We implore Thy forgiveness. O our Lord, and to Thee is the returning. (2:286)

§

رَبَّنَا لَا تُؤَاخِذْنَا إِنْ نُسِينَا أَوْ أَخْطَأْنَا ۖ رَبَّنَا وَلَا تَحْمِلْ عَلَيْنَا إِكْرًا كَمَا حَمَلْتَهُ  
عَلَى الَّذِينَ مِنْ قَبْلِنَا ۖ رَبَّنَا وَلَا تُحَمِّلْنَا مَا لَا طَاقَةَ لَنَا بِهِ ۖ وَاعْفُ عَنَّا ۖ وَارْحَمْنَا ۖ  
وَاعْفِرْ لَنَا ۖ وَارْحَمْنَا ۖ أَنْتَ مَوْلَانَا فَانصُرْنَا عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْكَافِرِينَ ٥

*rabbanā lā tu'akhidhnā innasīnā au akhta'na rabbanā wa lā tahmil 'alainā  
iṣran kamā ḥamaltahū 'alalladhina min qablinā rabbanā wa lā tuḥammilnā  
mā lā ṭāqatalanā bih wa'fu 'annā, waghfirlanā, warḥamnā anta mauḥānā  
fanṣurnā 'alal qaumil kāfirīn*

Our Lord, do not punish us, if we forget or fall into error; and our Lord, lay not on us a responsibility as Thou didst lay upon those before us. Our Lord, burden us not with what we have not the strength to bear; and efface our *sins*, and grant us forgiveness and have mercy on us; Thou art our Master; so help us against the disbelieving people. (2:287)

§

رَبَّنَا لَا تُزِغْ قُلُوبَنَا بَعْدَ إِذْ هَدَيْتَنَا وَهَبْ لَنَا مِنْ لَدُنْكَ رَحْمَةً ۖ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ  
الْوَهَّابُ ٥

*rabbanā lā tuzigh qulūbanā ba'da idh hadaitanā wa hablanā milladunka  
rahmatan innaka antal wahhāb*

Our Lord, let not our hearts become perverse after Thou hast guided us; and bestow on us mercy from Thyself; surely, Thou alone art the Bestower. (3: 9)

§

رَبَّنَا إِنَّا أَمْنَا فَاغْفِرْ لَنَا ذُنُوبَنَا وَ قِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ ۝

*rabbanā innanā āmannā faghfir lanā dhunūbanā waqinā ‘adhābannār*

Our Lord, we do believe; forgive us, therefore, our sins and save us from the punishment of the Fire. (3:17)

§

قُلِ اللَّهُمَّ مَلِكُ الْمُلْكِ تُؤْتِي الْمُلْكَ مَنْ تَشَاءُ وَتَنْزِعُ الْمُلْكَ مِمَّنْ تَشَاءُ وَتُعِزُّ مَنْ تَشَاءُ وَتُذِلُّ مَنْ تَشَاءُ بِيَدِكَ الْخَيْرُ إِنَّكَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ۝

*qulillāhumma mālikal mulki tu’til mulka man tashā-’u wa tanzi’ul mulka mimman tashā-’u wa tu’izzu man tashā-’u wa tudhillu man tashā-’u biyadikal khair innaka ‘alā kulli shai’in qadīr*

"Say, 'O Allāh, Lord of sovereignty, Thou givest sovereignty to whomsoever Thou pleasest; and Thou takest away sovereignty from whomsoever Thou pleasest. Thou exaltest whomsoever Thou pleasest and Thou abasest whomsoever Thou pleasest. In Thy hand is all good. Thou surely hast power to do all things.'" (3:27)

§

رَبِّ هَبْ لِي مِنْ لَدُنْكَ ذُرِّيَّةً طَيِّبَةً ۚ إِنَّكَ سَمِيعُ الدُّعَاءِ ۝

*rabbi habli milladunka dhurriyyatan ṭayyibatan innaka samī‘uddu‘ā’*



My Lord, grant me from Thyself pure off-spring; surely, Thou art the Hearer of prayer.  
(3: 39)

§

رَبَّنَا آمَنَّا بِمَا أَنْزَلْتَ وَاتَّبَعْنَا الرَّسُولَ فَاكْتُبْنَا مَعَ الشَّاهِدِينَ ۝

*rabbanā āmannā bimā anzalta wattaba‘narrasūla faktubnā ma‘ashshāhidīn*

Our Lord, we believe in that which Thou has sent down and we follow this Messenger. So write us down among those who bear witness. (3:54)

§

رَبَّنَا اغْفِرْ لَنَا ذُنُوبَنَا وَإِسْرَافَنَا فِي أَمْرِنَا وَثَبِّتْ أَقْدَامَنَا وَانصُرْنَا عَلَى الْقَوْمِ  
الْكَافِرِينَ ۝

*rabbanaghfir lanā dhunūbanā wa isrāfinā fi amrinā wa thabbīt aqdāmanā  
wanṣurnā ‘alal qaumil kāfirīn*

Our Lord, forgive us our errors and our excesses in our conduct, and make firm our steps and help us against the disbelieving people. (3:148)

§

حَسْبُنَا اللَّهُ وَنِعْمَ الْوَكِيلُ ۝

*ḥasbunallāhu wa ni‘mal vakīl*

Sufficient for us is Allāh, and an excellent Guardian is He. (3:174)

§

رَبَّنَا مَا خَلَقْتَ هَذَا بَاطِلًا ۖ سُبْحَنَكَ فَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ ۝

*rabbanā mā khalaqta hādha bāṭilan subhānaka faqinā ‘adhābannār*

Our Lord, Thou hast not created this in vain; nay, Holy art Thou; save us, then, from the punishment of the Fire. (3:192)

§

رَبَّنَا إِنَّا سَمِعْنَا مُنَادِيًا يُنَادِي لِلْإِيمَانِ أَنْ آمِنُوا بِرَبِّكُمْ ۖ فَآمَنَّا ۖ وَرَبَّنَا فَاعْفُ زُنُوبَنَا وَكَفِّرْ عَنَّا سَيِّئَاتِنَا وَ تَوَفَّنَا مَعَ الْأَبْرَارِ ۝

*rabbanā innanā sami‘nā munādiyañyyunādī lil imāni an āminū birabbikum fa āmannā, rabbanā faghfirlanā dhunūbanā wa kaffir ‘annā sayyi ātinā wa tawaffanā ma‘al abrār*

Our Lord, we have heard a Crier calling us unto faith, 'Believe ye in your Lord,' and we have believed. Our Lord, forgive us, therefore, our sins and remove from us our evils, and in death join us with the righteous. (3:194)

§

رَبَّنَا وَآتِنَا مَا وَعَدْتَنَا عَلَىٰ رُسُلِكَ وَلَا تُخْزِنَا يَوْمَ الْقِيَمَةِ ۚ إِنَّكَ لَا تُخْلِفُ الْمِيعَادَ ۝

*rabbanā wa ātina mā wa‘attanā ‘alā rusūlika wa lā tukhzinā yaumal qiyāmah innaka lā tukhliful mī‘ād.*

Our Lord, give us what Thou hast promised to us through Thy Messengers; and disgrace us not on the Day of Resurrection. Surely, Thou breakest not Thy promise. (3:195)

§

رَبَّنَا أَخْرِجْنَا مِنْ هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ الظَّالِمِ أَهْلُهَا ؕ وَاجْعَلْ لَّنَا مِنْ لَدُنْكَ وَلِيًّا ۖ  
وَاجْعَلْ مِنْ لَدُنْكَ نَصِيرًا ۝

*rabbanā akhrijnā min hādhihil qaryatizzālimi ahluhā waj'allanā  
milladunka waliyyaṇwwaj'al milladunka naṣīra*

Our Lord, take us out of this town, whose people are oppressors, and make for us some friend from Thyself, and make for us from Thyself some helper. (4:76)

§

رَبَّنَا آمَنَّا فَاكْتُبْنَا مَعَ الشَّاهِدِينَ ۝ وَمَا لَنَا لَا نُؤْمِنُ بِاللَّهِ وَمَا جَاءَنَا مِنَ الْحَقِّ ۖ  
وَنَطْمَعُ أَنْ يُدْخِلَنَا رَبُّنَا مَعَ الْقَوْمِ الصَّالِحِينَ ۝

*rabbanā āmannā faktubnā ma'ashshāhidin wamā lanā lā nu'minu billāhi  
wamā jā'anā minal ḥaqqi wa naṭma'u aṇyyudkhi lanā rabbunā ma'al  
qaumiṣṣāliḥin*

Our Lord, we believe, so write us down among those who bear witness. 'And why should we not believe in Allāh and in the truth which has come to us, while we earnestly wish that our Lord should include us among the righteous people?' (5:84-85)

§

رَبَّنَا ظَلَمْنَا أَنْفُسَنَا ۖ وَإِنْ لَمْ تَغْفِرْ لَنَا وَتَرْحَمْنَا لَنَكُونَنَّ مِنَ الْخَاسِرِينَ ۝

*rabbanā ḡalamnā anfusanā wa illam taghfirlanā wa tarḡamnā lanakūnanna  
minal khāsirīn*

Our Lord, we have wronged ourselves; and if Thou forgive us not and have not mercy on

us, we shall surely be of the lost. (7:24)

§

رَبُّنَا لَا تَجْعَلْنَا مَعَ الْقَوْمِ الظَّالِمِينَ ٥

*rabbanā lā taj‘alnā ma‘al qaumizzālimīn*

Our Lord, put us not with the unjust people. (7:48)

§

رَبُّنَا أَفْرِغْ عَلَيْنَا صَبْرًا وَ تَوَفُّنَا مُسْلِمِينَ ٥

*rabbanā afrigh ‘alainā ṣabrañwwa tawaffanā muslimīn*

Our Lord, pour forth upon us steadfastness and cause us to die resigned *unto Thee*. (7:127)

§

لَئِنْ لَمْ يَرْحَمْنَا رَبُّنَا وَ يَغْفِرْ لَنَا لَنَكُونَنَّ مِنَ الْخَاسِرِينَ ٥

*la illam yarḥamnā rabbunā wa yaghfir lanā lanakūnanna minal khāsirīn*

If our Lord do not have mercy on us and forgive us, we shall surely be among the losers. (7:150)

§

رَبِّ اغْفِرْ لِي وَلِإِخِي وَأَدْخِلْنَا فِي رَحْمَتِكَ ۖ وَأَنْتَ أَرْحَمُ الرَّاحِمِينَ ٥

***rabbighfirli wali akhī wa adkhilnā fi rahmatika wa anta arhamurrahīmīn***

My Lord, forgive me and my brother, and admit us to Thy mercy, and Thou art the Most Merciful of those who show mercy. (7:152)

§

**أَنْتَ وَلِيُّنَا فَامْغِرْ لَنَا وَارْحَمْنَا وَأَنْتَ خَيْرُ الْغَافِرِينَ ٥**

***anta waliyyunā faghfir lanā warḥamnā wa anta khairul ghāfirīn***

Thou art our Protector; forgive us then and have mercy on us, for Thou art the Best of those who forgive. (7:156)

§

**وَاصْنُ لَنَا فِي هَذِهِ الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَفِي الْآخِرَةِ إِنَّا هُنَا وَإِلَيْكَ**

***waktub lanā fi hādhi hiddunyā ḥasnatañwwa fil āakhirati innā hudnā ilaika***

And ordain for us good in this word, as well as in the next; we have turned to You *seeking forgiveness*. (7:157)

§

**رَبَّنَا لَا تَجْعَلْنَا فِتْنَةً لِلْقَوْمِ الظَّالِمِينَ ٥ وَنَجِّنَا بِرَحْمَتِكَ مِنَ الْقَوْمِ الْكَافِرِينَ ٥**

***rabbanā lā taj'alnā fitnatallil qaumizzālimīna wa najjinā bi rahmatika minal qaumil kāfirīn***

Our Lord, make us not a trial for the wrongdoing people. And deliver us by Thy mercy from the disbelieving people. (10:86-87)

§

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ مَجْرِبَهَا وَ مُرْسَاهَا إِنَّ رَبِّي لَغَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ ٥

*bismillāhi majrayhā wa mursāha inna rabbī laghafūrraḥīm*

In the name of Allāh be its course and its mooring. My Lord is assuredly Most Forgiving, Merciful. (11:42)

§

رَبِّ إِنِّي أَعُوذُ بِكَ أَنْ أَسْأَلَكَ مَا لَيْسَ لِي بِهِ عِلْمٌ وَإِلَّا تَغْفِرْ لِي وَ تَرْحَمْنِي  
أَكُنْ مِنَ الْخَسِرِينَ ٥

*rabbi innī a ‘ūdhubika an as’alaka mā laisa li bihī ‘ilm wa illā taghfirli wa tarḥamnī akumminal khāsirīn*

My Lord, I beg Thee to protect me from asking Thee that whereof I have no knowledge. And unless Thou forgive me and have mercy on me, I shall be among the losers. (11:48)

§

رَبِّ السِّجْنُ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ مِمَّا يَدْعُونَنِي إِلَيْهِ وَإِلَّا تَصْرِفْ عَنِّي كَيْدَهُنَّ أَصْبُ  
إِلَيْهِنَّ وَأَكُنْ مِنَ الْجَاهِلِينَ ٥

*rabbissijnu a-ḥabbu ilayya mimmā yad‘ūnanī ilaihi wa illā taṣrif ‘annī kaidahunna aṣbu ilaihinna wa akumminal jāhilīn*

O my Lord, I would prefer prison to that to which they invite me; and unless Thou turn away their guile from me I shall incline towards them and be of the ignorant. (12:34)

§

أَنْتَ وَلِيٌّ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَالْآخِرَةِ تَوَفَّنِي مُسْلِمًا وَ الْحَقِّينِ بِالصُّلِحِينَ ٥

*anta waliyyi fiddunyā wal-ākhirati tawaffanī muslimaṭṭwwa al-ḥiqnī  
biṣṣālihīn*

Thou art my Protector in this world and the Hereafter. Let death come to me in a state of submission *to Thy will* and join me to the righteous. (12:102)

§

رَبِّ اجْعَلْنِي مُقِيمَ الصَّلَاةِ وَمِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِي ۖ رَبَّنَا وَتَقَبَّلْ دُعَاءِ ٥ رَبَّنَا اغْفِرْ لِي  
وَلِوَالِدَيَّ وَلِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ يَوْمَ يَقُومُ الْحِسَابُ ٥

*rabbij'alnī muqīmaṣṣalāti wamin dhurriyyatī rabbanā wataqabbal du'ā'  
rabbanaghfirli wali wālidayya wa lil-mu'minīna yauma yaqūmul ḥisāb*

My Lord, make me observe Prayer, and my children *too*. Our Lord! Do accept my prayer. 'Our Lord, grant forgiveness to me and to my parents and to the believers on the day when the reckoning will take place.' (14:41-42)

§

رَبِّ ارْحَمْهُمَا كَمَا رَبَّيْتَنِي صَغِيرًا ٥

*rabbirḥamhumā kamā rabbayānī ṣaghīra*

My Lord, have mercy on them even as they nourished me in *my* childhood. (17: 25)

§

رَبِّ ادْخِلْنِيْ مُدْخَلَ صِدْقٍ وَّ اَخْرِجْنِيْ مُخْرَجَ صِدْقٍ وَّ اجْعَلْ لِّيْ مِنْ لَّدُنْكَ  
سُلْطٰنًا نُّصِيْرًا ۝

*rabbi adkhilnī mudkhala ṣidqiñwwa akhrijnī mukhraja ṣidqiñwwaj‘allī  
milladunka sulṭānannaṣīra*

O my Lord, make my entry a good entry and *then* make me come forth with a good forthcoming. And grant me from Thyself a helping power. (17:81)

§

رَبَّنَا اٰتِنَا مِنْ لَّدُنْكَ رَحْمَةً وَّ هِدْيًا لَّنَا مِنْ اَمْرِنَا رَشَدًا ۝

*rabbanā ātinā milladunka raḥmatañwwa hayyi‘lanā min amrinā rashadā*

Our Lord, bestow on us mercy from Thyself, and provide for us right guidance in our affair. (18:11)

§

رَبِّ اَشْرَحْ لِيْ صَدْرِيْ ۝ وَّ يَسِّرْ لِّيْ اَمْرِيْ ۝ وَاَحْلِلْ عُقْدَةً مِّنْ لِّسَانِيْ ۝  
يَفْقَهُوا قَوْلِيْ ۝

*rabbishrahli ṣadrī wa yassirli amrī wahlul ‘uqdatammillisānī yafqahū  
qaulī*

My Lord, open up for me my heart, and ease for me my task, and untie the knot of my tongue, that they may understand my speech. (20:26-29)



§

رَبِّ ذِذِّي عِلْمًا ٥

*rabbi dhidnī ‘ilmā*

O my Lord, increase me in knowledge. (20:115)

§

أَنِّي مَسْنِي الضُّرِّ وَأَنْتَ أَرْحَمُ الرَّاحِمِينَ ٥

*annī massanī yadḍurru wa anta arḥamurrahīmīn*

Affliction has touched me, and Thou art the Most Merciful of all who show mercy. (21:84)

§

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ سُبْحَانَكَ إِنِّي كُنْتُ مِنَ الظَّالِمِينَ ٥

*lā ilāha illā anta subḥānaka innī kuntū minazzālimīn*

There is no God but You, Holy are You. I have indeed been of the wrongdoers. (21:88)

§

رَبِّ لَا تَذَرْنِي فَرْدًا وَأَنْتَ خَيْرُ الْوَارِثِينَ ٥

*rabbi lā tadharṇī fardāñwwa anta khairul wārithīn*

My Lord, leave me not childless, and Thou art the Best of inheritors.(21: 90)

§

رَبِّ احْكُم بِالْحَقِّ ۗ وَرَبُّنَا الرَّحْمَنُ الْمُسْتَعَانُ عَلَىٰ مَا تَصِفُونَ ۝

*rabbihkum bilhaq wa rabbunarraḥmānūl musta‘anu ‘alā mā taṣifūn*

My Lord, judge Thou with truth. Our Lord is the Gracious *God* Whose help is to be sought against that which you assert. (21: 113)

§

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي نَجَّيْنَا مِنَ الْقَوْمِ الظَّالِمِينَ ۝ وَقُلْ رَبِّ انْزِلْنِي مُنْزَلًا مُّبْرَكًا  
خَيْرُ الْمُنْزِلِينَ ۝

*alḥamdulillā hilladhī najjānā minal qaumizzālimīn wa qul rabbi anzilnī  
munzalamḡubārakan khairul munzilīn*

All praise belongs to Allāh Who has saved us from the unjust people! "And say, 'My Lord, cause me to land a blessed landing, for Thou art the Best of those who bring *men* to land. (23:29-30)

§

رَبِّ إِنَّمَا تُرِيدُنِي مَا يُوعَدُونَ ۖ رَبِّ فَلَا تَجْعَلْنِي فِي الْقَوْمِ الظَّالِمِينَ ۝

*rabbi immā turiyannī mā yū‘adūn rabbi falā taj‘alnī fil qaumizzālimīn*

My Lord, if Thou wilt show me that with which they are threatened. 'My Lord, then place me not with the wrongdoing people.' (23:94-95)

§

رَبِّ أَعُوذُ بِكَ مِنْ هَمَزَاتِ الشَّيْطَانِ ۝ وَأَعُوذُ بِكَ رَبِّ أَنْ يَخْضُرُونِ ۝

*rabbi a'ūdhubika min hamazātishshayāfīni wa a'ūdhubika rabbi a'nyyahḍurūn*

My Lord! I seek refuge in You from the incitements of the satans. 'And I seek refuge in Thee, my Lord, lest they come near me.' (23:98-99)

§

رَبَّنَا أَمَّا فَاغْفِرْ لَنَا وَارْحَمْنَا وَ أَنْتَ خَيْرُ الرَّحِيمِينَ ۝

*rabbanā āmannā faghfir lanā warḥamnā wa anta khairurrāḥimīn*

Our Lord, we believe; forgive us therefore *our sins*, and have mercy on us; for Thou art the Best of those who show mercy. (23:110)

§

رَبِّ اغْفِرْ وَارْحَمْ وَ أَنْتَ خَيْرُ الرَّحِيمِينَ ۝

*rabbighfir warḥam wa anta khairurrāḥimīn*

My Lord, forgive and have mercy, and Thou art the Best of those who show mercy. (23:119)

§

رَبَّنَا اصْرِفْ عَنَّا عَذَابَ جَهَنَّمَ ۚ إِنَّ عَذَابَهَا كَانَ غَرَامًا ۝

*rabbanṣrif 'annā 'adhāba jahannam inna 'adhābahā kāna gharamā*

Our Lord, evert from us the punishment of Hell for the punishment thereof is a lasting torment. (25:66)

§

رَبَّنَا هَبْ لَنَا مِنْ أَزْوَاجِنَا وَذُرِّيَّتِنَا قُرَّةَ أَعْيُنٍ وَاجْعَلْنَا لِلْمُتَّقِينَ إِمَامًا ۝

*rabbanā hablanā min azwājinā wa dhurriyyātinā qurrata a'yuniñwwaj'alnā lilmuttaqina imāmā*

Our Lord, grant us of our spouses and children the delight of *our* eyes, and make *each of* us a leader of the righteous. (25:75)

§

وَإِذَا مَرَضْتُ فَهُوَ يَشْفِينِ ۝

*wa idhā maridtu fa huwa yashfin*

And when I am ill, it is He Who restores me to health. (26:81)

§

رَبِّ هَبْ لِي حُكْمًا وَالْحَقِّنِي بِالصَّالِحِينَ ۝ وَاجْعَلْ لِي لِسَانَ صِدْقٍ فِي الْآخِرِينَ ۝ وَاجْعَلْنِي مِنْ وَرَثَةِ جَنَّةِ النَّعِيمِ ۝

*rabbi habli ḥukmañwwa alḥiqnī biṣṣālihīn, waj'allī lisāna ṣidqin fil ākhirīna, waj'alnī miñwwarathati jannatinna'im*

My Lord, bestow wisdom on me and join me with the righteous; 'And give me a true reputation among posterity; 'And make me *one* of the inheritors of the Garden of Bliss.' (26: 84-86)

§

رَبِّ نَجِّنِي وَأَهْلِي مِمَّا يَفْعَلُونَ ٥

*rabbi najjinī wa ahlī mimmā ya‘malūn*

My Lord, save me and my family from what they do. (26:170)

§

رَبِّ أَوْزِعْنِي أَنْ أَشْكُرَ نِعْمَتَكَ الَّتِي أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيَّ وَعَلَى وَالِدَيَّ وَأَنْ أَعْمَلَ  
صَالِحًا تَرْضَاهُ وَأَدْخِلْنِي بِرَحْمَتِكَ فِي عِبَادِكَ الصَّالِحِينَ ٥

*rabbi auzi‘nī an ashkura ni‘matakallafī an‘amta ‘alayya wa ‘alā wālidayya  
wa an a‘mala ṣāliḥan tarḍāhu wa adkhilnī bi raḥmatika fī ‘ibādikaṣṣāliḥīn*

My Lord, enable me to be grateful for Your favor which You have bestowed upon me and upon my parents, and to do *such* good works as would please You, and admit me, by Your mercy, among Your righteous servants. (27:20)

§

رَبِّ إِنِّي ظَلَمْتُ نَفْسِي فَاغْفِرْ لِي

*rabbi innī ḡalamtu nafsī faghfirli*

My Lord, I have wronged my soul, therefore forgive me. (28:17)

§

رَبِّ نَجِّنِي مِنَ الْقَوْمِ الظَّالِمِينَ ٥

*rabbi najjinī minal qaumizzālimīn*

My Lord, deliver me from the unjust people. (28:22)

§

رَبِّ إِنِّي لِمَا أَنْزَلْتَ إِلَيَّ مِنْ خَيْرٍ فَقِيرٌ ٥

*rabbi innī limā anzalta ilayya min khairin faqīr*

O My Lord, a beggar I am of whatever good You bestow on me. (28:25)

§

رَبِّ انصُرْنِي عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْمُفْسِدِينَ ٥

*rabbiṣurnī ‘alal qaumil mufsidīn*

Help me, my Lord, against the wicked people. (29:31)

§

رَبِّ هَبْ لِي مِنَ الصَّالِحِينَ ٥

*rabbi habli minasṣālihīn*

My Lord, grant me a righteous son. (37: 101)

§

سُبْحَنَ الَّذِي سَخَّرَ لَنَا هَذَا وَمَا كُنَّا لَهُ مُقْرِنِينَ ٥

*subhānalladhī sakhkhara lanā hādhā wamā kunnā lahū muqrinān*

Holy is He Who has subjected this to us, and we, by ourselves, were unable to harness it.  
(43:14)

§

رَبَّنَا اكْشِفْ عَنَّا الْعَذَابَ إِنَّا مُؤْمِنُونَ ٥

*rabbanakshif ‘annal ‘adhāba innā mu’minūn*

Then will the people cry: 'Our Lord, remove from us the torment; truly, we are believers.'  
(44:13)

§

رَبِّ أَوْزِعْنِي أَنْ أَشْكُرَ بِعَمَّتِكَ إِلَهِي أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيَّ وَ عَلَى وَالِدَيَّ وَ أَنْ أَعْمَلَ  
صَالِحًا تَرْضَاهُ وَ أَصْلِحْ لِي فِي ذُرِّيَّتِي ۖ إِنَّي تُبْتُ إِلَيْكَ وَ إِنِّي مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ ٥

*rabbi auzi‘nī an ashkura ni‘matakallafī an‘amta ‘alayya wa ‘alā wālidayya  
wa an a‘mala ṣāliḥan tarḍāhu wa aṣliḥ li fi dhurriyyatī innī tubtu ilaika wa  
innī minal muslimīn*

My Lord, grant me *the power* that I may be grateful for Thy favor which Thou hast bestowed upon me and upon my parents, and that I may do such good works as may please Thee. And make my seed righteous for me. I do turn to Thee; and, truly, I am of those who submit *to Thee*. (46:16)

§

إِنِّي مَغْلُوبٌ فَأَنْتَصِرُ ٥

*annī maghlūbun fantasir*

I am overcome, so *come* Thou *to my* help. (54:11)

§

رَبَّنَا اغْفِرْ لَنَا وَلِإِخْوَانِنَا الَّذِينَ سَبَقُونَا بِالْإِيمَانِ وَلَا تَجْعَلْ فِي قُلُوبِنَا غِلًّا لِلَّذِينَ  
آمَنُوا رَبَّنَا إِنَّكَ رَءُوفٌ رَحِيمٌ ٥

*rabbanaghfir lanā wali-ikhwāninalladhīna sabaqūnā bil imāni walā taj'al fi  
qulūbinā ghillallilladhīna āmanū rabbanā innaka ra'ūfurrahīm*

Our Lord, forgive us and our brothers who preceded us in the faith, and leave not in our hearts any rancour against those who believe. Our Lord! Thou art indeed Compassionate, Merciful. (59: 11)

§

رَبَّنَا عَلَيْكَ تَوَكَّلْنَا وَإِلَيْكَ أَنَبْنَا وَإِلَيْكَ الْمَصِيرُ ٥ رَبَّنَا لَا تَجْعَلْنَا فِتْنَةً لِلَّذِينَ  
كَفَرُوا وَاغْفِرْ لَنَا رَبَّنَا إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ ٥

*rabbanā 'alaika tawakkalnā wa ilaika anabnā wa ilaikal maṣīr, rabbanā lā  
taj'alnā fitnatallilladhīna kafarū waghfir lanā rabbanā innaka antal 'azīzul  
hakīm*

Our Lord, inThee do we put our trust and to Thee do we turn *repentant*, and towards Thee is the *final* return. Our Lord, make us not a trial for those who disbelieve, and forgive us, our Lord; for Thou alone art the Mighty, the Wise. (60:5-6)



§

رَبَّنَا أَتْمِمْ لَنَا نُورَنَا وَاغْفِرْ لَنَا ۖ إِنَّكَ عَلَىٰ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ ۝

*rabbanā atmim lanā nūranā waghfir lanā innaka ‘alā kulli shai’in qadīr*

Our Lord, perfect our light for us and forgive us; surely Thou hast power over all thing.  
(66:9)

§

رَبِّ اغْفِرْ لِي وَلِوَالِدَيَّ وَلِمَن دَخَلَ بَيْتِيَ مُؤْمِنًا وَلِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُؤْمِنَاتِ ۖ وَلَا  
تَزِدِ الظَّالِمِينَ إِلَّا تَبَارًا ۝

*rabbighfir li wali wālidayya wa liman dakhala baitiya mu’mināñwwa  
lil-mu’minīna wal-mu’mināti walā tazidizẓālimīna illā tabārā*

My Lord, forgive me and my parents, and him who enters my house as a believer, and the believing men and the believing women; and increase Thou not the wrongdoers but in perdition.(71:29)

# NOTES